



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

UC-NRLF



\$B 253 143

AHN'S
THIRD LATIN BOOK.

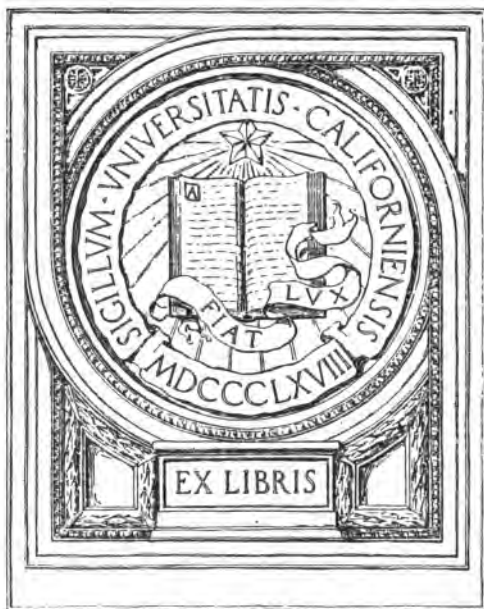
BY

Dr. P. HENN.

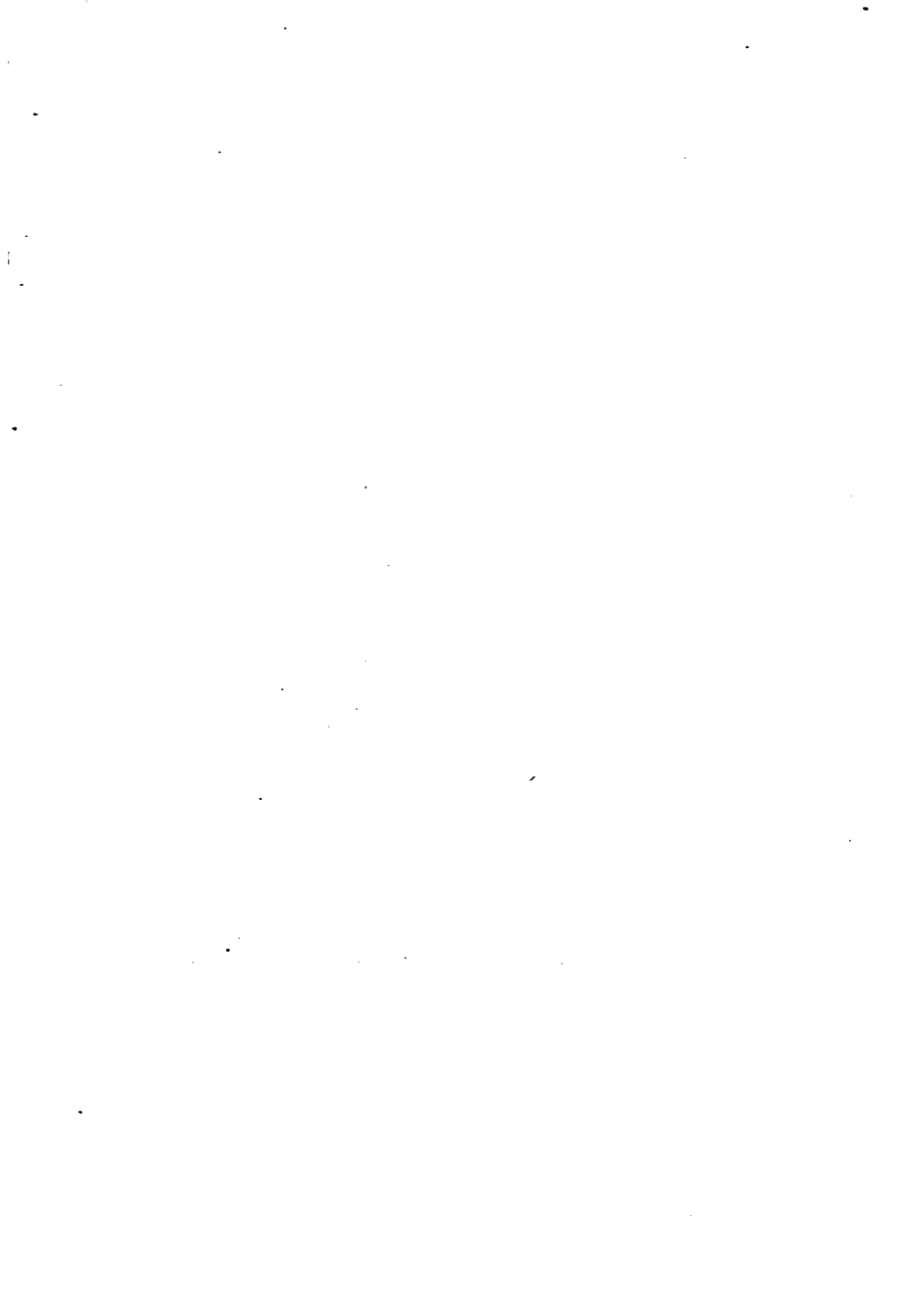
NEW YORK:

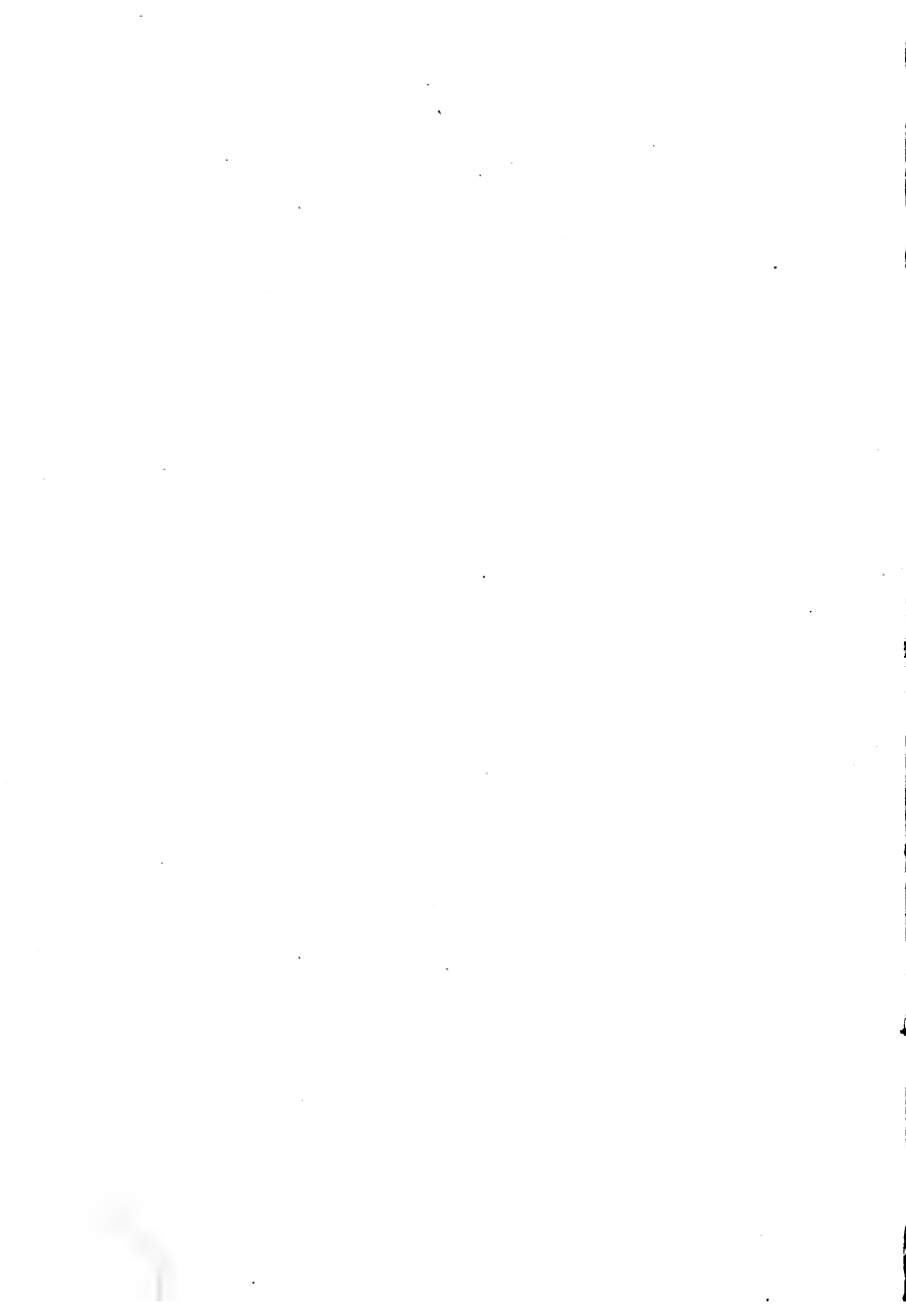
E. STEIGER & CO.

IN MEMORIAM
J. Henry Senger



760
A286
f
v.3



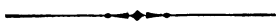


STEIGER'S Latin Series.

AHN'S
REVISED
THIRD LATIN BOOK.

BY

Dr. P. HENN.



NEW YORK:

E. STEIGER & CO.

1881.

REQUEST.

The undersigned, in their efforts to secure the greatest possible correctness in their educational publications, will feel obliged for the suggestion of improvements.

E. Steiger & Co., Publishers.

Copyright, 1880, by E. STEIGER & Co.

IN MEMORIAM

Prof. J. Henry Sanger

Press of
E. Steiger & Co., N. Y.

P R E F A C E.

The present volume is the third of a Latin series which has been undertaken with the view of facilitating the study of the Latin language. In the preparation of this *Third Latin Book* the author's main object has been to provide a full course in **Syntax** and **Prose Composition**. The points which have received particular attention, and in stating which great pains has been taken, are to describe clearly and accurately, in language as plain as possible, the actual uses of syntactical forms, with abundance of illustration both in Latin and English, and, withal, to direct the pupil's attention first to that which most needs to be learned, unencumbered with burdensome detail. To enable the teacher to do this efficiently a careful distinction of the contents of the book by the use of various styles of type has been made throughout. Accordingly, the practice has been followed to present in the largest type principles so vitally important, that, in general outline, they should be grasped by every scholar, before the separate points (which are printed in smaller type) are taken up and discussed in detail. In using this book, the pupil should be required to commit to memory the **Special Vocabulary** preceding each exercise. This is of the first importance since words once given are not repeated in subsequent vocabularies. It should, however, be borne in mind that any word whose meaning cannot be recalled may be looked up in the **General Vocabularies** at the end of the book.

It is hardly necessary to state that some of the subjects treated in a text-book like this—which at the same time contains *Grammar*, *Exercises for Double Translation* and *Complete Vocabularies*—need support from a regular Grammar as a book of reference which will enable the teacher to give such further detail as may here or there

be desirable. In view of this, and in substantial harmony with the series itself, a *Synopsis of Latin Grammar*—issued as the *Fourth Latin Book*—will furnish a really compendious and simple grammar which might answer even the needs of a young scholar, although containing some matters which he would not fairly understand until his mind is steadied and cleared by knowing the simpler facts.

The series will be supplemented by a *First* and *Second Latin Reader*, suitable for beginners, sufficient in quantity while interesting and instructive in matter, so as to enable them to enter, with a competent supply of words and experience in translation, upon the profitable study of the classical authors usually read in schools and colleges.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

LATIN COMPOSITION.

	Page
201. 202. <i>Subject and Predicate. The Order of Words.....</i>	1
203. 204. <i>Attribute and Apposition.....</i>	4
205. 206. <i>Agreement of Pronouns.....</i>	7
207. 208. <i>Accusative. Direct Object.....</i>	10
209. 210. <i>Two Accusatives. Same Person.....</i>	12
211. 212. <i>Two Accusatives. Person and Thing.....</i>	14
213. 214. <i>Accusative with Impersonals.....</i>	16
215. 216. <i>Dative with Verbs.....</i>	18
217. 218. <i>Dative with Verbs (continued).....</i>	21
219. 220. <i>Dative with Adjectives.....</i>	24
221. 222. <i>Genitive with Substantives.....</i>	26
223. 224. <i>Genitive with Adjectives.....</i>	29
225. 226. <i>Genitive with Certain Verbs.....</i>	31
227. 228. <i>Genitive as Predicate; the verb interest.....</i>	34
229. 230. <i>Ablative of Cause, Means, Limitation.....</i>	37
231. 232. <i>Ablative of Comparison, Manner, Quality, Price.....</i>	40
233. 234. <i>Ablative of Separation, Plenty, Want.....</i>	44
235. 236. <i>Ablative in Special Constructions.....</i>	47
237. 238. <i>Prepositions construed with the Accusative.....</i>	50
239. 240. <i>Prepositions construed with the Ablative; with the Accusative or Ablative.....</i>	55
241. 242. <i>Place and Space.....</i>	59
243. 244. <i>Time.....</i>	63
245. 246. <i>Peculiarities of Pronouns.....</i>	67
247. 248. <i>Use of Tenses.....</i>	70
249. 250. <i>Sequence of Tenses.....</i>	74
251. 252. <i>Use of the Indicative; Independent uses of the Subjunctive.....</i>	77
253. 254. <i>Dependent uses of the Subjunctive. Consecutive and Final Conjunctions.....</i>	81
255. 256. <i>Consecutive and Final Conjunctions (continued). Concessive and Comparative Conjunctions... ..</i>	84
257. 258. <i>Temporal Conjunctions.....</i>	88
259. 260. <i>Causal Conjunctions.....</i>	91

	Page
261. 262. <i>Conditional Conjunctions</i>	93
263. 264. <i>Relative Clauses with the Subjunctive</i>	96
265. 266. <i>Direct Questions</i>	98
267. 268. <i>Indirect Questions</i>	101
269. 270. <i>The Imperative</i>	104
271. 272. <i>The Infinitive</i>	106
273. 274. <i>Accusative with the Infinitive</i>	108
275. 276. <i>Tenses of the Infinitive</i>	112
277. 278. <i>Nominative with the Infinitive</i>	114
279. 280. <i>Direct Discourse</i>	116
281. 282. <i>Indirect Discourse</i>	118
283. 284. <i>Participles</i>	121
285. 286. <i>Participles (continued)</i>	124
287. 288. <i>Ablative Absolute</i>	126
289. 290. <i>Gerund</i>	128
291. 292. <i>Gerundive</i>	129
293. 294. <i>Supine</i>	133
295. 296. <i>Co-ordinate Conjunctions. Copulative; Disjunctive</i>	135
297. 298. <i>Adversative, Causal, Illative</i>	138
299. 300. <i>Corresponsive</i>	141

VOCABULARIES

of all the words occurring in the **Exercises**:

<i>Latin-English</i>	144
<i>English-Latin</i>	197

LATIN COMPOSITION

201. Subject and Predicate.

1. Every simple sentence is composed of two parts: **Subject and Predicate.**

The **Subject** signifies that about which the assertion is made; the **Predicate** signifies that which is asserted of the Subject. In the sentence:

aurum splendet *gold glitters*

aurum is the subject; splendet the predicate.

2. The **Subject** of the sentence is in the **Nominative Case**, or so considered.

The **Subject** must be either a Noun, or some word or phrase standing for a noun, but it may be contained in the termination of the verb itself:

arbor floret

the tree is blossoming

hic laetatur, ille maeret

this one rejoices, that one is sad

errare humanum est

to err is human

veni, vidi, vici

I came, I saw, I conquered

3. The **Predicate** must be either a Verb, **Verbal Predicate**; or an Adjective (or what stands for an adjective) with the verb *essē*, **Adjective Predicate**; or a Substantive with the verb *essē*, **Substantive Predicate**.

The **Verbal Predicate** agrees in **Person** and **Number** with its subject.

The **Adjective Predicate** (Adjective, Adjective Pronoun, Participle) agrees in **Gender**, **Number** and **Case** with its subject.

The **Substantive Predicate** agrees in **Case** with its subject.

ego valēo, si vos valētis

I am well if you are well

arbor est procēra

the tree is tall

usus est tyrannus

custom is a tyrant

When the predicate is a substantive with different terminations for the gender, such as:

patrōnus	patrōnā	<i>a protector</i>
dōmīnus	dōmīnā	<i>a master, mistress</i>
victor	victor	<i>a conqueror</i>
māgister	māgistrā	<i>a teacher</i>
rex	rēginā	<i>a king, queen</i>
adversāriūs	adversāriā	<i>an enemy</i>

it agrees with its subject also in number and gender.

usus est optimus magister	<i>experience is the best teacher</i>
vita rustica parsimoniae magistra est	<i>a country life is the teacher of frugality</i>

When referring to a subject of the neuter gender, a predicate substantive with different terminations for the gender is always in the masculine gender.

tempus est vitae magister	<i>time is the teacher of life</i>
---------------------------	------------------------------------

When the predicate substantive is of the common gender, the adjective qualifying it takes the gender of the subject.

bona conscientia est tutissima	<i>a good conscience is the safest</i>
comes hominum	<i>companion of men</i>

4. The Predicate of two or more Subjects is put in the Plural Number.

Romulus et Remus urbem Romam condiderunt	<i>Romulus and Remus founded the city of Rome</i>
--	---

Two or more singular nouns taken conjointly as a single idea may have a singular verb. Sometimes the verb agrees with the nearest nominative and is understood to the rest.

ratio et oratio societatis humanae vinculum est	<i>reason and speech are the bond of human society</i>
naves et praesidium excessit	<i>the fleet and garrison departed</i>

5. In regard to the Gender of an Adjective Predicate referring to two or more Subjects mark the following:

When the subjects are of the same gender, the adjective predicate is of that gender.

mater et soror mortuae sunt	<i>mother and sister are dead</i>
-----------------------------	-----------------------------------

When the genders are different, the adjective predicate takes the masculine gender if the subjects are things **with life**, and the neuter if they are things **without life**.

pater et mater mortui sunt father and mother are dead
divitiae et honores incerta sunt riches and honors are uncertain

When things with life and things without life are combined, the predicate adjective takes either the gender of the things with life, or is neuter.

rex regiaeque classis profecti the king and the king's fleet
sunt set out
natūra inimica sunt libera civitas a free state and a king are
et rex. natural enemies

6. When the Subjects are of **Different Persons**, the verb will be in the first rather than the second, and in the second rather than the third.

In Latin the speaker generally mentions himself first.

ego et tu vicissitudinem fortunae you and I have experienced
experti sumus the vicissitude of fortune

usitātūs, -ā, -ūm, familiar suscipiō, -ērē, to undertake
elābōr, -ī, to slip impēriūm, -ī, government
pertinēō, -ērē, to pertain tangō, -ērē, to strike
injustūs, -ā, -ūm, unjust fortuitūs, -ā, -ūm, accidental

Somnus est imāgo mortis. Verae amicitiae aeternae sunt. Maximum animal terrestre est elephāntus. Proximus sum egomet mihi! Praeteritum tempus nunquam revertitur. Usitatae res facile e memoria elabuntur. Curiosum est ea scire velle, quae ad nos non pertinent. Illa injusta bella sunt, quae sunt sine causa suscepta. Homines neque admirantur neque requirunt rationes earum rerum, quas semper vident. Non omnia in ducis, aliquid etiam in militum manibus est. Conscientia est severissima iudex factorum nostrorum. Leges sunt optimae patronae civium. Roma omnium Italiae populorum victrix fuit. Sine imperio nec domus ulla, nec civitas, nec gens nec hominum universum genus stare potest. Murus et porta fulmine tacta erant. Secundae res, honores, victoriae fortuita sunt. Usus est optimus magister; etiam tempus multarum rerum magister est. Tu et frater tuus epistulas ad me scripsistis.

202. The Order of Words.

The Latin language allows greater freedom in the order of words than the English. The following practical rules will be found of value:

In general, put the **Subject** first, and the **Verb** last.

The **Subject** is followed by the words which modify it.

The **Verb** is preceded by the words which depend upon it.

The **Conjunctions** autē, *but*; enim, *for*; vērō, *but*; igitur, *then*, follow one or more words in their clause. quidē, *indeed*; quōquē, *also*, come after the emphatic word.

Observe carefully and imitate the form of sentences given as examples.

tūtūs, -ā, -ūm, *safe*

perpētūtūs, -ā, -ūm, *constant*

sātēllēs, -itīs, *an attendant*

inōpiā, -ae, *want*

ācēr, -rīs, -rē, *bitter*

sūperbiā, -ae, *pride*

conjungō, -ērē, *to unite*

cībūs, -ī, *meat*

pōtūs, -ūs, *drink*

vīgīliae, -ārūm, *wakefulness*

Fear is a bad protector. A good conscience is the safest companion of men. The moon is a constant attendant of our earth. Practice is the best teacher. The lion is the king of quadrupeds, the eagle the king of birds. Want is the bitterest enemy of virtue. My father and my brothers and I have borne arms for our country. We are dust and shadow. Pride and folly are often united. If you and your brother shall be at home, my father and I also will come. The beginning and the end are often very different. Pain, fear, labor, old age are troublesome to most men. Neither meat nor drink nor sleep nor wakefulness can be beneficial to us if they exceed measure. Neither my father nor I have read this book. But (āt) if you and your father have not read it, who has read it? The walls and gates of the captured city were destroyed by the soldiers. My friend's father and mother died within a few days.

203. Attribute and Apposition.

1. The most usual **Attribute** of a Substantive is an **Adjective** (including under this term the Adjective

Pronouns and Participles); it agrees with its Substantive in **Number, Gender, and Case.**

	Gender.	Number.
<i>a white flower</i>	flos albūs	flōrēs albī
<i>a dark cloud</i>	nūbēs ōpācā	nūbēs ōpācae
<i>a golden vessel</i>	vās aurētūm	vāsā aurēā

Case.

Gen.	flōrīs albī	<i>of a white flower</i>
"	nūbīs ōpācae	<i>of a dark cloud</i>
"	vāsīs aurēī	<i>of a golden vessel</i>

The **Common Attribute** of two or more Substantives of different gender is either repeated or agrees with the nearest.

agri omnes et marīa	} <i>all lands and (all) seas</i>
omnes agri omniāque marīa	
agri et marīa omnia	
omnes (et) agri et marīa	

2. One Substantive placed after another to explain it, is by **Apposition** put in the **same Case**, and, when practicable, in the **same Gender and Number.**

Socrātes, sapientissimū vir	<i>Socrates, the wisest of men</i>
philosophīa, vitae magistra	<i>philosophy, the teacher of life</i>
Athēnae, omnium doctrinārum	<i>Athens, the inventor of all</i>
inventrices	<i>learning.</i>

Nouns in Apposition are sometimes used to express the *time, condition, etc.* of the action.

Hercules juvenis leōnem inter-	<i>Hercules, when a young man,</i>
fecit	<i>slew a lion.</i>

In like manner the **Latin Adjective** is used **appositively** where the English idiom employs an adverb. Adjectives thus used are those expressive of *joy, knowledge and their opposites, of order and position, of time and season, etc., as:*

libens, <i>with pleasure</i>	solūs, <i>alone</i>	ultimūs, <i>last</i>
volens, <i>willing(ly)</i>	tōtūs, <i>wholly</i>	mēdiūs, <i>in the middle</i>
nolens, <i>unwilling(ly)</i>	primūs	frēquens, <i>frequent(ly)</i>
in vitis, <i>against one's will</i>	prīor	sciens, <i>knowing(ly)</i>

nemo saltat sobrius, *no one dances when sober;*

Socrātes primus hoc docuit, *Socrates was the first who taught this.*

3. Like *essē*, to be, several other verbs take **two Nominatives**, one of the **Subject** and the other of the **Predicate**. (See 201, 3.) These are:

fiēri, to become, be made
evādērē, to turn out
existērē, to become
mānērē, to remain
vidērī, to seem
appārērē, to appear
nascī, to be born
mōrī, to die
iudicārī, to be considered

crēārī, to be created
cōrōnārī, to be crowned
dicī, to be said, called
vōcārī } to be called
appellārī }
pūtārī } to be thought, consid-
hābērī } ered
crēdī, to be believed
existimārī, to be regarded

rosa pulcherrīmus flos habētur

the rose is considered the most beautiful flower.

Vēnēris stellā, -ae, the planet Venus
antēgrēdīor, -ī, to precede
subsequor, -ī, to follow
Hespērūs, -ī, the evening star
admirābīlis, -is, wonderful
errans, -tis, wandering
Manlīūs, -ī, Manlius
quamvis, although
gēnētrix, -īcis, a mother

Neptūnūs, -ī, Neptune
marītimūs, -ūs, -ūm, over the sea
gēnūinūs, -ūs, -ūm, belonging to the cheek, cheek-
conficiō, -ērē, to chew
escae, -ārūm, food [poet
Ennīūs, -ī, Ennius, a Roman
somnīūm, -ī, a dream
prōvinciā, -ae, a province
dōmō, -ārē, to subjugate

Vēnēris stella dicītur Lucīfer, cum antegreditur solem, cum subsequitur autem, Hespērūs. Admirabīles sunt motus omnīum stellārum, inprīmis eārum, quae errantes vocantur. Rhinocerōtes, rarum alibi animal, in montībūs Indīae errant. Manlīus filiū suū, quia contra imperiū pugnaverat, quamvis victōrem, occidit. Pythagōras, genetrīcem virtūtum, frugalitatem omnībūs commendāvit. Datum est Neptūno, altēri Jovis fratri, marītimū omne regnū. Intīmi dentes, qui genūni vocantur, conficiunt escas. Ennīus ferēbat duo, quae maxīma putantur onēra, paupertatem et senectutem. Oracūla evanuerunt, postquam homīnes minus credūli esse coepērunt. Non eādē omnes via sapientes fiunt et boni. Sol nobis minor appāret quam est. Hispanīa postrēma omnīum provinciārum domīta est. Nonnulla somnīa vera evādunt.

204. praenuntiūs, -ī, a pre-
cursor

Galliūs, -ī, a Gaul

altēr, -ā, -ūm, a second

Hystaspēs, -īs, Hystaspes

hinnitiūs, -ūs, neighing

Nūmantiā, -ae, Numantia

Mummiūs, -ī, Mummius

ōpulentūs, -ā, -ūm, wealthy

ignāviā, -ae, cowardice

Frugality, the mother of all virtues, was chiefly recommended by Pythagoras, a very wise man. Charles the Fifth was crowned emperor on his birthday. Comets were formerly believed to be* the precursors of great calamities. Camillus, who had delivered Rome from (ā)* the Gauls, was called a second Romulus. Dareus, son of Hystaspes, was made king of the Persians by the neighing of *his* horse. Two very powerful cities, Carthage and Numantia, were destroyed by the same Scipio. The camel is rightly considered the most useful animal of the east. The stars appear small to us. Cato learned the Greek language in his old age. Mummius, a Roman general, demolished Corinth, the wealthiest city of Greece. The fixed stars are rightly considered suns. No one is born rich. No one dies so poor as he was born. No one has become immortal by cowardice. Those are regarded as good citizens who for the safety of their country avoid no danger.

205. Agreement of Pronouns.

1. A **Relative** or **Demonstrative** Pronoun agrees with its antecedent in **Gender**, **Number** and **Person**, but the **Case** depends on the clause in which it stands.

animal, quod sanguinem habet, *an animal which has blood can-*
sine corde esse non potest *not be without a heart.*

When the **Relative** refers to a sentence, **Id quod** is commonly used.
gloria invidiam vicisti, id quod *you have overcome envy with*
est difficillimum *glory, which is most difficult.*

With antecedents of **different gender** the pronoun conforms in gender to the rule for adjectives. (See **201**, 5.)

pueri et mulieres, qui capti *the boys and women who had*
erant . . . *been taken prisoners . . .*

* Words in *Italics* are to be omitted altogether in translating.
Occasional suggestions are introduced in Parenthesis ().

With antecedents of **different persons**, the pronoun prefers the first person to the second, and the second to the third. (See 201, 6.)

ego et tu, qui eodem anno nati sumus... *you and I who were born in the same year...*

2. Sometimes a **Relative** or **Demonstrative** Pronoun agrees with a word in apposition or with a predicate rather than with its antecedent:

ama justam gloriā, qui est fructus verae virtutis rerum caput hoc erat, hic fons *love real glory which is the fruit of true virtue this was the head of things, this the source.*

Is, he, and Idēm, the same, are the **Antecedents** of Relatives:

(is) qui { *he who*
such as
such that

idem qui { *the same who*
the same as

but **Is**, when Antecedent, is often suppressed, especially when it would stand in the same case as the Relative:

quem dii diligunt adulescens moritur *(he) whom the gods love dies young.*

An **Adjective** or **Apposition** belonging in sense to the Antecedent, sometimes appears in the relative clause in agreement with the relative.

Themistocles de servis suis quem habuit fidelissimum ad Xerxem misit omnes gentes regibus paruērunt, quod genus imperii... *Themistocles sent the most faithful of the slaves which he had to Xerxes all nations obeyed kings, a kind of government which...*

qui dicitur, qui vocatur or quem dicunt, quem vocant are used in the sense of *so-called*.

vestra, quae dicitur vita, mors est, *your so-called life is death.*

The **Relative** often stands at the beginning of a sentence where in English a demonstrative is generally used.

quae cum ita sint *and since these things are so.*

The **Relative** is never omitted in Latin, as it often is in English.
is sum, qui semper fui *I am the same man I always was.*

insidiōr, -ārī, to lay a snare	ritū, after the manner
temporā secundā, prosperity	carcēr, -īs, a prison
cāsūs adversi, adversity	crūdellīs, -ē, cruel
rēformidō, -ārē, to dread	lautūmiāe, -ārūm, stone-quarries
malē sē rēs habēt, things go wrong	vicūs, -ī, a village
prōficiscōr, -ī, to come from	dēfērō, -rē, to confer on
	sanctitās, -ātīs, goodness

Qui altēri insidiātur, saepe in fovēam incīdit. Sapienter cogitant, qui temporibus secundis casus adversos reformidant. Male se res habet, cum quod virtūte effici debet, id tentātur pecuniā. Ego idem sum, qui et infans fui, et puer, et adulescens. Voluptas, quae ex turpibus capitur, celeriter transit. Ea profecto jucunda laus est, quae ab iis proficiscitur, qui ipsi veram et justam laudem sunt consecuti. Contemnuntur, qui pecūdum ritu omnia ad voluptatem referunt. Quod non dedit fortuna, non eripit. Est carcer a crudelissimo tyranno Dionysio factus. Syracusis, quae lautumiae vocantur. Apud vicum, qui Cannae appellatur, ambo consules ab Hannibale victi sunt. Nullum fere animalium genus est, quod non homini sit utile. Omnes antiquae gentes regibus quondam paruērunt, quod genus imperii primum ad homines justissimos et sapientissimos deferebatur. Omnes pueri et puellae, qui a Romanis in Hispania capti erant, Scipionis sanctitate suis restituti sunt.

206. paucae res, little	cāpitīs damnārē, to condemn to death
adspiciō, -ērē, to see	Gracchī, -ōrūm, the Gracchi
constans, -tis, steady	ornāmentūm, -ī, a jewel
pēnuriā, -ae, scarcity	Tāmēsis, -, the river Thames

We do not call him rich whose fortunes are increasing, but him whose mind is tranquil and content with little (*abl.*). The husbandman plants trees, the fruits of which he himself will never see. There is a God who rules this whole world. Firm and steady friends ought to be chosen, of which kind there is a great scarcity. No animal which has blood can be without a heart. There is great power in virtues; arouse them if perchance (*fortē*) they sleep. Socrates, whose wisdom we admire, was unjustly condemned to death by the Athenians. Cornelia, the mother of the Gracchi, showing her children, said: These are my jewels. He who loves me loves my dog too (*ēt*).

Romulus, who founded Rome, had been brought up by the king's shepherd. This garden is larger than the one which my father bought; but the trees, which are in it, are very low. There is a river in Britain which is called the Thames.

207. Accusative (Direct Object).

1. Active Transitive Verbs take the Accusative Case.

The **Object** of a transitive verb in the *active* voice becomes **Subject** in the *passive*.

boni cives amant patriam	- good citizens love their country
patria a bonis civibus amatur	their country is loved by good citizens.

Many verbs are intransitive in English which are both transitive and intransitive in Latin. Such are:

dolere, to grieve (for)	ridere, to laugh (at)
horrere, to shudder (at)	sitire, to thirst (for).

Some intransitive verbs may take an accusative of kindred meaning, as:

vitam jucundam vivere	to live a pleasant life
longam viam ire	to go a long way.

2. Many **Intransitive Verbs**, especially verbs of motion, when compounded with prepositions, become transitive, and accordingly take an **Accusative**. The commonest of them are compounds of:

circum, per, praeter, trans.

circumstare, to stand around	praeterire, to pass by
permeare, to flow through	transire, to cross

qualis, -e, what kind of a man	eloquentia, -ae, the art of speak-
impetus, -us, an assault	deducere, -ere, to conduct [ing
Epirotas, -ae, an Epirote	princeps, -ipis, first, chief
Macedo, -onis, a Macedonian	sector, -ari, to follow
heros, -ois, a hero	prosequor, -i, to attend upon
aemulor, -ari, to emulate	dicto, -onis, a speech

Qualis habendus est is, qui non modo non repellit, sed etiam adjuvat injuriam. Errant, qui in prosperis rebus omnes impetus fortunae se putant fugisse. Qui liberos suos amat, eos etiam castigat, Pyrrhus, Epirotarum rex, voluit imitari

Alexandrum, regem Macedōnum. In Afrīca multa animalia inveniuntur, qui sanguinem sitiunt. Vir probus et justus non horrēbit mortem. Morientem nihil te doctrīna, nihil divitiarum tuarum juvābunt. Alexander Magnus in (*among*) heroibus Graecis Achillem maxime aemulatus est. Apud vetēres Romanos adulescens, qui foro et eloquentiae parabatur, deducebatur a patre ad eum oratorem, qui principem in civitate locum obtinebat: hunc sectari, hunc prosēqui, hujus omnibus dictionibus interesse assuescebat. Panem et aquam natura desiderat. Tempus non modo non minuit hunc dolorem sed etiam auget. Mors neminem praeteribit. Vitam lepōris vivit.

208. ānimūs, -ī, *spirit*

infringō, -ēre, *to break*

partēs sequi, *to take the side*

acerbūs, -ā, -ūm, *bitter*

arrōgantia, -ae, *haughtiness*

āberrō, -āre, *to go astray*

Superlatives denoting order and succession often designate a relative part or place in the object to which they refer: summus mons, *the top of the mountain*; primo vere, *in the beginning of spring*; in mediā urbe, *in the midst of the city*.

God has created the world. Good citizens love *their* country. Every animal has senses. Miltiades delivered Athens and the whole of Greece. The thirty tyrants stood around Socrates and could not break his (ējūs) spirit. No one can escape death. Nothing can imitate the skill of nature. Themistocles did not escape the envy of his fellow-citizens. We are wont to imitate those with whom we keep company. The wives and children of the Germans were accustomed to follow the army. Sulla, who had formerly taken the side of Marius, afterwards became his most bitter enemy. In prosperity avoid [ye]* pride and haughtiness. Soldiers emulate the example of *their* leader. In the study of the English language, a knowledge of the Latin language will greatly (multū) assist us. If we [shall] follow nature *as our* guide we shall never go astray. The Euphrates flows through the middle of Babylon. No one, before Hannibal, had ever with an army crossed the Alps which separate Italy from Gaul.

* Words superfluous in English, and intended only as helps to a correct translation are inserted in Brackets [].

209. Two Accusatives. Same Person.

Verbs of **Naming, Making, Taking, Choosing, Showing** admit **two Accusatives** of the same person or thing.

appellārē	} to name or call	fācērē	} to make
nōminārē		efficērē	
vōcārē		reddērē	
dicērē		crēārē	} to elect
arbitrārī	} to regard, consider, think, pronounce	ēligērē	
existimārē		dēsignārē, to appoint	} to show, offer one's self
hābērē		sē praeberē	
pūtārē		sē praestārē	
jūdicārē, to judge			

✓ Nerōnem senātus hostem iudicavit the senate declared Nero an enemy.

Many other verbs, besides their proper Accusative, take a second, denoting **purpose, time, character**. Such are:

dārē, to give	rēlinquērē, to leave
hābērē, to have	sūmērē, to take

✓ Athenienses Miltiadem sibi imperatorem sumpsērunt the Athenians took Miltiades as their commander.

complectōr, -ī, to embrace	abditūs, -ūs, -ūm, hid
tūtōr, -ōris, a guardian	dēfigō, -ērē, to plunge
cellā penariā (-ae -ae), a granary	summā omnium rerum, the authority over all things
nūtrix, -icis, a nurse	intēritūs, -ūs, destruction
Lūcrētīā, -ae, Lucretia	quōdammōdō, in a measure

dicīt is sometimes omitted in quoting a person's words, as: *praeclāre Ennius, very well (says) Ennius.*

Non solum ipsa Fortūna caeca est, sed eos etiā plerumque efficit caecos, quos complexa est. Quis unquam se populi Romāni, victōris dominique omnium gentium tutōrem dicere ausus est? Praeclāre Ennius: Benefacta male locāta malefacta arbitror. Cato cellam penariā rei publicae nostrae, nutricem plebis Romānae Siciliā nomināvit. Lucretiā cultrum, quem sub veste abditum habēbat, eum in corde defixit. Hostis apud

majōres nostros is dicebātur, quem nunc peregrīnum dicimus. Regem illum unum vocāmus, penes quem est omnium summa rerum. Romāni Cicerōnem patrem patriāe appellavērunt, quod urbem ab incendiō atque interitū liberavērat. Paupertas ad multas virtūtes homīnem quodammōdo aptiōrem facit. Hortor te, ut non modo libros vetērum scriptōrum libenter legas, sed etiā ut exempla probitātis, modestīae, justitiāe omniumque virtūtum imitēris, quae in illis libris memorāta reperies. Sapientiā certissimam se nobis ducem praebet ad voluptātem. Praesta te virum!

210. Ancūs Marciūs (-ī-ī), An-	cētēri, -ōrūm, the rest
cus Marcius	Pēriclēs, -īs, Pericles
escā, -ae, a bait	pōpūlātiō, -ōnis, devastation
Dāvidēs, -īs, David	ācerimūs, -ā, -ūm, ardent
Sālōmōn, -īs, Solomon	intactūs, -ā, -ūm, untouched
successōr, -ōris, a successor	exēō, -irē, to come off
vīvūs, -ā, -ūm, alive	

The Possessives are regularly omitted, like other pronouns, when they are plainly implied in the context.

Apollo judged Socrates *to be* the wisest man. The Roman people made Ancus Marcius king. Socrates considered himself an inhabitant and citizen of the whole world. Romulus called the city which he had founded Rome from (ex) his own name. Golden bits do not make a horse better. Plato rightly called pleasure the bait of all evils. Croesus, king of Lydia, on account of his riches considered himself the happiest of men. David appointed *his* son, Solomon, *as* his successor. Alexander founded in Egypt a city which from his own name he called Alexandria. Boys in *their* play name him king who appears to be the most distinguished. In the devastation of the rest, the enemies had left the lands of Pericles untouched. Our father gave us the most distinguished men *as* teachers. Pythagoras first called himself a philosopher. Demosthenes showed himself an ardent defender of common liberty. Antony was judged by the senate *to be* an enemy of the country. I show myself grateful to those who have deserved well of (dē) me. Necessity makes even the timid brave. Antony called his flight victory, because he had come off alive.

211. Two Accusatives. Person and Thing.

1. dōcērē, ēdōcērē, *to teach*; cēlārē, *to conceal from*, take **two Accusatives**, one of the person, and the other of the thing.

Dionysius Epaminondam musi-	<i>Dionysius taught Epaminon-</i>
cam docuit	<i>das music</i>
non te celāvi sermōnem	<i>I did not conceal from you the</i>
	<i>conversation.</i>

The **Passive** of dōcērē or ēdōcērē with the Nominative of the person and the Accusative of the thing is *almost never* used, but is replaced by discērē āliquid āb āliquō. Special uses worthy of note are as follows:

ēdōcērē āliquem dē āliqua rē, *to inform some one of something*;
cēlārē āliquem dē āliqua rē, *to keep some one ignorant of something*.

2. Verbs signifying *to ask, to demand, to request, to inquire* take **two Accusatives**, one of the person, and the other of the thing.

The commonest of them are:

poscērē	} <i>to ask,</i>	ōrārē	} <i>to ask,</i>	rōgārē	} <i>to ask,</i>
flagitārē		rōgārē		interrōgārē	
postulārē		pētērē		quaerērē	
posce deos veniam		ask favor of the gods			
me sententiam rogāvit		he asked me my opinion.			

But to this there are many exceptions. We may also say:

poscere or flagitare āliquid ab āliquo, as we always say:
postulare or petere āliquid ab āliquo
quaerere āliquid ab, ex, or de āliquo.

The verbs ōrārē, rōgārē, *to ask, request*, and rōgārē, interrōgārē, *to ask, inquire*, admit a double accusative only when the thing is expressed by the neuter of a pronoun or adjective, as:

hoc te rogo, *this I inquire of you*; otherwise we say:
interrogare āliquem de āliqua re, *to ask some one about something*.

A noun as second accusative appears with the verb rōgārē only in the official phrase:

sententiam rogare āliquem, *to ask one for his opinion or vote*.

vis eloquendi, *the power of speaking*

tonsor, -oris, *a barber*

committō, -ere, *to trust*

illicitō, -ere, *to allure*

Campānus, -i, *a Campanian*

explānō, -āre, *to explain*

consiliūm, -i, *a council*

dimittō, -ere, *to dismiss*

Liscus, -i, *Liscus*

retinēō, -ere, *to detain*

conventus, -us, *a meeting*

secrētō, *privately*

praecipue, *principally*

jaculor, -ari, *to throw the javelin*

pumex, -icis, *a pumice-stone*

Eloquendi vis efficit, ut et ea, quae ignorāmus, discere, et ea, quae scimus, alios docere possimus. Dionysius, ne tonsori collum committeret, tondere filias docuit. Catilina juventutem, quam illexerat, multis modis mala facinora edocuit. Campani coacti sunt a Romanis petere auxilium. Athenienses primi olei et vini usum docuere; arare quoque et serere frumenta glande vescentibus monstrarunt. Cur me istud rogas, quod totiens tibi explanavi? Non te celabo opinionem meam. Caesar celeriter consilium dimisit, Liscum retinuit; quaesivit ex solo ea, quae in conventu dixerat; eadem secreto ab aliis quaesivit; repertit esse vera. Persae tria praecipue liberos suos docebant, equitare, jaculari, vera dicere. Fortuna belli artem victos quoque docet. Providentia divina res futuras nos sapienter celavit. Fas est et ab hoste doceri! Aquam a pumice postulas. Justitiam liberi Persarum edocti sunt a pueritia.

212. ridiculus, -a -um, *silly*

neque tamen, *but not*

studium litterarum, *love of letters*

Isocrates, -is, *Isocrates*

Italus, -i, *an Italian*

Verrēs, -is, *Verres*

sepultura, -ae, *a burial*

sincerus, -a, -um, *sincere*

multa, *many a lesson*

They are silly who teach others what they have not tried themselves. The boys and women of the Gauls from (ex) the wall of the town besought peace of the Romans. I have asked you for assistance, but you have not heard me. Pythagoras taught boys modesty and a love of letters. Isocrates, an Athenian orator, who taught many youths eloquence, never delivered a speech himself. The Athenians entreated aid from the Lacedaemonians. Who taught men agriculture? Good boys conceal nothing from their parents. Saturn first taught the

Italians the cultivation of the land. In the schools of the Romans the teachers taught the boys the Latin and Greek languages, history and music. Verres demanded from parents a price for (prō) the burial of *their* children. Many wish to teach others what they have not sufficiently learned themselves. He is a sincere friend who conceals nothing from a friend. You teach the eagle to fly, the dolphin to swim. Hunger teaches many a lesson.

213. Accusative with Impersonal Verbs.

1. The **Accusative** is used after the **Impersonals**:

fallit mē	} <i>it escapes my notice, is unknown to me</i>	dēcēt, <i>it becomes</i>
fūgit mē		dēdēcēt, <i>it is unbecoming</i>
praetērit mē		
me fugit ad te scribēre		<i>I forgot to write to you</i>
oratōrem irasci dēdēcet		<i>it is unbecoming in an orator to be angry.</i>

An **Infinitive** or a **Neuter pronoun** or **adjective**, rarely a **Substantive** may be used as the **Subject** of dēcēt and dēdēcēt:

muliērem decet flēre	<i>it becomes a woman to weep</i>
parvum parva decent	<i>small things become the small</i>
neglegentia neminem decet	<i>carelessness becomes no one.</i>

2. Certain **Impersonal Verbs** take the Person who feels in the **Accusative**, and the Exciting Cause in the **Genitive**, or if a verb, in the **Infinitive**. These are:

mīserēt, <i>it excites pity</i>	pūdēt, <i>it shames</i>
paenītēt, <i>it causes sorrow</i>	taedēt
pīgēt, <i>it disgusts, grieves</i>	pertaesūm est
	} <i>it wearies, tires.</i>

The **Persons** are expressed as follows:

mīserēt mē, <i>I pity</i>	paenītēt mē, <i>I am sorry, repent</i>
mīserēt tē, <i>thou pitiest</i>	pīgēt mē, <i>I am grieved at, disgusted with</i>
mīserēt eūm, <i>he pities</i>	pūdēt mē, <i>I am ashamed</i>
mīserēt nōs, <i>we pity</i>	taedēt mē
mīserēt vōs, <i>you pity</i>	mē pertaesūm est
mīserēt eōs, <i>they pity</i>	} <i>I am weary, tired</i>
me stultitiae meae pudet	<i>I am ashamed of my folly</i>
non me paenitet vixisse	<i>I am not sorry for having lived.</i>

3. The **Accusative** is used in **Exclamations**, either with or without an Interjection.

O, misēras homīnum mentes! Oh, the wretched minds of men! ✓

rēquīrō, -ērē, to request

efflāgītō, -ārē, to importune for

gēmīnō, -ārē, to double

candidūs, -ā, -ūm, honorable

trux, trūcis, fierce

Clitūs, -ī, Clitus

trūcidō, -ārē, to slay

inconstans, -tis, inconstant

consiliūm, -ī, a design

dēsidiōsē, idly

Eōrum nos magis misēret, qui nostram misericordiā non requirunt, quam qui eam efflagitant. Geminat delictum, quem delicti non pudet. Numquam vos multa didicisse paenitēbit, sed si occasiōnem ad discendum praetermittitis, hujus pigritiae vos certe mox paenitēbit. Quem non misēret aliōrum homīnum, ejus nec miserebitur Deus. Candida pax homīnes, trux decet ira feras. Socrātem non pudēbat fatēri se multas res nescire. Non me praetērit usum esse optimum dicendi magistrum. Quem paenitet peccasse paene innōcens est. Tempus erit, quo vos specūlum vidisse pigēbit. Bonum civem numquam paenitēbit maxīma pericūla pro patriā subire. Postquam Alexander Clitum amicum trucidavērat, paenitēre eum facti coepit. Homīnem inconstantem saepissime paenitet primi consilii. O homīnes inter specūlum et pectīnem desidiōse occupātos! O praeclārū custōdem ovium, lupum!

214. conviciā, -ōrūm, abusive language

omni ratiōnē, in every way

ingēnūis, -ī, a gentleman

infāmiā, -ae, dishonor

princeps, -īps, a prince

abstinentē hāberē, to keep under restraint

Abusive language does not become the wretched. I am not only grieved but also ashamed of my folly. It becomes an upright man to assist his country in every way. Diligent scholars will not be disgusted with even the greatest labor. He is a fool who is ashamed of his parents; but (āt) virtuous parents are justly ashamed of their wicked sons. The wretched are often weary of life. Modesty becomes as well boys as girls. It becomes a youth to be modest. This boy is neither ashamed nor tired of his indolence. Truth becomes the gentleman. No one will repent of industry. These men

are neither ashamed nor weary of their dishonor. It becomes the wise to live according to nature. Clemency becomes none [out] of all more than a king or prince. It becomes a judge to keep not only *his* hands but also *his* eyes under restraint. O fool thou if thou fearest death at the time when it thunders!

215. Dative with Verbs.

1. The **Dative** is the Case of the **Indirect Object**, denoting *that for which, to the benefit or loss of which* any thing is or is done. It may be used with transitive and intransitive Verbs; *dativus commōdi et incommōdi*: **Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage**.

scribo vobis hunc librum
tibi seris, tibi metis

*I write this book for you
you sow for yourself, you reap
for yourself.*

2. A large number of **Transitive Verbs** take along with the Accusative a **Dative** as an **Indirect Object**.

The English expresses the **Dative Relation** by *to* or *for*; but where the verb implies removal, the Latin Dative frequently answers to the English Objective with *from*; *for* = *in defence of* is **prō**.

errantibus viam monstrēmus
dolor somnum mihi adimit
pro patriā mori

*let us show the way to the erring
grief takes away my sleep from
to die for one's country. [me*

3. Many **Intransitive Verbs** signifying *to benefit or injure, please or displease, command or obey, favor or resist, trust or distrust, also indulge, believe, persuade, envy, threaten, spare, and the like, take the Dative.*

Examples are:

prōdessē, *to do good*
nōcērē, *to do harm*
blandirī, *to soothe*
fāvērē, *to favor*
rēsistērē, *to offer resistance*

crēdērē, *to believe*
sūādērē, *to advise, recommend*
mīnārī, *imminērē, to threaten*
bēnēdicērē, *to bless*
nūbērē, *to marry*

plăcêrê, *to please*
 displicêrê, *to displease*
 împêrârê, *to command*
 ôboedirê, pârêrê, *to obey*
 fidêrê, *to trust*
 diffidêrê, *to distrust*
 irascî, *to be angry with*
 indulgêrê, *to give up, to favor*

persuădêrê, *to persuade, con-*
 mēdêrî, *to heal* [vince
 supplicârê, *to beg*
 mālêdicêrê, *to curse*
 parcêrê, *to spare*
 stûdêrê, *to devote one's self*
 obtrectârê, *to decry*
 invîdêrê, *to envy*

arbor resistit ventis

*the tree offers resistance to the
 winds*

probus invîdet nemîni
 non parcam opêrae

*the upright man envies no one
 I will spare no pains.*

Among the most notable **Exceptions** are:

jûvârê } *to help, assist*
 adjûvârê }
 aequârê, *to be equal*

dêficêrê, *to be wanting*
 jûbêrê, *to order*
 vêtârê, *to forbid,*

which govern the **Accusative**.

Some Verbs take the **Dative** or **Accusative** according to their
 signification:

căvêrê âlicûi, *to care for some one*
 căvêrê âlicuêm, *to beware of*
 căvêrê âb âlicuô, *to be on one's guard*
 consûlêrê âlicûi, *to consult the interest of some one*
 consûlêrê âlicuêm, *to consult some one*
 mêtûêrê âlicuêm, *to fear some one*
 mêtûêrê âlicûi, *to fear for some one*
 prôvidêrê âlicuîd, *to foresee*
 prôvidêrê âlicûi rêi, *to provide for*
 mōdêrârî âlicuîd, *to manage something*
 mōdêrârî âlicûi rêi, *to set bounds to a matter*
 tempêrârê âlicuîd, *to rule*
 tempêrârê âlicûi, *to spare some one*
 tempêrârê âb âlicuâ rê, *to abstain from something.*

4. The **Dative** is used with many **Verbs** compounded
 with the **Prepositions**:

ad	antê	côn	in	intêr
ôb	post	prae	sûb	sûpêr.

Examples are:

afferrē, *to bring to, render*

interjicērē, *to throw in*

praecurrērē, *to precede*

impōnērē, *to place on*

suppōnērē, *to put under*

ādīmērē, *to take away*

intēressē, *to be present*

injicērē, *to strike into*

oppōnērē, *to oppose*

virtus omnibus rebus antēit

onēra quibusdam animalibus im-
ponimus

virtue goes before all things

we put burdens on some ani-
mals.

Passives are regularly made only from transitive verbs. Intran-
sitive verbs which govern a Dative form an **Impersonal Passive** with
the same Case, in the following manner:

✓ **Active.** bōnūs invidet nēmīnī, *a good man envies no one*

Passive. mīhī invidētūr, *I am envied*

tībī invidētūr, *thou art envied*

ēī invidētūr, *he is envied*

nōbīs invidētūr, *we are envied*

vōbīs invidētūr, *you are envied*

his invidētūr, *they are envied*

✓ ā bōnō invidētūr nēmīnī, *no one is envied by a good man.*

virgā, -ae, *a rod*

mūnūs afferrē, *to render service*

nāsūs, -ī, *the nose*

rēs perniciosissimā, *a most per-
nicious evil*

inducō, -ērē, *to introduce*

seditiō, -ōnis, *a sedition*

unā cūm, *along with*

vīr, -ī, *a husband*

rōgūs, -ī, *a funeral pile*

censōr, -ōris, *a censor*

pingūis, -ē, *fat*

Homo non sibi solum, sed patriae quoque natus est. Qui-
dam mihi videntur non vivis, sed etiam mortuis invidere. Qui
parcit virgae, odit filium. Demosthenes ejus artis, cui studēbat,
primam littēram non potērat dicere. Fortūna multis dat nimis,
satis nulli. A nobis non parcetur labōri. Quod munus rei
publicae afferre majus meliusve possumus, quam si docēmus
atque erudimus juventutem? Nasus quasi murus oculis inter-
jectus esse videtur. Filia Cæsaris Pompējo nupsit. Raro
invidetur eorum hōnoribus, quorum vis non timetur. Certis
rebus certa signa praecurrunt. Qui parti civium consulant,
partem negligunt, rem perniciosissimam in civitatem inducunt,
seditiōnem. Muller in India una cum viro mortuo in rogam

imponitur. Censōres Romāni equīti nimis pingūi equum adimere solēbant. Nihil agenti dies longus est. Facile omnes, cum valēmus, bona consilia aegrōtis damus.

216. pārō, -ārē, *to hoard*
 nāvālis, -ē, *naval*
 Sālāmīs, -inīs, *Salamis*
 evēnīō, -irē, *to turn out*

prospērē, *successfully*
 terrōr, -ōrīs, *a terror*
 condiciō, -ōnīs, *a condition*
 immōdicē, *excessively*

The house was built for *its* master, not for mice. The miser hoards riches not for himself but for others. I am not born for one corner; my country is this whole world. Pleasure soothes our senses. The soldiers spared neither women nor children. Lysurgus recommended frugality to all. The upright man envies nobody. Aristides was present at the naval battle at (āpūd) Salamis. Those who devote themselves to virtue are alone rich. With [to] great men all things always turn out successfully. The sister of Atticus was married to Cicero. Hannibal struck a great terror into the Roman army. To every virtue is opposed a vice. We often put ducks' eggs under hens. Let us imitate the example of Christ who blessed his very enemies. Old age is a disease which no physician can cure. I could never be convinced that *our* souls are mortal. Riches are more frequently envied than virtue. A perfect man never cursed fortune. The condition of those whom fortune excessively favors is most dangerous.

217. Dative with Verbs (continued).

1. Certain **Verbs** may take either the **Dative** of a person and the **Accusative** of a thing, or the **Accusative** of a person and the **Ablative** of a thing, as:

dono tibi librum, *I present you a book;*
 dono te libro, *I present you with a book;*
 circumdat urbi murum, *he puts a wall around the city;*
 circumdat urbem muro, *he surrounds the city with a wall.*

In like manner are used:

adspargērē, *to sprinkle*

indūrērē, *to put on.*

Semper in civitatē ii, quibus opes nullae sunt, bonis invident, malos extollunt, vetēra odēre, nova exoptant. Dives est, cui tanta possessiō est, ut nihil optet ampliūs. Multi homines ea sibi laudi ducunt, quae fortunae debent. Pericles agros suos rei publicae dono dedit. Ampla domus dedecori saepe domino fit, si est in ea solitudo. Spes vitae futurae miseris magno solatio est. Nimia fiducia magnae calamitati solet esse. Quod aliis vitio vertis, id tibi laudi ne ducas. Virtus sola neque datur dono, neque accipitur. Ut inter arbores suus cuique fructus est, ita inter homines suae cuique sunt dotes. Aeneas, Anchisae filius, cum multis Trojanis, quibus ferrum Graecorum pepercerat, aufugit et in Italiam pervenit. Rheae Silviae, Numitoris filiae duo erant filii, quorum alteri erat nomen Romulus, alteri Remus. Deus animam corpore circumdedit. Medico non solum morbus ejus, cui mederi volet, sed etiam consuetudo valentis et natura corporis cognoscenda est.

218. Lȳdūs, -ī, a *Lydian*

Henricūs, -ī, *Henry*

Attālūs, -ī, *Attalus*

impēnētrābilis, -ē, *impenetrable*
Sēmīrāmīs, -, *Semiramis*

Plātaeēnsēs, -īūm, *the Plataeans*

sālūbēr, -rīs, -rē, *salutary*

[ble] inconsultō, *inconsiderately*

in pēriculā mittērē, *to bring into danger*

Man has a resemblance to [with] God. The lion has its greatest strength in its breast. The Lydians had many kings before Croesus. Flowers have not always the same color. My name is Henry. Attalus, a king of Asia, gave his kingdom to the Romans as a present. Avarice is [for] a great evil to men. Virtues bring [are for] honor and glory to men. Crocodiles have the upper part of the body hard and impenetrable, the lower part soft and tender. Tall trees have deep (altūs) roots. He is a useless person who lives for himself alone. Semiramis founded Babylon and surrounded the city with a wall. I have many books. A thousand Plataeans came to the help of the Athenians against the Persians. Poverty is [for] a disgrace to no one. As with diseases of the body, so we can heal diseases of the mind if we apply salutary remedies. God is not wont to come to the help of those who bring themselves inconsiderately into danger. Patience is the remedy for every (quīvis) grief.

219. Dative with Adjectives.

1. The **Dative** is used after **Adjectives** or **Adverbs**, to denote that to which the quality is directed.

The most common are those signifying:

*useful, fit, pleasant, like,
near, easy, inclined, necessary, and their Opposites.*

acceptūs, <i>acceptable</i>	invīūs, <i>impassable</i>
accommodātūs, <i>adapted</i>	jūcundūs, <i>agreeable</i>
amicūs, <i>friendly</i>	injūcundūs, <i>disagreeable</i>
inimicūs, <i>unfriendly, opposed</i>	molestūs, <i>troublesome</i>
aptūs, <i>apt, suitable</i>	necessāriūs, <i>necessary</i>
cārūs, <i>dear</i>	odiosūs, <i>hateful</i>
communis, <i>common</i>	pār, <i>equal, a match for</i>
dulcis, <i>agreeable</i>	dispār, <i>unlike</i>
facilis, <i>easy</i>	sālūtāris, <i>beneficial</i>
difficilis, <i>difficult</i>	similis, <i>like</i>
grātūs, <i>pleasing</i>	dissimilis, <i>unlike</i>
ingrātūs, <i>unpleasant</i>	turpis, <i>disgraceful</i>
grāvis, <i>burdensome</i>	utilis, <i>useful</i>
✓ canis similis lupo est	<i>a dog is similar to a wolf</i>
✓ flamma fumo est proxima	<i>fire is next akin to smoke.</i>

Many Adjectives which belong to this class become *Substantives* and as such take the **Genitive**; e. g.:

amicūs, <i>a friend</i>	aequālis, <i>a contemporary</i>
inimicūs, <i>an enemy</i>	vīcīnūs, <i>a neighbor</i>
fāmiliāris, <i>an (intimate) friend</i>	necessāriūs, <i>a relation</i>

Adjectives of **Inclination** may take the **Accusative** with *ergā* (when *friendly* feelings are spoken of) or with *in*, *adversūs* (for *friendly* and *unfriendly* feelings); those signifying *useful, suitable* take oftener the **Accusative** with *ad* to denote the thing for which, but regularly the **Dative** of **Persons**.

Manlius fuit severus in filium, *Manlius was severe towards his son;*
homo ad nullam rem utilis, *a good-for-nothing fellow.*

The Adjectives *propior, proximūs* (sometimes), and the Adverbs *propius, proximē* (commonly) take the **Accusative**. After *similis, like*, the **Genitive** is more usual to denote exact resemblance; hence we say: *mei, tui, nostri similis, my, your, our like*, and *verī similis, likely*.

2. A few **Derivative Substantives** take the **Dative** after the Analogy of their Primitives, as:

justitiā est obtemperantiā legibus, justice is obedience to the laws.

3. The **Dative** of a **Personal Pronoun** is sometimes introduced for liveliness of expression: **Ethical Dative.**

*fur mihi est, he is a thief in my opinion;
quid tibi vis? what do you want?*

<i>për sē, for one's own sake</i>	<i>elligō, -ērē, to gather</i>
<i>mōdūm tēnērē, to observe a limit</i>	<i>institūō, -ērē, to establish</i>
<i>finitimūs, -ā, -ūm, neighboring</i>	<i>Sōlōn, -ōnis, Solon</i>
<i>ineptūs, -ā, -ūm, inapt</i>	<i>Vulcānūs, -ī, Vulcan</i>
<i>stirps, -is, a root</i>	<i>etiāmsī, even if</i>

Non solum nobis divites esse volumus, sed liberis, propinquis, amicis, maximēque patriae. Hominum generi universo cultura agrorum salutaris est. Ipse se quisque diligit, quod per se sibi quisque carus est. Est hominum naturae, quam sequi debemus, maxime inimica crudelitas. Verba innocenti reperire facile est; modum verborum misero tenere difficile. Respublica Romana adeo erat valida, ut cuilibet finitimarum civitatum bello par esset. Ineptum id dicitur, quod nec tempori nec homini nec loco aptum est. Ex quibusdam stirpibus et herbis remedia morbis et vulneribus eligimus. Modestia prima est adulescenti commendatio. Invia virtuti nulla est via. Atheniensibus leges instituit Solon, Spartanis Lycurgus. Arma fecit Vulcanus Achilli. Acerrimus virtuti adversarius videtur esse dolor. Amo veritatem, etiamsi mihi jucunda non est.

220. <i>beneficentiā, -ae, beneficence</i>	<i>appētō, -ērē, to seek</i>
<i>secundum (with accus.), next to</i>	<i>fūnūs, -eris, a funeral</i>
<i>liberalitas, -atis, liberality</i>	<i>pallium, -ī, the pallium, a large cloak</i>

The soil of *their* country is dear to all. Nothing is so like death as sleep. *Next to God, men can be most useful to men. Nothing is more pleasing, nothing more acceptable to God than a pious mind and *one* mindful of benefits. The seas and

lands obey God. Nothing is more adapted to man's nature than beneficence and liberality. He is a good man who benefits whom he can *and* hurts nobody. Old age is burdensome to most men. Death is common to every age. Every animal seeks that which is adapted to *its* nature. No place ought to be more agreeable (*dulcis*) to us than our country. True friends are never troublesome to us. Many punishments are not less disgraceful to a prince than many funerals to a physician. Trust in God; to trust in men is not safe. Truth is to many people troublesome and hateful. The pallium seemed to the Romans *to be* suitable for every season. This business is too difficult for you. To the unhappy man time is very long, to the happy man, very short. I think that a knowledge of future events is not useful to us.

221. Genitive with Substantives.

The **Genitive** is especially the **Case** of a **Substantive** that is added to another Substantive in order to limit or define the meaning.

1. If the qualified noun signifies some action or condition of which, if it were expressed by a verb, the noun in the **Genitive** would be the **Subject**, the case is called the **Subjective Genitive**, as:

✓ amor Dei, *the love of God* (= *God loves*).

2. If the **Genitive** would be the **Object** of the action expressed by the other noun in verb-form, we call it an **Objective Genitive**, as:

✓ amor Dei, *love of (toward) God* (= *we love God*).

3. The **Genitive** of the **Personal Pronouns** is commonly **Objective**; exceptions are *nostrum* and *vestrum* which are used as partitive Genitives (see below 6). Mark the following examples:

✓
✓
✓
✓
studium nostri *sympathy for us*
multi nostrum *many of us*
melior pars nostri *the better part of us*
major pars nostrum *the greater part of us*

4. The **Possessive Pronoun** is generally used as the **Subjective Genitive**, as: *amicus meus*, *a friend of mine*. Additional Attributes are put in the Genitive: *tua ipsius soror*, *your own sister*.

5. The **Genitive** is used to denote **Quality**, but only when the quality is modified by an **Adjective**; it is joined to a **Substantive** either *attributively* or *predicatively*, as:

vir maximi consilii a man of very great prudence
Terentius magni ingenii est Terence is a man of great talent.

The **Genitive of Quality**, though less common than the **Ablative**, is always used when **Number**, **Measure**, **Time** or **Space** are denoted. **Parts of the body** are in the **Ablative** only (see 231, 3.)

exsilium decem annorum an exile of ten years
Caesar fuit excelsa statura Caesar was of tall stature.

6. The **Partitive Genitive** expressing the relation of a **Whole** to its **Parts** is used:

With **Substantives of Quantity, Number, Weight**, as:

medimnum tritici a bushel of wheat;

With **Pronouns, Numerals, Comparatives and Superlatives**, as:

quis vestrum? which of you? regum ultimus, the last of the
prior horum, the former of these kings

With **Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns** used as **Nouns**, but only in the **Nominative** or **Accusative**. Such are:

tantum, so much	quantum, as much	aliquantum, somewhat
multum, much	plus, more	plurimum, most
paulum, little	minus, less	minimum, least
hoc, this	id, illud, istud, that	nil, nothing
quod, which	quid, what	idem, the same

nil novi, nothing new idem consilii, the same (of) advice
quid novi? what news? quid causae? what reason?

The **Genitive** after these **Adjectives and Pronouns** may be a **neuter adjective** of the **Second Declension**, but not of the **Third**:

aliquid boni, something good nihil melius, nothing better.

With the **Adverbs of Quantity, Place, Extent**:

satis, enough	ubi, where	huc	} to this degree
parum, too little	nusquam, nowhere	eo	
nimis, too much	affatim, plenty		

nimis lucis, too much light

huc arrogantiae, to this degree of insolence

ubi terrarum or gentium? where in the world?

7. The **Genitive of Specification** has the force of an Apposition, especially with *vox, word; nōmēn, name; verbūm, word, as:*

vox voluptātis, the word "pleasure"

arbor abiētis, a fir-tree

nomen regis, the title of king.

8. The **Genitive** is used with the Ablatives *causā and grātiā*, *for the sake of*; also with *ergō, on account of; instār, like. causā, grātiā, ergō, commonly follow the Genitive.* Mark the expressions:

mea, tua, sua causā (not *grātiā*), *for my, thy, his sake*

amōris magis quam honoris grātiā, more for love's than honor's
instar montis equus, a horse like a mountain. [sake]

9. Frequently *aedēs* and *templūm, temple*, and sometimes other nouns are omitted, when no mistake can arise:

ad Vestae ventum erat, they had arrived at the temple of Vesta.

lūcrūm, -ī, gain

propōnō, -ērē, to offer

Tītūs, -ī, Titus, a Roman emperor

facilitās, -ātis, easy access

aliquid molestiae, more or less of trouble

amiscēō, -ērē, to commingle

facile, unquestionably

mūtātio, -ōnis, an interchange

innātūs, -ā, -ūm, born in

pondūs, -ērīs, weight

glōriā, -ae, honor

excelsūs, -ā, -ūm, lofty

stātūrā, -ae, stature

accommodō, -ārē, to adjust

Non lucri sed honoris gratia praemia proponi solent. Bonorum mores malorum consuetudine deteriores fiunt. Titus facilitatis tantae fuit et liberalitatis, ut nulli quidquam negaret. Multae sunt voluptates, quibus aliquid molestiae admixtum est. Graecorum oratorum praestantissimi sunt ii, qui fuerunt Athenis; eorum autem princeps facile Demosthenes. Multum iucunditatis habet caeli solique mutatio. Fac eadem amicorum causa, quae tua causa facere soles. Amor patriae homini innatus est. Latini donum Jovi coronam auream in Capitolium tulere parvi ponderis. Hannibalis nomen erat magna apud omnes gloria. Caesar fuit excelsa statura, colore candido, nigris oculis, valetudine prospera. Animus pars mei est. Julius Caesar annum ad cursum solis accommodavit, ut trecentorum sexaginta quinque dierum esset. Habet ira hoc mali: non vult regi. Affatim est hominum, quibus nihil negotii est.

222. cūpīdītās, -ātīs, <i>desire</i>	excellens, -tīs, <i>excellent</i>
dilatīō, -ōnīs, <i>delay</i>	Massāgētāe, -ārūm, <i>the Massagetae</i>
mercēs, -ēdīs, <i>recompense</i>	prōcrēō, -ārē, <i>to produce</i>
prōhibēō, -ērē, <i>to restrain</i>	inūsītātūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>extraordinary</i>
sustīnēō, -ērē, <i>to bear</i>	

The better part of us is immortal. Men have a great desire for those things which are forbidden. The best remedy for anger is delay. True virtue desires no recompense for labors and dangers. Not the fear of punishment, but the love of virtue ought to restrain us from (āb) *doing* wrong. How many has the fear of divine punishment recalled from crime? In the army of Alexander there were 32,000 foot-soldiers, 4000 horse and 182 ships. Nobody who is of sound mind will deny that there is a God. *Our* hand is a part of us. Ships on rivers bear less burden than on the sea. The most excellent kings of the Persians were Cyrus and Dareus, the son of Hystaspes; of these the former fell in battle among (āpūd) the Massagetae. The keenest [out] of all the senses is the sense of sight. Among the greatest vices none is more frequent than *that* of an ungrateful mind. Follow virtue for its own sake! Where in the world are we? The sea produces animals of extraordinary size. In the provinces of the Roman Empire there was a great number of Roman citizens.

223. Genitive with Adjectives.

Many **Adjectives** are followed by a **Genitive** to complete their meaning.

The commonest of them are:

1. **Adjectives** denoting *Desire, Knowledge, Recollection, Participation, Mastery, Fullness* and their **Opposites**:

cūpīdūs, <i>eager, desirous</i>	expers, <i>without share in</i>
stūdīōsūs, <i>devoted to</i>	compōs, <i>capable, master of</i>
pērītūs, <i>skillful in</i>	impōs, <i>not in possession of</i>
īncīlūs	impōtens, <i>unable or powerless</i>
nescīlūs	<i>to control</i>
īgnārūs	plēnūs, <i>full, covered with</i>
mēmōr, <i>mindful</i>	particeps, <i>sharing, partaker</i>
īmmēmōr, <i>unmindful</i>	<i>of, endowed with</i>

2. **Participial Adjectives** denoting *permanent qualities* (mostly ending in **ns**), as:

diligens, *careful, lover of*
amans, *fond of*

particeps consilii
compos mentis
cupidus gloriae
amans sui virtus

pätiens, *capable of enduring*
impätiens, *incapable of enduring*

a sharer in the plan
in possession of one's mind
eager for glory
virtue fond of itself.

pröprius, *own*, and communis, *common*, take the **Genitive** when the idea of *property* or *peculiarity* prevails (see 219, 1.).

populi Romäni est propria libertas

liberty is characteristic of the Roman people.

Epäminondäs, -ae, *Epaminon-jöcö, in joke*
Sullänüs, -ä, -üm, *of Sulla*
räpinae, -ärüm, *plunder*
vëtüs, -ëris, *former*
nävigium, -i, *a vessel*

[das

pröjicü, -ërë (se), *to plunge*
jam nunc, *just now*
Belgae, -ärüm, *the Belgians*
rës militäris, *military affairs*
rës növae, *a revolution*
exëö, -irë, *to leave*

Epaminondas erat adëo veritätis diligens, ut ne joco quidem mentirëtur. Milites Sulläni, rapinarum et victoriäe vetëris memöres, civile bellum exoptäbant. Viri propria maxime est fortitüdo. Qui in eödem sunt navigio, ejusdem sunt participes periculi. Non omnes lusus adulescentes litterarum studiösos decent. Alexander plenus pulvëris et sudöris in flumen se projëcit. Ventürae memöres jam nunc estöte senectae. Eripite isti gladium, qui impos animi est. Solus homo ex tot animantium generibus ratiönis est particeps. Sapientis est proprium, nihil quod paenitëre possit, facëre. Mens hominum nescia est fati sortisque futürae. Alexander gloriae cupidus patiensque laboris, at irae impötens erat. Belgae rei militäris peritissimi semperque novarum rerum cupidi erant. Mens omnium virtutum compos est. Postquam Pompëjus et consules ex Italia exierunt, non sum, mihi crede, mentis compos.

224. assimulö, -ärë, *to feign*
urbänüs, -ä, -üm, *belonging to the city; city-*

noctüä, -ae, *an owl*
acceptüs, -ä, -üm, *received*
caelestis, -ë, *heavenly*

bellüm nävälë (-i -is), *naval warfare*

The English Adverb *usually* may be translated by *sölärë, to be wont*, with an **Infinitive**, as: *sölëo essë, I am usually; sölent essë they are usually.*

Human life is full of dangers. **Most men** are usually more mindful of wrongs than of benefits. Socrates feigned himself ignorant of all things. Farmers are commonly ignorant of city manners. Pythagoras first called wise men philosophers, that is, *persons* devoted to wisdom. Caesar was most skillful in military affairs. Beasts have no share in reason and speech. Boys are not always fond enough of truth. The ancient Romans were very eager for glory. From (ex) the time of Themistocles the Athenians were very skillful in naval warfare. Asses are very capable of enduring labor. The eyes of owls are not capable of enduring light. Gaul was full of Roman citizens. Always be [ye] mindful of benefits received. Men are often more desirous of riches than wisdom. Often a man, although he is endowed with reason, seems powerless to control his anger. Camels are very capable of enduring thirst. No one is without share in heavenly benefits.

225. Genitive with Certain Verbs.

1. **Verbs of Reminding, Remembering, Forgetting** take the **Genitive**.

admōnērē	} <i>to remind</i>	mēmīnissē	} <i>to remember</i>
commōnērē		rēmīniscī	
commōnēfācērē		rēcōrdārī	
obliviscī, <i>to forget</i>			

Verbs of **Reminding**, with the Accusative of the *Person*, are followed by the Genitive of the *Person or Thing* to which the attention is called.

te vetëris amicitiae admonëo, I remind you of our old friendship.

Verbs of **Remembering and Forgetting** take the Genitive if a *Person*, and either the Genitive or Accusative, if a *Thing* is remembered or forgotten.

<u>memīni vivörum</u>	<i>I am mindful of the living</i>
<u>anīmus memīnit praeteritörum.</u>	<i>the mind remembers the past</i>
<u>obliviscī nihil soles nisi injurias</u>	<i>you are wont to forget nothing except injuries.</i>

When the Object is expressed by a **Neuter Pronoun** or **Adjective**, it is with all these verbs in the **Accusative**, as:

hoc te admonēo

I warn you of this.

mēmīnī, *I remember*, when referring to a **contemporary**, always takes the **Accusative**.

meminēram Catōnem

I remembered Cato.

2. **Verbs of Valuing** are joined with the **Genitive**, when the Value is expressed in a **General** or **Indefinite** Manner.

Such **Verbs** are:

aestimārē, *to value*

hābērē, *to hold*

pūtārē, *to reckon*

pendērē, *to weigh*

dūcērē, *to take*

fācērē, *to make, put*

essē, *to be (worth)*

The following are **Genitives of general value**:

magnī, *much*

quantī, *how much*

parvī, *little*

plūrīmī, maxīmī, *most*

tantī, *so much*

minīmī, *least*

plūrīs, *more*

nīhīlī, *naught*

minōrīs, *less*

floccī, *a lock of wool, a straw*

The **Complete Phrases** are, then, as follows:

parvī pendērē or aestimārē, *to esteem lightly*

magnī essē, *to be of great account*

plūrīs essē, *to be of more account, to be worth more*

nīhīlī dūcērē, *to think nothing of*

magnī aestimārē or hābērē, *to value highly*

plūrīs aestimārē, *to esteem of more value*

plūrīmī aestimārē, *to value very highly*

minīmī fācērē, *to make of very little account*

floccī fācērē, *to care not a straw for*

divitiāe a me minīmī putantur, *riches are very little prized by me;*
opēram tuam magnī aestīmo, *your help I value highly.*

3. **Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning and Acquitting**, with the **Accusative** of the Person, take the **Genitive** of the **Charge**.

accūsārē
incūsārē
insimulārē
argūrē
arcessērē
rēum faciērē

} to accuse, charge

} to summon

cōargūrē } to convict
convincērē }
damnārē } to condemn, find
condemnārē } guilty
absolvērē, to acquit

honestam familiam scelēris ar-
gūis

you accuse an honorable family
of crime

aliquem levitātis convincere

to convict one of levity.

The **Crime** may be expressed by the **Ablative** with **dē**:

accusare aliquem de vi, de re-
petundis, de veneficio

to accuse one of assault, of ex-
tortion, of poisoning,

or by the **Genitive** with **nōmīnē** or **crīmīnē**, as:

nomīne conjuratiōnis condem-
nāti sunt

they were condemned on the
charge of conspiracy.

The **Punishment** may be expressed by the **Ablative**, and must be expressed by this case when a definite sum is mentioned; **multārē**, to mulct, punish, is always construed with the Ablative.

damnare capitis or capite

to condemn to death

Camillus decem milibus damnā-
tus est

Camillus was fined 10,000

Manlius virtutem filii morte
multavit

Manlius punished the valor of
his son with death.

Tiberiūs, -ī, the Emperor Tibe-
relliō, -ōnis, an oath [rius
audax, -ācis, daring
prorsus, wholly
oculātus, -ā, -ūm, eye-
auritus, -ā, -ūm, ear-
Roscius, -ī, Roscius
parricidiūm, -ī, parricide

elōquentēr, eloquently
omnium sententiā, the unani-
mous decision
commemōrō, -ārē, to mention
responsūm, -ī, an answer
admōnitiō, -ōnis, a warning
ārē, -ae, a piece of ground
vēnālīs, -ē, for sale

Tiberiūs iudices legum et religiōnis admonēbat. Pravi homīnes sua parvi pendere, aliēna cupere solent. Ne audācem quidem timōris prorsus absolvimus. Pluris est oculātus testis unus, quam auriti decem. Roscium parricidii accusātum Cicero tam eloquenter defendit, ut hujus facinoris omnium iudicum sententiis absolveretur. Beneficia meminisse debet is,

in quem collāta sunt, non commemorāre, quī contūlit. Socrātis responso sic iudīces exarsērunt, ut homīnem innocentissimum capitis condemnārent. Ingrāti anīmi accusātur, qui beneficiā non memīnit. Admonitio mea tibi non vidētur magni fuisse; neque hoc miror, nam etiā ea, quae pater tibi dixerat, nihīli duxisti. Tuam admonitiōnem non oblitus sum. Si prata et arēas quasdam magni aestimāmus, quanti aestimanda est virtus, quae nullo pretio venālis est? Homīnes facilius beneficiā quam injuriās oblivisci solent.

226. prōditiō, -ōnis, <i>treason</i>	sānē, <i>certainly</i>
mālēdīcūs, -ī, <i>a calumniator</i>	jūdicēs, -ūm, <i>the jury</i>
rārītās, -ātis, <i>scarcity</i>	considerātē, <i>with consideration</i>

Men sometimes forget things the most renowned. Miltiades was accused of treason. Virtue makes pleasure of very little account. My conscience is of more account to me than the talk of all men. Never forget a benefit received. Do you know that many men esteem virtue of more value than life itself? So live that you can convict all calumniators of falsehood. Homer was very highly valued by Alexander the Great. Themistocles *while* absent was found guilty of treason. That is a happy memory which forgets nothing but an injury received. Gold and gems on account of *their* scarceness and beauty have been always esteemed of more value than other metals which are more useful to men. I remember, I remember, nor shall I ever forget that night when our house was destroyed by fire. Knowledge is certainly to be highly valued, but we justly esteem virtue of more value. The jury condemned Socrates to death. To act with consideration is worth more than to think wisely.

227. Genitive as a Predicate. The Verb intērest.

1. The **Subjective Genitive** may be used as a **Predicate** with the verbs *essē* and *fīērī* to denote that to which something belongs or to which something is peculiar,

In English the words *part, property, duty, office, business, characteristic*, are commonly supplied. Instead of the Genitive of Personal Pronouns the Neuters of the Possessives: *mēum, tūum*, etc., are used.

haec domus est Caesāris
temeritas est florentis aetātis,
prudentia senectutis
mentiri non est meum

*this house is Caesar's
rashness is the characteristic
of youth, prudence of old age
to lie is not my way.*

2. With the **Impersonal** interest (and sometimes also with *rēfert*), *it concerns, interests, it is the interest of, it is of importance for*, the **Genitive** is used to denote the **Person or Thing Concerned**.

The **Genitive** seems to be governed by *causā* understood; hence instead of the Genitive of the personal pronoun the Ablative singular feminine of the Possessives *mēā, tūā, suā, nostrā, vestrā* is used with these verbs, as: *mēā intērest, I am concerned*; with *omnium*, however, *nostrum* and *vestrum* must be used: *omnium nostrum intērest, it concerns all of us*.

rēfert seldom occurs with the Genitive, occasionally with *mēā, tūā*, etc., and most frequently without either such pronoun or a Genitive, as: *nihil rēfert, no matter; quid rēfert, what matter?*

The **Thing** which is of interest or importance is expressed:

by a **Neuter Pronoun**, as: *hoc vehementer intērest reipublicae, this is of very much importance to the state;*

by an **Infinitive**, as: *intērest omnium recte facere, to do right is the interest of all;*

by an **Accusative** with the **Infinitive**, as: *multum mēā intērest te diligentem esse, it is of great importance to me that you be diligent;*

by an **Interrogative Sentence**, as: *multum mea intērest utrum diligens sis necne, it is of great importance to me whether you are diligent or not.*

The **Degree** of importance is expressed by.

Adverbs: *magnōpērē, magis, maximē, pārūm*, etc.

Neuter Adjectives: *multūm, plūs, plurimūm, minūs*, etc.

Genitives of Value: *magnī, plurīs, parvī, tantī*, etc.

The **Thing** with reference to which one is interested is expressed by the **Accusative** with **ad**: *magni ad honōrem nostrum intērest, it is of great consequence to our honor.*

pārentēs cōlērē, <i>to respect one's</i>	indicō, -ārē, <i>to tell</i>
parents	licēō, -ērē, <i>to be for sale</i>
pētulantīā, -ae, <i>sauciness</i>	emptōr, -ōris, <i>a buyer</i>
nōn prōbī, <i>those who are not</i>	insipiens, -tis, <i>a fool</i>
<i>well-behaved</i>	persēvērō, -ārē, <i>to persevere</i>
ādīpiscōr, -ī, <i>to acquire</i>	damnātiō, -ōnis, <i>condemning</i>
vendītōr, -ōris, <i>a seller</i>	impēritūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>ignorant</i>

Non refert, quam multos libros, sed quam bonos habēas. Ut parentum est bene educāre libēros, sic liberōrum, colēre parentes iisque oboedīre. Petulantīa magis est adulescentīum quam senum; neque tamen omnīum adulescentīum, sed non probōrum. Lycurgus maxīmos honōres non divītum, sed senum esse volūit. Qui virtūtem adeptus erit, ubicunque erit genitūm, a nobis diligētur. Venditōris est indicāre, quanti merx licēat, emptōris licēri. Nostrum est parentes amāre. Cujusvis homīnis est errāre, nullus nisi insipientis in errōre perseverāre. Nihil est tam angusti anīmi tamque parvi, quam amāre divitias. Bello Gallīco praeter Capitoliū atque arcem omnia hostiū erant. Damnatio est iudicium, poena legis. Nihil mea intērest, quid de me homīnes imperīti loquantur. Quid refert, quam diu vixeris, nisi bene vixeris? Maxīme mea intērest, ut discipulī mei virtūtem pluris faciānt quam aliā omnia.

228. hōnōrātūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>honored</i>	subvēnīō, -īrē, <i>to assist</i>
Lācēdaemōn, -ōnis, <i>Lacedaemon</i>	innōcentiā, -ae, <i>innocence</i>
	causā, -ae, <i>a trial</i>

It is the duty of children to reverence their parents, and of parents to love their own children and to correct their (eōrum) faults. Nowhere in the world had old age a more honored place than in Lacedaemon. Angry persons are commonly sorry for those things which they have done in (pēr) their anger. It very much interests not only parents but also the country itself that children should be well educated [children to be well educated]. It is the duty of a judge to assist [to] innocence. In the time (plur.) of Augustus almost the whole world was *in possession* of the Romans. It is the part of brave men to suffer pain with even mind. It is your duty to reverence your parents. It is the part of a sincere friend not

to forsake a friend in adversity. It is not my way to say: I had not thought of that. It is the interest of all to do right. It is the part of a wicked man to deceive by falsehood. The whole kingdom of the Persians came under Alexander's dominion [became A.'s]. It is the duty of every man to speak the truth. It is the habit of fools to live for (in) the day. It is the duty of a judge in trials always to follow the truth.

229. Ablative of Cause, Means, Limitation.

1. The **Ablative** is used to express the **Cause**.

The **Ablative of Cause** designates *that by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which* something is or is done. Accordingly it is used with passive verbs and such active verbs and adjectives as imply a passive meaning. In the passive construction the *Person* or *Living agent* by whom any thing is done is put in the Ablative with **ā, āb**.

Dei providentiā mundus admini- strātur	<i>the world is governed by God's providence</i>
a Deo mundus administrātur	<i>the world is governed by God</i>
concordiā res parvae crescunt	<i>by concord small affairs grow</i>
milites praelio fessi erant	<i>the soldiers were weary with the battle.</i>

The **Ablative of Cause** is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with **Verbs** and **Adjectives**, as:

dolēre, to grieve	glōriārī, to boast
maerēre, to mourn	lābōrāre, to suffer
gaudēre } to rejoice, delight	sūperbūs, proud
laetārī }	laetūs, pleased — aegēr, ill
dēlectārī, to be delighted	anxīūs, anxious

agricōla gaudet equis, *the husbandman delights in horses;*
Miltiādes aeger erat vulneribus, *Miltiades was ill from his wounds;*
aliis malis labōras, *you suffer with other ills.*

This includes such **Ablatives** as: jussū, *by order*; rōgātū, *at the request*, etc. On causā and grātīā, *for the sake of* see 221, 8.

Akin to the Causal Ablative is the **Ablative** with verbs expressing origin, as:

humilibus parentibus ortus	<i>sprung from low parents.</i>
----------------------------	---------------------------------

pellibusque erant vestiti. Deus nulla re magis homines separavit a ceteris animalibus quam dicendi facultate. Ut adulescentibus bona indole praeditis sapientes senes delectantur, sic adulescentes senum praeceptis gaudent, quibus ad virtutum studia ducuntur. Servius Tullius regnare coepit non jussu, sed voluntate atque concessu civium. Alpibus Italia quasi naturali vallo contra barbaras gentes munita erat. Equus, quosum per urbem vectus, sinistro pede claudus fuit. Duarum civitatum civis esse nostro jure civili nemo potest. Croesus specie quidem beatus fuit, re vera autem admodum miser. Aristoteles omnium iudicio doctissimus vir totius antiquitatis fuit. Tuis te pingam coloribus. Veritas vel mendacio corrumpitur vel silentio.

230. consiliū, -ī, <i>prudence</i>	exercē, -ēre, <i>to cultivate</i>
cārītās, -ātis, <i>affection</i>	opprimō, -ēre, <i>to crush</i>
collustrō, -āre, <i>to illuminate</i>	mājorēs nātū, <i>one's elders</i>
pāternūs, -ūs, -ūm, <i>paternal</i>	intērītūs, -ūs, <i>a loss</i>

The bull defends itself with *its* horns, the horse with *its* hoofs, the boar with *its* teeth. Many comets we do not see, because they are obscured by the sun's rays. Xerxes was conquered more by the prudence of Themistocles than by the arms of Greece. Friendships are known by affection and love. The earth is clothed with flowers, plants, trees *and* fruits. By the prudence and valor of Scipio, Hannibal was compelled to depart from (ex) Italy. Every one measures dangers by his own fear. Alexandria was founded by Alexander the Macedonian. The sun illuminates all things with a most bright light. Happy is he who cultivates his paternal fields with his own oxen. The world is governed by God's providence. Egypt was added to the Roman empire by [means of] Octavianus. Birds are covered with feathers, quadrupeds with hairs, fish with scales. The liberty of the Romans was crushed by Tarquin the Proud, but was restored by [means of] Brutus. My brother is lame in his right foot. It is the duty of a youth to reverence *his* elders. Ariovistus was by nation a German. Not by *their* fortune I will value men, but by *their* character. All good men mourn over the loss of their *beloved* ones.

231. Ablative of Comparison, Manner, Quality, Price.

1. The **Ablative of Comparison** may be used with the Comparative instead of *quām, than*, with the *Nominative* or *Accusative*.

✓ | filius melior est quam pater } the son is better than his father
 | filius melior est patre }
 | scio filium meliorem esse patre } I know that the son is better than his father.

The **Ablative** is used **exclusively** in **Relative Sentences**.

amicitia, qua nihil melius habemus.. friendship than which we have nothing better..

quām is often omitted after **plūs, amplius, more; minus, less; longius, farther**, and the like without influence upon the construction. But the **Ablative** may also be used when the word with **quām** would be in the *Nominative* or *Accusative*.

ex Romanis minus trecenti perierunt of the Romans less than 300 perished
 tecum plus annum vixit he lived with you more than a year

plus quam ducenti interfecti sunt }
 plus ducenti interfecti sunt } more than 200 were killed.
 plus ducentis interfecti sunt }

Certain Ablatives, as **opinione, expectatione, spe, solito**, preceding a comparative are used instead of a **Clause**, as:

opinione celerius, sooner than is expected;
 dicto citius, quicker than the word was spoken;
 serius spe, later than was hoped;
 amnis solito citior, the river running faster than usual.

The **Ablative** is used with comparatives and words implying comparison to denote the **Degree of Difference**. This use is especially frequent with the **Ablatives**:

multo, much	altēro tantō, twice as much
paulo, a little	nihilō, by nothing, no
aliquantō, some more	quō...ēō } the...the
tantō, so much	quantō...tantō }
quantō, how much	
minor uno mense	younger by one month
multo praestat virtus divitiis	virtue is much better than riches.

2. The **Ablative** of **Manner** answers the question **How?**

It is used with the preposition **cūm** when it has no Adjective; with or without **cūm** when it has an adjective. Words signifying *manner* themselves, such as: *mōdus*, *rātiō*, *mōs*, *rītus*, and likewise *ānimus*, *mens*, *consiliūm*, never take **cūm**.

cum voluptate aliquem audire *to hear some one with pleasure*
aliquid facere magno studio, or *to do something with great zeal*
magno cum studio

, aliquid aequo animo ferre (**never** *to bear something with an even*
aequo cum animo) *mind.*

The following **Ablatives** are used without an Adjective or Preposition:

<i>silentio</i> , in silence	<i>iure</i> , rightfully
<i>ordine</i> , in an orderly manner	<i>injuria</i> , unjustly
<i>casu</i> , by chance	<i>vi</i> , violently
<i>via et ratione</i> , methodically	<i>vi et armis</i> , by force of arms
<i>voluntate</i> , voluntarily	<i>pedibus</i> , a-foot
<i>dolo</i> , fraud, fraudulently	<i>navibus</i> , by ship

3. The **Ablative** with an Adjective or an equivalent is used to denote **Quality**.

Physical characteristics are put in the Ablative only; measure, number, time and space in the Genitive only (see 221, 5).

serpens ingenti magnitudine, a serpent of huge size;
Britanni sunt capillo promisso, the Britons have long hanging locks.

4. As a rule, **Price** is put in the **Ablative**.

The **Ablative** of **Price** is used with

<i>emere</i> }	<i>aestimare</i> , to value
<i>redimere</i> }	<i>locare</i> }
<i>mercari</i> }	<i>collocare</i> }
<i>vendere</i> , to sell (<i>pass. venire</i>)	<i>conducere</i> , to hire
<i>licere</i> , to be for sale	<i>esse, stare, constare</i> , to cost
<i>patriam auro vendidit</i>	<i>he sold his country for gold</i>
<i>equus mihi talento stetit</i>	<i>the horse cost me a talent.</i>

General Value or Cost is expressed by the **Ablatives**:

magnō, *at a high price*

parvō, *at a low price*

nihilō, *for nothing*

plūrimō, *at a very high price*

minimō, *at a very low price*

hortos istos emāmus magno, si parvo non possumus
let us buy those gardens at a high price, if we cannot have them cheap.

Comparative Value or Cost (see 225, 2) is expressed by the **Genitives**:

tantī, *so much*

tantidēm, *at the same price*

mercatores non tantidem vendunt quanti emerunt

quanti cenas?

quantī, *how much*

plūris, *dearer*; minōris, *cheaper*

merchants do not sell at the same price at which they bought

what do you give for your dinner?

Mark the following Particular Phrases:

bēnē ēmerē, *to buy cheap*

mālē ēmerē, *to buy dear*

bēnē vendērē, *to sell dear*

mālē vendērē, *to sell at a loss.*

ultrō, *of one's own accord*

pecūniā, -ae, *a sum of money*

sextāriūs, -ī, *a pint*

ās, assis, *an as (farthing)*

Tullūs Hostiliūs (-ī -ī), *Tullus Hostilius*

Hostilius

proximūs, -ū, -ūm, *last*

fērox, -ōcis, *warlike*

sēveritās, -ātis, *severe judg-*

dēbilis, -ē, *weak* [ment]

ignōminia, -ae, *a disgrace*

Hortensius, -ī, *Hortensius*

incrēdibilis, -ē, *incredible*

rēcōr, -ārī, *to recover*

stōmachūs, -ī, *the stomach*

lātrans, -tis, *craving*

Patria mihi vita multo est carior. Neminem Lycurgo aut meliorem aut utiliorem virum Lacedaemon tulit. Nulla res carius constat, quam quae precibus emitur. Multo sanguine et vulneribus hostibus victoria stetit. Tantus terror Gallici nominis erat, ut reges ultro pacem ingenti pecunia mercarentur. Ii qui ab hoste obsidentur, interdum emere aquae sextarium magna pecunia coguntur. Quod non opus est, asse carum est. Tullus Hostilius non solum proximo regi dissimilis, sed ferocior etiam Romulo fuit. Est mundo nihil perfectius, nihil virtute melius. Oratores cum severitate audiuntur, poetae cum voluptate. Quo debilior est hostis, eo major est ignominia, si quis

ab eo vincitur. Cicero aliquot annis fuit minor natu quam Hortensius. Vetēres Germāni ingenti magnitudine corpōrum et incredibili fortitudine atque exercitatiōne in armis fuērunt. Bona valetudo jucundior est eis, qui e gravi morbo recreāti sunt, quam qui nunquam aegro corpore fuērunt. Interdum fit, ut parvo venēat, quod magno emptum est. Cum sale panis stomachum latrantem bene leniet. Qui sitiunt silentio bibunt. Empta dolore docet experientia.

232. crassūs, -ā, -ūm, dense	plānē, quite
Hiberniā, -ae, Ireland	infelix, -icis, unhappy
ingēniūm, -ī, talent	fortassē, perhaps
frēquens, -tis, crowded	cōpiā, -ae, stock
Jūgurthā, -ae, Jugurtha	lūcilentūs, -ā, -ūm, bright
Nūmidiā, -ae, Numidia	aliēnūs, -ā, -ūm, abroad

The earth revolves around *its* axis with the greatest swiftness. Cicero always began to speak with great fear. What is more desirable than wisdom, what better for man? No one is dearer to me than *my* parents. The simpler food is, the more useful it is for man. Those who have a good conscience are usually of a tranquil mind. The air is denser, the nearer it is to the earth. Ireland is less by half than Great Britain. We cannot buy virtue and wisdom with gold. The wise man bears an injury with an even mind. Not all pupils [are of] have great talent. In large and crowded cities houses are let at a very high price. The wiser any one is, the more modest *he is*. Jugurtha, king of Numidia, had purchased peace from the Roman generals with a large sum of money. Our house was bought for a very high price. We willingly keep company with those who are of cheerful mind. The peacock is handsomer than other birds, not more useful. Every *portion of* time seems the shorter, the happier it is. Those who live honorably and virtuously [with virtue] can never be quite unhappy. It is much more difficult to conquer one's self than an enemy. We sell our corn not dearer than every body else (*ceteri*), perhaps even cheaper, since we have a larger stock. No place ought to be dearer to thee than thy country. The smoke of our own country is brighter than fire abroad.

233. Ablative of Separation, Plenty, Want.

1. **Verbs** signifying *to remove, abstain, set free* take the **Ablative** with or without the Prepositions *ex, dē, āb*; but with *Persons* a Preposition, usually *āb*, must be used.

Examples are:

dēpellērē lōcō, *to drive from a place*
 abstīnērē injūrīā, *to abstain from wrong doing*
 abstīnērē mānūs āb āllēnīs, *to keep one's hands from other people's property*
 ējicērē ē cīvītātē, *to drive from the state*
 ērumpērē ē saxīs, *to burst from the rocks*
 ābhorrērē āb āliquā rē, *to differ from something*
 dētterrērē āb injūrīā, *to deter from wrong doing*
 libērārē ā cūrīs, *to release from cares*
 dēcēdērē (dē) vitā, *to depart from life*

Hannibal ex Italia decedere	<i>Hannibal was forced to withdraw from Italy</i>
coactus est	
Alexander vix a se manus abstinuit	<i>Alexander hardly kept his hands from himself</i>
multos fortuna liberat paena, metu neminem	<i>fortune rids many of punishment, none of fear.</i>

Verbs compounded with *sē* and *dīs* take nearly always *ā* or *āb*; such are:

discernērē } <i>to distinguish</i>	sēcernērē } <i>to separate</i>
distinguērē }	sējungērē }
differrē }	sēpārārē }
discrēpārē } <i>to differ, disagree</i>	likewise:
dissentīrē }	ālēnārē, <i>to alienate</i>
distārē }	ābhorrērē, <i>to be averse</i>

crede mihi, mores distant a carmine nostro	<i>believe me, my conduct far differs from my song.</i>
--	---

Mark the Particular Phrase:

interdicērē ālicui āquā et ignī, *to forbid one the use of fire and water, to banish one.*

2. **Verbs of Plenty and Want, of Filling and Depriving** take the **Ablative**.

ābundārē, <i>to abound, have abundance</i>	explērē	} <i>to fill</i>
cārērē, <i>to be or do without, to lack</i>	implērē	
ēgērē, indīgērē, <i>to need</i>	complērē	
vācārē, <i>to be void of, be free from</i>	rēplērē	} <i>to deprive</i>
sātīārē, <i>to glut</i>	orbārē	
	privārē	
	spōliārē	} <i>to plunder, to strip</i>
	nūdārē	
non egēo medicīna	<i>I do not need medicine</i>	
admonitio acerbitate carere debet	<i>an admonition should be without bitterness</i>	
America abundat lacubus et fluminibus	<i>America abounds in lakes and rivers.</i>	

ēgēō and indīgēō are often followed by the **Genitive**.

Adjectives of Plenty and Want regularly take the **Genitive** (see 223), but some of them follow the analogy of the corresponding verbs and take the **Ablative**. Among them are:

nūdūs, <i>naked</i>	ōnustūs, <i>laden</i>	rēfertūs, <i>stuffed</i>
orbūs, <i>deprived of</i>	inānīs	praeditūs, <i>endowed</i>
libēr, <i>free</i>	vācūūs } <i>void</i>	
asellus onustus auro	<i>a donkey laden with gold</i>	
urbs nuda praesidio	<i>a city naked of defence.</i>	

assidūūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>industrious</i>	ūtēr, -rīs, <i>a leather bag</i>
cāsēūs, -ī, <i>cheese</i>	exprōbrātīō, -ōnīs, <i>a reproof</i>
admiscēō, -ērē, <i>to add</i>	insatiābilīs, -ē, <i>that cannot be satisfied</i>
Timōlēōn, -ontīs, <i>Timoleon</i>	Āriōn, -ōnīs, <i>Arion</i>
felicītās, -ātīs, <i>good fortune</i>	sensūs, -ūs, <i>sensibility</i>
mērītūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>deserving</i>	fāmā, -ae, <i>glory</i>
Tómŷrīs, -, <i>Tomyris</i>	sōlātiūm, -ī, <i>consolation</i>
ampūtō, -ārē, <i>to cut off</i>	

Boni assidueque domini villa semper abundat lacte, caseo, melle. Cotidie nos natura admonet, quam paucis, quam parvis rebus eget. Nihil honestum esse potest, quod vacat iustitia. Deus mundum bonis omnibus explēvit, mali nihil admiscuit. Timoleon incredibili felicitate Dionysium tota Sicilia depulit. Docemur coercere omnes cupiditates, nostra

tuēri, ab aliēnis mentes, oculus, manus abstinēre. Athenienses optime meritos cives e civitate ejiciebant. Plurima flumina erumpunt saxis et montibus. Mare rubrum colore non abhorret a ceteris. Caput Cyri amputatum in utrem humano sanguine replētum conjici Tomiris regina jussit cum hac exprobratione crudelitatis: "Satia te sanguine, quem sitisti, cujusque insatiabilis semper fuisti." Thales interrogatus quid esset Deus: Quod, inquit, caret initio et fine. Themistocles tanta memoria praeditus erat, ut artem obliviscendi discere mallet quam artem memoriae. Mortui carent sensu. Arion nominis sui fama omnes terras impleverat. Hiems arbores foliis spoliavit. Vacare culpa magnum est solatium. Caret periculo, qui etiam tutus cavet.

234. mūnūs, -ērīs, <i>a service</i>	tām...quām, <i>so much...as</i>
sustinēō, -ērē, <i>to assume</i>	ars, -tīs, <i>skill</i>
perturbō, -ārē, <i>to disturb</i>	Prūsias, -ae, <i>Prusias</i>

The fear of punishment deters many from wrong doing. No space is void of air. Death releases men from all cares. If we shall be free from passions, we shall be able to depart from life with a tranquil mind. We all need God's help. Verres had an abundance of gold and silver vessels of which he had plundered the temples of the gods. Neither men nor animals can do without air. America abounds in gold. Old age is not without *its* pleasures and joys. The sun fills the whole world with its light. Democritus is said to have deprived himself of *his* eyes. The cold north-wind strips the trees of *their* leaves. Children need the advice of their parents. In Sulla's time (*plur.*) the Roman commonwealth was deprived of many illustrious men. No one's life is always filled with joys. The civil war which deprived our republic of its best men affected me with great grief. Many cannot abstain from wrong doing. Old age is free from those services which cannot be assumed without strength (*vīrēs*). Fear of death most disturbs those who abound in all good things. Do you need money? The most necessary things do not require (*indigēō*) skill so much as labor. Prusias was robbed of his kingdom and forsaken even by his friends.

235. Ablative in Special Constructions.

1. *ōpūs est*, *there is need, it is needful, necessary*, takes the **Dative** of the **Person** who is in want, and the **Ablative** of the **Thing** wanted; but the Thing wanted may be the Subject and *ōpūs est* (sunt) the Predicate.

The **Former Construction** must regularly be used in *Negative Sentences*, and the **latter** with *Neuter Adjectives* and *Pronouns*; *ōpūs* is always indeclinable.

opus mihi est libro	{ <i>I want a book</i>
liber mihi opus est	{ <i>a book is what I want</i>
opus mihi est libris	{ <i>I want books</i>
libri mihi opus sunt	{ <i>books are what I want</i>
nihil opus est duce	<i>there is no need of a leader</i>
multa opus sunt	<i>there is need of many things.</i>

2. The **Ablative** is used with the **Adjectives**:

dignūs, <i>worthy</i>	frētūs, <i>trusting, relying</i>
indignūs, <i>unworthy</i>	contentūs, <i>satisfied,</i>
also with dignōr, <i>I deem worthy.</i>	

ālīenūs, *strange, foreign*, takes the **Ablative** with or without **ā**, **āb**.

vir patre dignissimus	<i>a man most worthy of his father</i>
me dignor honōre	<i>I deem myself worthy of honor</i>
homo sum, hūmāni nihil a me	<i>I am a man, and nothing relating to man I deem foreign</i>
aliēnum puto	<i>to me.</i>

3. The **Ablative** is used with the **Deponent Verbs**:

ūtōr, -ī, <i>to use</i>	pōtīōr, -īrī, <i>to make one's self</i>
frūōr, -ī, <i>to enjoy</i>	<i>master of</i>
fungōr, -ī, <i>to discharge</i>	vescōr, -ī, <i>to feed</i>

and their **Compounds**:

ābūtōr, -ī, <i>to abuse</i>	dēfungōr, -ī, <i>to discharge</i>
perfrūōr, -ī, <i>to enjoy fully</i>	perfungōr, -ī, <i>to fulfil</i>

utar vestra benignitāte, *I will avail myself of your kindness;*
vescīmur bestiīs, *we live upon animals.*

pōtīōr sometimes takes the **Genitive**; always in the phrase: pōtīrī rērūm, *to get control of affairs.*

nītōr, *I stay myself, rest upon*, takes the **Ablative** with or without **In**.

fīdō and confīdō, *I trust*, take the **Ablative** when the object is a *Thing*, and the **Dative** when the object is a *Person*. diffīdō, *I distrust*, commonly takes the **Dative**. See 215, 3.

in Pompēji vita nititur salus ci- vitātis	<i>the welfare of the state depends on Pompey's life</i>
nemo potest fortunae stabilitate confidere	<i>no one can trust to the stability of fortune</i>
huic legioni Caesar maxime con- fidebat	<i>this legion Caesar especially trusted.</i>

rēcrēatiō, -ōnis, recreation	dīūtīnūs, -ūs, -ūm, long
sūperstitiō, -ōnis, superstition	exercitātūs, -ūs, -ūm, practiced
vēnērātiō, -ōnis, respect	dēmūm, indeed
Scythā, -ae, a Scythian	possidēō, -ēre, to possess
plaustrū, -ī, a wagon	quō, whither
pariō, -ere, to secure, obtain	Clēopātrā, -ae, Cleopatra

Corpōri animōque nonnumquam recreatiōne opus est. Ad communem civium salutem bonis legibus opus est. Decemviri leges, quibus populus Romanus uteretur (*obey*), in duodecim tabulis scripserunt. Qui homines superstitione liberant, non minus digni sunt veneratione, quam qui servitutem ab iis depellunt. Scythae uxores liberosque secum in plastris vehēbant, quibus pro domibus utebantur. Pax paritur bello; itaque qui pace diutina volunt frui, bello exercitati esse debent. Is demum sapientis et beati nomine dignus est, qui modica sorte contentus aequo animo iis caret, quae non possidet. Augustus Alexandria, quo Antonius cum Cleopatra fugerat, brevi tempore potitus est. Fide sapientiaque vestra fretus plus oneris sustuli, quam ferre me posse intelligo. Vincere scis, Hannibal; victoria uti nescis. Ad bellum gerendum copiis, armis et pecunia opus est. Qui bona fruitor valetudine, non indiget medicina. Nonnulli Romanorum servos, quorum fideli opera usi erant, donabant libertate. O hominem mille mortibus dignum! Virtus vel in hoste laude digna est. Laetus sorte tua vives sapienter!

236. sciens, -tis, skillful	pīetās, -ātis, piety
conficiō, -ērē, to accomplish	admīrātiō, -ōnis, admiration
imitātiō, -ōnis, imitation	rēcordātiō, -ōnis, recollection
fidēs, -ēi, loyalty	antiquūs, -ū, early

ūtī, to use, employ, has a great range of meaning. **Special Uses** worthy of note are as follows:

consilio uti, to follow advice
 legibus uti, to obey the laws
 bono patre uti, to have a good father
 aliquo amico uti, to have a friend in a man
 male uti aliqua re, to make bad use of a thing.

vīvērē, to live is construed like **vescī**, as: piscibus vivēre, to live on fish.

That ship which employs the most skillful pilot best accomplishes its course. How much money do you need? We sometimes have need of recreation. There is need not of many books but of good ones. The mind during sleep is free (vacuus) from cares. The virtue of excellent citizens is worthy of imitation, not of envy. The safety of the state rests on the loyalty, piety, and virtue of the citizens. Flies are no less worthy of admiration than elephants. How many are unworthy of light and nevertheless the sun rises! Those who are endowed with virtue are alone happy. Blessed is he who is content with honorable mediocrity. No one can trust either to the strength of his body, or to the stability of fortune. The laws which the Athenians obeyed were given by Solon. We rejoice in the recollection of past pleasures. All the works of God are worthy of the highest admiration. That is every one's own, which every one enjoys and uses. Alexander made himself master of the empire of the whole of Asia. Some tribes live on fish and the eggs of birds. Many men make bad use of riches. The light which we enjoy is given to us by God. Fraud is foreign to a good man. The old painters used but few colors. Men in the earliest times lived on acorns. Most people will enjoy greater happiness in heaven than they have enjoyed upon this earth. The elder Cato ate the same food and drank the same wine with his servants.

237. Prepositions construed with the Accusative.

antē, apūd, ad, adversūs,
circūm, circā, cītrā, cīs,
ergā, contrā, intēr, extrā,
infrā, intrā, juxtā, ob,
pēnēs, (pōnē), pōst & praetēr,
prōpē, proptēr, pēr, sēcundūm,
suprā, versūs, ultrā, trans.

ad, with many varieties of application, generally means *to*. It denotes:

direction toward a place or person, as: **ad urbem**, *to town*; **venio ad te**, *I come to you*;

nearness with reference to place, time or quantity, as: **urbs sita ad mare**, *a town situated near the sea*; **ad vespēram**, *towards evening*; **ad ducentos**, *nearly 200*;

time, answering the question *till when?* as: **ad summam senectutem**, *until extreme old age*. It also denotes a fixed time, as: **ad horam**, *at the hour*;

aim or purpose = in respect of, as: **res ad bellum utiles**, *things useful for war*;

accord or agreement = according to, as: **ad voluntātem aliquj loqui**, *to speak according to some one's will*.

Particular Phrases are:

ad verbum, *word for word*

nihil ad hanc rem, *nothing in comparison with this thing*

ad unum omnes, *all to the last man*.

apūd, *at*, chiefly used of persons, denotes:

nearness or presence, as: **apud Caesārem**, *at Caesar's house*; **apud judīces**, *before, in presence of, the judges*; **apud Cannas**, *near Cannae*;

situation or estimation among, regard by, as: **apud vetēres**, *with the ancients*; **apud me nihil valet homīnum opinio**, *with me the opinion of the multitude has no weight*.

apūd is also used with the *Names of Authors* instead of *in* with the name of their works, as: **apud Plinīum legimus**, *we read in Pliny (in his works)*.

antē, *before*, means *preceding in space or time*, as: **ante portas**, *before the gates*; **ante noctem**, *before night*.

adversūs, more rarely **adversūm**, indicates:

direction toward a place or person, and combines the meanings of both *against* and *toward*, as: **castra adversus urbem ponere**, to pitch the camp *over against* the city; **adversus aliquem pugnare**, to fight (*against*) *with* some one; **pietas adversus parentes**, duty *to(ward)* parents.

cīs and **cī**trā, *on this side*, are used in reference to *place* opposed to *trans*, as: **citra Rubicōnem**, *on this side of the Rubicon*.

circā and **circū**m are equivalent to both *around* and *about* with reference to *place*, as: **circum haec loca**, *hereabout*; **homīnes circum se habent**, *they have people with them*. *circa* is also used of *time*, as: **circa eandem horam**, *about the same hour*.

Particular Phrase:

circum amīcos mittere, to send around to one's friends.

circītēr, *near, about*, is used of *time* only, as: **circīter merīdīem**, *about noon*, but is more commonly an Adverb.

contrā is equivalent to *against* in both its meanings:

opposite to, as: **contra Italiam**, *over against Italy*;

in opposition to, as: **contra natūrā vivere**, to live *against nature*.

ergā, *toward*, always implies friendly feelings, as: **divīna bonītas erga homīnes**, *God's goodness toward men*.

extrā means *without* = *out of*, sometimes *beyond* or *except*, as: **extra urbem**, *without the city*; **extra modum**, *beyond measure*; **extra ducem reliqui rapāces sunt**, *except the leader the rest are robbers*.

intrā denotes *within* in regard to both *place* and *time*, as: **intra urbem**, *within the city*; **intra decem annos**, *within or during 10 years*. *intra* with an Ordinal Number means: *before the expiration of*, as: **intra decīmum diem urbem cepit**, *before the expiration of the 10th day he took the city*.

intēr is equivalent to both *between* and *among*, as: **inter Padum et Alpes**, *between the Po and the Alps*; **Croesus inter reges opulentissīmus**, *Croesus, the wealthiest among kings*. It is also used to denote *time*, as: **inter cenam**, *during dinner*; **inter ludendum**, *while playing*. With the personal pronouns, **inter nōs, vōs, eōs, sē**, it is employed in a reciprocal sense, answering to the English *one another, each other*, as: **Cicerōnis puēri amant inter se**, *Cicero's boys love one another*.

infra, *below*, means:

lower in place, as: **infra** caelum, *under the sky*;

lower in rank or esteem, as: eum **infra** omnes puto, *I think him beneath all men*;

later in time, as: Homērus non **infra** Lycurgum fuit, *Homer was not later than Lycurgus*;

smaller than, as: magnitudine **infra** elephantum, *in size smaller than an elephant*.

juxtā, *hard by, beside*, as: **juxta** murum castra posuit, *he pitched the camp hard by the wall*.

ob sometimes means *before*, as: **ob** oculos versāri, *to be before the eyes*. Generally it means *by reason of, on account of*, as: **ob** eam causam, *for that reason*.

pēnēs denotes *in the possession or power of*, as: summum imperium **penes** Agamemnōnem erat, *the chief command was in the hands of Agamemnon*.

pēr, *through*, is used in a great variety of applications, as:

denoting place, from end to end, as: **per** urbem ire, *to go through the city*;

denoting continuance or duration, as: **per** noctem, *during the night*;

denoting the agent or means, as: **per** amicum servātus sum, *by (means of) my friend I was saved*;

denoting the manner in which a thing is done, as: **per** littēras, *by letter*; **per** potestātem, *by authority*; **per** iram, *from or in anger*; **per** vim, *by violence*;

denoting the object invoked in forms of swearing, as: **per** deos immortāles jurāre, *to swear by the immortal gods*.

Particular Phrases:

per me licet, *you may for all I care*;

per aetātem, *on account of his age*;

per valetudinē, *on account of ill health*.

pōst, *after*, denotes:

behind in place, as: **post** equitem sedet atra cura, *behind the rider sits black care*;

later in time, as: **post** tenēbras lux, *after darkness comes light*.

praetēr primarily means *along*, as: **praeter** litus, *along shore*; yet it is more commonly equivalent to *except* or *besides*, as: **praeter** te amicum neminem habeo, *except you I have no friend*; **praeter** auctoritatem etiam vires habet, *besides authority he has also strength*.

Particular Phrases:

praeter spem, *contrary to hope*;
praeter modum, *immoderately*;
praeter cetēros, *more than the rest*.

prōpē, *near, near by*, as: **prope** urbem, *near the city*.

proptēr is equivalent to **prōpē**, *near*, as: **propter** Siciliam insulae Vulcaniae sunt, *near Sicily are the Vulcanian islands*; but most frequently it is *on account of*, implying *motive* or *reason*, as: **propter** modestiam tuam te diligo, *I love you on account of your modesty*.

sēcundū (derived from *sēquī*, *to follow*) means:

along, as: **secundum** mare iter facere, *to make a journey along the sea shore*;

next to, immediately after, as: **secundum** cenam, *immediately after dinner*;

according to, as: **secundum** naturam vivere, *to live according to nature*.

suprā, *above* (opposite to **infrā**) denotes:

higher in place, as: **supra** lunam, *above the moon*;

more than, superior to, as: **supra** duos menses, *more than two months*; **supra** vires, *above one's strength*.

trans, *beyond, across, on the other side*, with verbs expressing motion, as: multae aves ante hiemem **trans** mare migrant, *many birds migrate across the sea before winter*; with verbs expressing rest, as: eo ipso tempore **trans** mare fui, *at that very time I was beyond the sea*.

versūs, *towards, -ward*, follows an accusative which is usually governed by **ad** or **in**, as: **ad** Oceānum **versus** proficisci, *to set out towards the ocean*. With *dōmūs* and names of towns, **versūs** alone is used, as: Romam **versus**, *Romeward*; domum **versus**, *homeward*.

ultrā, *beyond, on the further side*, as: **ultra** Atlantem montem, *beyond mount Atlas*. It is also used to denote *measure*, as: **ultra** septa transilire, *to go beyond bounds*.

servō, -ārē, to observe

excitō, -ārē, to urge

summā senectūis, extreme old age

**trāgoediās faciēre, to compose
tragedies**

lēgatiō, -ōnis, an embassy

fundūs, -ī, (a piece of) land

aequālītēr, equally

consistō, -ērē, to halt

castrā pōnēre, to pitch a camp

Contra Galliae oram Britannia est. Secundum Deum parentibus et praeceptoribus plurimum debemus. Etiam adversus infimos iustitia servanda est. Grati simus erga parentes nostros, a quibus plurima beneficia accepimus. In bellis civilibus cives contra cives, patres contra filios dimicant. Asia occidentem versus, Europa orientem versus contra Americam sita est. Equi calcaribus ad cursum excitantur. Sophocles ad summam senectutem tragoedias fecit. Legationis jus apud omnes nationes sanctum esse consuevit. Lycurgus fundos omnium aequaliter inter omnes divisit. Caesar ad oppidum constitit, juxtaque murum castra posuit. Quam ob causam praeceptor te puniuit? Ob eam causam, quod negligens fueram. Inter Galliam et Germaniam Rhenus est. Alexander exercitum praeter oram maritimam duxit. Animantia omnia aere et aqua ad vitam indigent.

238. compārō, -ārē, to provide

ūtilitās, -ātis, use

indicō, -ērē, to declare

rārītās, -ātis, infrequency

mīrābilis, -ē, wonderful

fidēs, -ēi, belief

īōnēs, -ūm, the Ionians

Vergiliūs, -ī, Virgil

Massiliā, -ae, Marseilles

**ostiā, -ōrūm, the mouth (of a
river)**

Cisalpinūs, -ā, -ūm, Cisalpine

**Transalpinūs, -ā, -ūm, Trans-
alpine**

Nature has provided the greatest abundance of things for the use of men. The sons of Brutus were slain by the lictor before the eyes of *their* father. Pompey finished the war of the pirates within 90 days. A good man obeys the laws from (proptēr) duty, a bad man from fear. The Romans by means of *their* ambassadors declared war on [to] the Carthaginians. Few men live according to nature. Catiline bore arms against his country. Next to God men can be most useful to men. Sophocles lived to extreme old age. Comets are wonderful on account of *their* infrequency and appearance. All animals live according to nature, man alone often lives

against reason and nature. I cannot believe that you will go across the sea. Julius Caesar was capable of enduring labor beyond belief. The Athenians brought the Ionians help against the Persians. You will find this verse twice in Virgil. The city of Marseilles was founded near the mouth of the Rhone. The Romans called the land this side the Alps Cisalpine Gaul, the land beyond the Alps Transalpine [Gaul].

239. Prepositions construed with the Ablative.

**ā, āb, abs, cūm, dē,
cōrām, prō, ex, ē,
tēnūs, sīnē, prae.**

ā (āb, abs), from, is used in a variety of applications; it denotes:

the *point of time or space* at which the action, state, etc. are regarded as setting out or beginning, as: **a** prima aetate, *from an early age*; **ab** urbe profectus est, *he departed from the city*;

that *from which anything proceeds or by which anything is produced*, as: calor est **a** sole, *the heat is from the sun*; **ab** hoste interfectus est, *he was killed by an enemy*;

that *from which anything is guarded*, with such verbs as **dēfendēre, tūērī**, etc., as: urbem defendere **ab** hostibus, *to defend the city against the enemy*;

that *with reference to which anything is or is done*, equivalent to *with respect to*, as: imparāti sumus **a** militibus, *as to soldiers we are not ready*.

Before vowels and **h**, **āb**; before consonants, **ā** or **āb**; **abs** before **tē**, but we say also **ā tē**, *never āb tē*.

absquē, *without*, is rarely used.

dē primarily means *down from or away from*, as: **de** caelo, *down from heaven*; **de** vita decedēre, *to depart from life*. It is also used in a *partitive sense* in such expressions as: unus **de** plebe, *one of the people*. When denoting *time*, it is *as early as, even at*, as: **de** nocte, *even at night*; **de** mense Decembri, *as early as December*. Most commonly, however, it is *concerning, about or on*, as: **de** gestis Alexandri, *on the exploits of Alexander*; liber **de** amicitia, *a book on friendship*. Sometimes it is equivalent to *secondum, according to*, as: **de** consilio meo, *according to my*

advice; and frequently it denotes the *manner of action*, as: *denūo* (de novo), *de intēgro, afresh*; *de improvīso, unexpectedly*; *de industria, purposely*; *qua de causa, quibus de causis, for which reason or reasons*.

cōrām, in the presence of, before, as: **coram amico, in the presence of a friend**. When used as an adverb, *coram* means personally, as: *coram adesse, to be present in person*.

cūm, with, expresses association or accompanying circumstances, as: **cum aliquo ire, to go with some one**; **esse cum telo, to go armed**; **configēre cum hoste, to fight with the enemy**.

cum with the Ablative of a **Personal Pronoun** is always appended to it, as: *tecum loquitur, he talks with you*, and commonly also with the **Relative**: *quocum, quibuscum* (likewise *cum quo, cum quibus*); *quicum* is used for the Ablative of both numbers and all genders.

ē, ex, out of, from, denotes:

the place, answering to the question *whence?* as: **aliquem ex regno pellere, to drive some one out of the kingdom**; **e longinquo videre, to see from afar**; **ex equo pugnare, to fight on horseback**;

the point of time from which, as: **ex illo die, from that day**;

the cause out of which anything proceeds, as: **ex nihilo nihil fit, of nothing nothing comes**; **aeger ex vulnere, sick from a wound**; **ex quo, whence or for which reason**.

In a great many cases **ē (ex)** has the signification *in accordance with*, as: **ex ejus sententiā, according to his opinion**; or it denotes the manner of an action, as: **ex animo laudare, to praise heartily**; **ex improvīso, unexpectedly**. In such phrases as: **unus e multis, one of many**, it is used in a partitive sense.

Mark the **Particular Phrases**:

ex tua re, to your advantage; **e republica, for the good of the state**.

Before consonants **ē**; before vowels and consonants, **ex**.

prō means:

before or in front of, preceding in space, as: **pro castris aciem instruere, to array the army for battle before the camp**;

for = in defence of, in behalf of, as: **pro patriā mori, to die for one's country**;

for = instead of, as: **pro consule, in place of consul**;

in accordance with or in proportion to, as: **pro portione, in proportion**; **pro virili parte, to the best of one's ability**.

prae is *before* = *in front of*, only in combination with **agere** and **ferre**, as: **prae se ferre**, *to carry before one's self*, i. e. *to show*. Most commonly it means: *in comparison with*, *in contrast with*, as: **prae me beatus es**, *in comparison with me you are happy*; it is also frequently used in the sense of *on account of*, implying an obstacle, as: **prae lacrimis scribere non possum**, *I cannot write on account of tears*.

tenus, as *far as*, follows its noun, as: **Tauro tenus**, *as far as Taurus*; **hoc tenus**, *hitherto*.

sine, *without*, opposed to **cum**, has a negative power, hence we say: **sine ulla spe**, *without any hope*.

The Accusative or Ablative is used with

sibi, **super**, **subter**, **in**.

sibi and **in**, when followed by the **Accusative**, indicate *motion towards*, when by the **Ablative**, *rest in, a place*.

sibi with the **Accusative** means:

under, close to, as: **sub montem succedere**, *to come close to the hill*;

about, shortly before, of time, as: **sub noctem**, *towards night*; **sub lucem**, *near daylight*;

sibi with the **Ablative** is always

under, as: **sub terra habitare**, *to live under ground*; **sub divo**, *in the open air*; **sub monte**, *at the foot of a hill*.

super has the **Ablative** only when used in the sense of **de**, *concerning*, as: **hac super re**, *concerning this thing*. With the **Accusative** it signifies *over, above*, and answers to both questions *whither?* and *where?* as: **super aliquem sedere**, *to sit above some one*.

Particular Phrases: **vulnus super vulnus**, *wound upon wound*; **super cenam**, *during dinner*.

subter, *beneath*, takes the **Accusative** answering to both questions *whither?* and *where?* as: **subter togam**, *under the toga*.

In, with the **Accusative** denotes *entrance* with regard to *place*, as: **in ultimas terras abire**, *to go to the most remote countries*. It also indicates the *object toward* which an action is directed, either with a friendly or hostile intention, as: **amor in patrem**, *love for one's father*; **oratio in Catilinam**, *a speech against Catiline*. With words denoting *time* it is equivalent to *for*, expressing a predetermination of that time, as: **in diem vivere**, *to live for the day*; **in perpetuum**, *forever*; **in dies**, *from day to day*.

Mark the **Adverbial Expressions**: hunc in modum, *in this way*; mirum in modum, *in a wonderful manner*; in vicem, *alternately or instead of*.

In with the **Ablative** denotes *presence in place, time or circumstances*, as: in urbe habitō, *I live in town*; est mihi in animō, *I have it in mind*; in scribendo, *while writing*. When a Number or Quantity is indicated, it is equivalent to *among*, as: numerāri in bonis civibus, *to be counted among the good citizens*.

fiorēō, -ērē, *to be distinguished*

desiliō, -irē, *to leap down*

fossā, -ae, *a ditch*

Christiānūs, -ī, *a Christian*

brēvitās, -ātis, *low stature*

dōminōr, -ārī, *to rule*

prōfundō, -ērē, *to shed*

conciō, -ōnis, *an assembly*

tūbā, -ae, *a trumpet*

sonitūs, -ūs, *a sound*

perferō, -rē, *to bear*

primā lux (-ae-ūcis), *daybreak*

Magnam gloriā nemo sine magno labōre consecutus est. Homo ex animo constat et corpore. Athenienses prae ceteris Graecis eloquentia floruerunt. Fur de tecto desiluit in fossam. Super moribus Christianorum Plinius epistolam scripsit ad Trajanum Imperatorem. Atrox fuit proelium; alii super alios trucidabantur. Virtus omnia subter se habet. Adulescentes coram senibus verecundi sunt. Galli prae magnitudine corporum suorum brevitatem Romanorum contemnebant. In bello vis dominatur, in pace iustitia. Sub vespere pleraeque aves obdormiscunt et sub primam lucem expergiscuntur. Nemo absque virtute beatus esse potest. Antonius de Caesare coram populo lacrimas profudit. In concione de virtute loqueris, in proelio prae ignavia tubae sonitum perferre non potes. Etiam subter undis thesauri reperiuntur. Super cenam alii de aliis rebus colloquuntur.

240. Hēbraeus, -ī, *a Hebrew*

perveniō, -irē, *to pass*

praecipuē, *especially*

rābiōsus, -ā, -ūm, *mad*

alvūs, -ī, *the belly*

reflectō, -ērē, *to bend*

culmūs, -ī, *a thatched roof*

ostiūm, -ī, *a door*

limēn, -inis, *a threshold*

cruciātūs, -ūs, *torture*

Vice increases from day to day. All Gaul is divided into three parts. We write from the left hand to the right, the Hebrews from the right to the left. For so many and so great

benefits which we have received, we owe the greatest thanks to our parents. There are three virtues which above (*praet̃r*) others adorn a youth, modesty, the love of truth, *and* diligence. Souls do not die with *their* bodies. Frogs live in marshes. The sources of rivers are usually in mountains. The Romans before a battle implored victory from the immortal gods and goddesses. The boys of the Lacedaemonians remained up to *their* seventh year under the care of *their* mothers. The souls of the pious after this life will pass into heaven, as it were their home. In a good citizen the love of country is especially praised. Mad dogs bend the tail under the belly. A thatched roof covers the free; servitude dwells under marble and gold. The Scythians used wagons for houses. The innocent man can live even within the door and threshold of the prison without pain and torture.

241. Place and Space.

1. To express relations of **Place**, *Prepositions* are necessary, viz.:

In with the **Ablative** to denote the place *where*, as: in urbe, *in town*;

In or **ad** with the **Accusative** to denote the place *to which*, as: in Eurōpam, *to Europe*; ad urbem, *to town*;

ex with the **Ablative** to denote the place *from which*, as: ex Britannia, *from Great Britain*.

2. But the Prepositions are not used with the names of **Towns** and **small Islands**.

In answer to the question *whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the **Accusative Case**, as: Romam venit, *he came to Rome*. ✓

In answer to the question *whence?* the names of towns and small islands are put in the **Ablative Case**, as: Roma cessit, *he retired from Rome*. ✓

In answer to the question *where?* the names of towns and small islands, if of the first or second declension and in the singular, are put in the **Genitive Case**, as: Romae mansit, *he remained at Rome*. But if the names are of the plural number or belong to ✓

the third declension, they are put in the **Ablative Case**, as: *Babylōne mortuus est, he died at Babylon.* (For the place *where* there was formerly a special Case, the **Locative** ending in **ī** which is preserved in *Carthaginī, at Carthage; rurī, in the country*, etc.)

urbs or **oppidūm** without an **Attribute** is placed **before** the proper name, and the preposition **in** or **ex** is **always** employed, as:

in urbem Cirtam	<i>to the city of Cirta</i>
ex oppido Gergovia	<i>from the town of Gergovia</i>
in urbe Roma	<i>in the city of Rome.</i>

urbs or **oppidūm** with an **Attribute** is placed **after** the proper name, **commonly** with **in** or **ex**. But in answer to the question *where?* the **Ablative** may be used with or without **in**, even though the proper name be in the **Genitive**.

Aulide, ex oppido Boeotiae	<i>from Aulis, a town of Boeotia</i>
Thalam, in oppidum magnum	<i>to Thala, a great town</i>
Albae, (in) urbe munita	<i>at Alba, a fortified city.</i>

3. The following words are used like names of towns, without a preposition:

rūs , into the country	dōmūm , home	
rūrē , from the country	dōmō , from home	hūmō , from the ground
rūrī , in the country	dōmī , at home	hūmī , on the ground
dōmī mīlītīaequē , at home and in the field		
bellī dōmīquē , in war and in peace		
fōrās , to the doors; fōrīs , out-of-doors; abroad		

A **Genitive** or **Possessive** may be used with **dōmūs** in this construction, but when it is modified in any other way, a preposition is generally employed, as:

domi meae	<i>at my house</i>
domum Caesāris	<i>to Caesar's house</i>
in domum vetērem e nova	<i>to the old house from the new.</i>

4. The **Ablative** is used without a preposition to denote the place *Where*

with nouns when qualified by the Adjective **tōtūs** (**cunctūs**):
Demosthēnes disertissimus tota Graecia fuit *Demosthenes was the most eloquent man in all Greece;*

with **locō**, **locīs** when qualified by Adjectives:
hoc loco, multis locis *in this place, in many places.*

The Way *by which* is put in the **Ablative**:

terra marique	<i>by sea and by land</i>
Appia via profectus est	<i>he set out by the Appian way.</i>

The **Preposition In** is generally joined with the **Ablative** after **Verbs of Placing**, as:

pōnērē, to place	dēfigērē, to plant
collōcārē, to put	dēmergērē, to plunge
stātūrē	imprimērē, to stamp
constitūrē } to set	inscribērē, to write upon
considērē, to settle	incidērē, to carve upon

Plato ratiōnem in capite posuit	<i>Plato has put reason in the head</i>
Lucretia cultrum in corde defigit	<i>Lucretia plants a knife in her heart.</i>

Again, after **Verbs of Assembling** and kindred significations the **Preposition In** is followed by the **Accusative**. Mark the following:

advēnirē, to arrive	congrēgārī, to assemble
convēnirē, to meet	nuntiārē, to bring word
cōgērē, to assemble	

conjurāti in curiam convenērunt	<i>the conspirators met in the senate house.</i>
---------------------------------	--

5. **Extent of Space** is put in the **Accusative**, as:

fossa pedes trecentos longa est,	<i>the ditch is 300 feet long, 6 feet</i>
sex pedes alta	<i>deep.</i>

Measures of length, depth, etc., are often expressed by the **Genitive of Quality**, as:

vallum pedum duodēcim fieri iussit	<i>he ordered a rampart to be made of 12 feet (in height).</i>
------------------------------------	--

6. **Distance how far** is put in the **Accusative** or **Ablative**, as:

a recta conscientia transversum ungūem non oportet discedere	<i>we ought not to swerve a nail's breadth from a right conscience</i>
copiae Ariovisti a Romanis milibus quattuor et viginti afuerunt	<i>the troops of Ariovistus were twenty four miles from the Romans.</i>

cōmoediā, -ae, *a comedy*
 histriō, -ōnis, *an actor*
 Lysandēr, -rī, *Lysander*
 Sābīnī, -ōrūm, *the Sabine ter-
 ritory*
 transversus digītus, *a finger's
 breadth*
 Cīmōn, -īs, *Cimon*

conciliō, -ārē, *to bring about*
 opportunus, -ā, -ūm, *suitable*
 collocō, -ārē, *to pitch*
 Ārabs, -ābis, *an Arabian*
 cūbitūm, -ī, *a cubit*
 confluō, -ērē, *to flock*
 nōtiō, -ōnis, *an idea*
 ūlulā, -ae, *an owl*

Romae etsi comoediā et tragoediā populo placēbant, omne histriōnum genus (*class*) male audiēbat. Imperante Tiberio histriōnes omnes Roma atque Italiā pulsi sunt. Lysander Lacedaemonius dicere solitus est, Lacedaemōne esse honestissimum domicilium senectutis. In civitate libera linguam mentemque liberas esse oportet. Vespasianus natus est in vico modico Sabinorum. A recta conscientia transversum ut ajunt digitum non oportet discedere. Aristides Athenis natus a pueritia firmo constantique animo fuit. Cimon sua sponte Athenis Lacedaemōna profectus est pacemque inter duas maximas Graeciae civitates conciliavit. Castra Gallorum opportuno loco collocata erant. Arabes gladios habebant tenues, longos quaterna cubita. Quoad pater meus vixit, perbono loco res erant nostrae. Quos flagitia domo expulerant, hi omnes Romam confluxerunt. In omnium animis Dei notionem impressit ipsa natura. Xerxes, a Themistocle periculi admonitus, eadem via, qua sex mensibus iter in Graeciam fecerat, triginta diebus in Asiam rediit. Ululas Athenas portas. Si Romae fueris, Romano vivito more.

242. passim, *here and there*
 agger, -īs, *a mound*
 proboscis, -idis, *a trunk*
 diffundō, -ērē, *to diffuse*
 Ephesus, -ī, *Ephesus*
 Antiochus, -ī, *Antiochus*
 compōsitō, -ōnis, *arrangement*

rectus, -ā, -ūm, *straight*
 deorsum, *downwards*
 Utica, -ae, *Utica*
 miliarium, -ī, *a mile*
 distō, -ārē, *to be distant*
 vitam agere, *to pass one's life*
 constitūō, -ērē, *to determine*

Many trees, broken by the force of the tempest, here and there lay on the ground. The soldiers built a mound 300 feet broad and 80 feet high. The trunk of the elephant is seven

or eight feet long. Light is diffused over the whole world. My uncle has departed by sea for California. Croesus, king of Lydia, sent ambassadors to Delphi; in Delphi there was a very celebrated oracle of Apollo. Alcibiades was born at Athens and educated in the house of Pericles. Hannibal *being* driven from Carthage came to Ephesus to king Antiochus. The sun does not always rise or set in the same place. Order is the arrangement of things in fitting and convenient places. The Athenians led out *their* forces from (ex) the city and pitched *their* camp in a suitable place. A stone falling is borne downwards in a straight line. The Romans conquered the Carthaginians by land and sea. Cato killed himself with his own hand at Utica, a town of Africa. The city of Naples is distant five English miles from Vesuvius. My uncle has determined to pass his life in the country.

243.

Time.

1. **Time** *when* is expressed by the **Ablative** of words denoting time, such as:

tempūs, *time*

aetās, *an age*

punctū tempōris, *a moment*

hōrā, *an hour*

dies, *a day*

mensis, *a month*

annūs, *a year*

saeculūm, *a century*

vēr, *spring*

aestās, *summer*

autumnūs, *autumn*

hiēms, *winter*

vespēr, *evening*

nox, *night*

Hannibālis milites vere convenire

Hannibal's soldiers assembled in spring.

Words not explicitly expressing time, such as: bellūm, pāx, pūeritiā, usually take **In** with the **Ablative**; but they are without **In**, if joined with an Adjective or Genitive. So we say:

in bello, *in war times*

in pace, *in time of peace*

in pueritiā, *in boyhood*

in adolescentiā, *in youth*

in senectūte, *in old age*

bello Persico, *at the time of the Persian war*

prima pueritiā, *in early boyhood*

bello Antiōchi, *during the war with Antiochus*

Particular Phrases:

initio	} at the beginning	temporibus	} in the times of
principio		aetate	
adventu,	at the arrival	ludis,	at the time of the games
discessu,	at the departure	bis die,	two times a day
in tempore,	at the right time	hora nona,	at 9 o'clock

2. Time how long is put in the Accusative.

Appius caecus multos annos fuit, *Appius was blind many years.*

The Preposition **p̄r** may be used to denote *from beginning to end*, as: est mecum per totum diem, *he is with me the livelong day.*

Time how long since may be expressed by an ordinal number in the Accusative, as:

Mithridates jam annum tertium et vicesimum regnat *Mithridates has reigned going on 23 years.*

Time how long before the present moment is expressed by **abhinc** with the Accusative, as: abhinc sex menses, *six months ago.*

3. Distance of time how long before or after is expressed by the Ablative with antē or pōst following:

paucis diebus ante, *a few days before*
 paucis diebus post, *a few days afterward.*

The Accusative can also be employed, but then the Preposition precedes, thus: ante, post paucos dies.

Either Case and the cardinal as well as the ordinal numbers may be used, when the Preposition is placed between the Numeral and the Substantive. Hence the English phrase *three years after* may be expressed as follows:

tribus annis post	post tres annos
tertio anno post	post tertium annum
tribus post annis	tres post annos
tertio post anno	tertium post annum

quā and a verb may be added to **antē** and **pōst** in all the forms above specified, as:

tribus annis postquam venērat	} three years after he had come.
post tres annos quam venērat	
tertio anno postquam venērat	
post annum tertium quam venērat	

4. *Time within which* is expressed by the **Ablative** or by *intrā* with the **Accusative**:

Agamemnon vix decem annis *Agamemnon in ten years*
(intra decem annos) unam *hardly took one city.*
cepit urbem

5. *Time for how long* is expressed by *in* with the **Accusative**, as:

Phaeton currum paternum in *Phaeton asked his father's char-*
diem rogavit *riot for a day.*

The **Question** *how old?* is answered in different ways:

by *nātūs* (born) with the **Accusative**, as: puer decem annos natus est, *the boy is ten years old;*

by the **Genitive** of **Quality**: Hamilcar secum duxit filium Hannibalem annorum novem, *Hamilcar took with him his son Hannibal 9 years of age;*

by *āgērē*, *to pass*, with *annūs* and an ordinal number, as: quartum annum ago et octogesimum, *I am 83 years old.*

Older and *younger* are expressed by *mājōr* and *mīnōr* with following **Ablative**, as:

major quinque et triginta annis, *older than 35 years.*

ōbēō, -īrē, <i>to die</i>	* postmēridiānūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>after-</i>
oppugnō, -ārē, <i>to besiege</i>	noon
Mithridātēs, -īs, <i>Mithridates</i>	ars tŷpōgrāphicā (tīs -ae), <i>the</i>
rēparō, -ārē, <i>to restore</i>	art of printing
sūbīgō, -ērē, <i>to subdue</i>	nonnisi, <i>only</i>
Pālātīnūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>Palatine</i>	Hīmērā, -ae, <i>Himera</i>
mātūtīnūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>morning</i>	intonsūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>unshaved</i>
ād impēriū accēdērē, <i>to come to the throne</i>	

Augustus obiit sexto et septuagesimo aetatis anno. Decem quondam annos urbs oppugnata est ob unam mulierem ab universa Graecia. Mithridates regnavit annos sexaginta, vixit septuaginta duos, contra Romanos bellum habuit per annos quadraginta. Carthago jussu senatus reparata est annis XXII postquam a Scipione eversa erat. Hannibal imperator factus proximo triennio omnes gentes Hispaniae subegit. Romulus duodevicesimum aetatis annum agens urbem exigua in monte

Palatino condidit. Horis matutinis arcus caelestis occidentem versus, horis postmeridianis orientem versus apparet. Quot annos abhinc ars typographica inventa est? Nonnullae aves per totum annum cantant, aliae nonnisi quibusdam anni temporibus. Persae apud Salamina et Carthaginienses ad Himëram eodem die victi sunt. Carolus nobiscum plus annum vixit. Tonsores in Italiam ex Sicilia venērunt post Romam conditam anno quadringentesimo quinquagesimo quarto; antea intonsi fuere Romani. Arganthonius ad imperium quadraginta annos natus accessit, octoginta annos regnavit, et centum et viginti vixit.

244. campūs, -ī, a plain

përägrō, -ärē, *to wander over*
 Ägämemnōn, -ōnīs, *Agamem-*
non, king of the Greeks at Troy
 fermē, *almost*
 Vējī, -ōrūm, *Veji*

Säturnī stellā, the planet Saturn

conficiō, -ērē, *to complete*
 histōricūs, -ī, *a historian*
 artifex, -icis, *an artist*
 nōbīlis, -ē, *celebrated*
 Süebī, -ōrūm, *the Suebi*

The Arabs wander over the plains and mountains winter and summer. Your uncle lived for many years at our house. Agamemnon, with all Greece, in ten years could hardly take one city. My friend's father died almost 20 years ago. Cicero was some years younger than Hortensius. In autumn storks migrate to other lands and return in spring. The city of Veji was besieged during ten summers and winters. Rome was founded in the 754th year before Christ. King Numa [was] lived very many years before Pythagoras. The planet Saturn completes its course in nearly 30 years. In the time of Augustus there flourished at Rome very celebrated orators, historians, poets and artists. Alexander within a few years acquired possession of all Asia. At the time of the Gallic war all things except the Roman citadel had fallen into the hands of the enemies. Corinth was destroyed by Mummius, and Carthage by Scipio on the same day. Cyrus reigned 30 years; *he was* forty years old *when* he began to reign. Among the Suebi it was not allowed to stay longer than a year in the same place. Forsake those by whom you will be forsaken in a short time.

245. Peculiarities of Pronouns.

hic, *this*, refers to that which is nearer the speaker (**Demonstrative of the First Person**); **istē**, *that (of yours)* to the person addressed (**Demonstrative of the Second Person**); **illē**, *that*, to that which is remote (**Demonstrative of the Third Person**).

hic very frequently means *that which is about to be mentioned*, as: his condicionibus, *on the following terms*;

istē especially refers to *one's opponent* (in court, etc.) and frequently implies contempt, as: Mars alter, ut isti volunt, *a second Mars, as these fellows say*;

illē is often used of *that which is well known, notorious*, as: praeclārum illud Solōnis, *that famous saying of Solon*. It is also used in the sense of the following.

Often **hic** and **illē** are to be rendered *the latter* (**hic**, the one last mentioned, the *nearer*) and *the former* (**illē**, the one mentioned earlier, the *remoter*), thus:

mellius de quibusdam acerbi inimici merentur quam ii amici qui suaves videntur; illi saepe verum dicunt, hi nunquam.	<i>bitter enemies deserve better of some people than those friends who seem obliging; the former often tell the truth, the latter never.</i>
--	--

But the order is often reversed so that **hic** refers to the object first mentioned (usually the more important) and **illē** to the one mentioned last.

mellior est certa pax quam sperata victoria; haec in tua, illa in deorum manu est	<i>better is certain peace than hoped-for victory; the former is in your hands, the latter in the hands of the gods.</i>
---	--

is, *that*, is either the regular **Antecedent** of the *Relative* or refers to an **Object** just mentioned.

is sapiens, qui se ad casus accommodet omnes	<i>he is a wise man who accommodates himself to all circumstances</i>
--	---

mihi obviam venit tuus puer; is mihi litteras abs te reddidit	<i>I was met by your servant; he delivered to me a letter from you.</i>
---	---

When a quality is ascribed with emphasis to an object already named, **is** with a copulative or adversative particle is used, thus:

et is, atque is,isque, *and he too, and that too*
neque is, et is non, *and he not, and that not*

unam rem explicabo, eamque *one point I shall explain, and*
maximam *that, too, a very important one.*

No demonstrative pronoun is employed in Latin in phrases where *that* or *those* in English is used in place of a noun which would have to be repeated:

Terentii fabulis plus delector *I find more delight in the plays*
quam Plauti *of Terence than in those of*
Plautus.

As a rule, the **Reflexive Pronoun** *sui, sibi, se* and its Possessive *suius*, are used when reference is made to the **Subject** of the sentence.

Caesar se ad suos recepit *Caesar betook himself to his men.*

The Possessive *suius* may also be used with reference to any noun in the same sentence on which *emphasis* is thrown, as:

Socratem cives **sui** interfecerunt *Socrates was put to death by*
his own fellow-citizens
puer columbam cepit in nido **suo** *the boy caught the dove in its*
nest.

On the other hand, the **Demonstratives** *ejus, eorum, earum* are used as Possessives of the third person, when no emphasis appears, or when reference is made to a noun in another sentence, as:

Deum agnoscis ex operibus **ejus** *you recognize God by his works*
multi cives interfecti, **eorum** *many citizens were slain, and*
que bona publicata sunt *their property confiscated.*

ipse, self, is used with any of the other pronouns or a noun for the sake of emphasis, often expressed in English by *just, mere, very*, as: *triginta erant dies ipse, it was just 30 days.*

When added to any reflexive pronoun, *ipse* agrees either with such pronoun or with the subject of the sentence, according as either is emphatic; as:

piger ipse sibi obstat, *the lazy man stands in his own way;*
nosce te ipsum! *know thyself!*

taediūm, -ī, *tedium*
 transfigō, -ērē, *to stab*
 jācēō, -ērē, *to be down*
 praediūm, -ī, *an estate*
 mīserīcordiā, -ae, *charity*
 Cōrīnthiūs, -ī, *a Corinthian*
 ornāmentā, -ōrūm, *works of art*

transportō, -ārē, *to carry*
 mōlestē ferrē, *to be annoyed*
 sēnātōr, -ōrīs, *a senator*
 conjūrātiō, -ōnīs, *a conspiracy*
 Cassiūs, -ī, *Cassius*
 intērītūm pārārē, *to bring de-*
struction upon

Se ipsos omnes natūra diligunt. Multi vitae taedio sibi ipsi mortem consciverunt. Cato ipse pectus sibi gladio transfixit. Nostra ipsorum culpa tempora mala sunt. Medici ipsi se curare non possunt. Hannibalem sui cives e civitate eiecērunt. Cato mortuus est annis octoginta sex ipsis ante Ciceronem consulem. Pugna suum finem, cum jacet hostis, habet. Praedia mea possides, ego aliena misericordia vivo. Virtus propter sese colenda est, quamquam suam certamque mercedem habet. Romani Corinthios vicērunt, eorumque ornamenta in suam urbem transportarunt. Ea mala molestissime ferre debent homines, quae ipsorum culpa contracta sunt. Deum, qui cui libet homini multa beneficia tribuit, ex operibus ejus cognoscimus. Quo maturiores uvae sunt, eo dulcius earum vinum est. Tiberius Gracchus et frater ejus a senatoribus necati sunt. Caesar et Hannibal clarissimi belli duces fuerunt; illi conjurato Bruti, Cassii aliorumque interitum paravit, hic veneno se ipse necavit.

246. conjūratiōnē facere, *to get* consistō, -ērē (with *ablat.*), *to*
up a conspiracy consist of
 Marcūs, -ī, *Marcus* Publius, -ī, *Publius*
 grāviter adhortārī, *to exhort* abducō, -ērē, *to carry away*
earnestly injustitiā, -ae, *injustice*
 agricultūrae studere, *to pursue agriculture*

Angry men are not masters of themselves. Alcibiades carried on war not against his country, but against his enemies. His good fortune accompanied Caesar into Spain. Against Brutus, when consul, his own sons got up a conspiracy. Cicero wrote a book on duties to his son Marcus, and earnestly exhorted him. The ancient Germans did not pursue agriculture, and the greater part of their food consisted of milk and cheese

and flesh. Publius Scipio in the third Punic war took Carthage and carried away its inhabitants into slavery. I expect the father and his sons. The boy caught a bird in its nest. Carthage and Corinth were destroyed in the same year, the latter by Mummius, the former by Scipio. Wise men will not praise themselves. This garden is larger than the one (is) which my father bought; but the trees which are in it are very low. Socrates has become celebrated not less by his own wisdom and virtue than by the injustice of the Athenians. The boy writes the letter with his own hand. A sensible man does not always carry all his property with him.

247. Use of Tenses.

There are **Six Tenses** in Latin, viz:

Of Continued Action:

the **Present**, as: scribō, *I am writing*;

the **Imperfect**, used chiefly for description or repeated action, as: scribebām, *I was writing*;

the **Future**, as: scribām, *I shall write*.

Of Completed Action:

the **Perfect**, either definite or historical, as: scripsī, *I have written* (definite), or: *I wrote* (historical);

the **Pluperfect**, as: scripsērām, *I had written*;

the **Future Perfect**, as: scripsērō, *I shall have written*.

The **Present** is used of what is going on now, at the present time, and of what is true at all times, as:

loquēris adhuc, cum omnes ta-	<i>you are still speaking while all</i>
cent	<i>are silent</i>
fortes fortūna adiūvat	<i>fortune helps the brave.</i>

The **Present** is often substituted for the *Historical Perfect* in lively narration, as:

triginta rectōres reipublicae	<i>30 rulers of the Athenian com-</i>
Atheniensis constituuntur, qui	<i>monwealth are appointed, who</i>
fiunt tyranni	<i>become tyrants.</i>

II. As the **Historical Perfect** it denotes an action as completed in past time, but leaves it, in other respects, wholly indeterminate.

Caesar armis rem gerere constituit, exercitum finibus Italiae admovit, Rubiconem transiit, Romam et aerarium occupavit, Pompejum cedentem persecutus est, eumque in campis Pharsalicis devicit.

Caesar resolved to use armed force; he advanced with his army to the frontiers of Italy, passed the Rubicon, took possession of Rome and the treasury, pursued Pompey and defeated him in the plain of Pharsalus.

The following **Conjunctions**:

postquam } *after*
posteaquam }
ut } *as soon as*
ut primum }

ubi } *as soon as*
ubi primum }
simulac }
simulatque }

are usually followed by the **Historical Perfect**:

milites postquam victoriam adepti sunt, nihil reliqui victis fecere

when the soldiers had won the victory, they left nothing to the vanquished.

The **Pluperfect** denotes an action as completed in the past, as:

consul copias, quas pro castris collocaverat, reduxit

the consul led back the forces which he had stationed before the camp.

The **Future Perfect** denotes an action as completed in the future; it is used with much greater exactness in Latin than in English, as:

ut sementem feceris, ita metes; *as you sow, so shall you reap.*

The **Periphrastic Conjugations** are formed by combining the tenses of *esse* with the Future Participle (*Active*), and with the Gerundive (*Passive*).

The **Active Periphrastic Conjugation** denotes either intention or being on the point of doing something, as:

scripturus sum, *I purpose to write, or am about to write.*

The **Passive Periphrastic Conjugation** expresses necessity or propriety, as:

pārentēs āmandī sunt, *parents must be loved, deserve or ought to be loved.*

The **Person by whom** is put in the **Dative**, as:

pārentēs libēris āmandī sunt, *parents ought to be loved by their children.*

bellum scriptūrus sum, quod populus Rōmānus cum Jugurtha gessit

I purpose to write the history of the war which the Roman people carried on with Jugurtha.

lectiō, -ōnis, *a reading*
Pontūs, -ī, *Pontus*
infigō, -ēre, *to fix in*
Ponticūs, -ā, -ūm, *Pontic*
pompā, -ae, *a procession*
ornāmentūm, -ī, *a decoration*
praefēre, -re, *to carry before*
titulūs, -ī, *an inscription*

magnōpēre, *greatly*
vinculā, -ōrūm, *fetters; adversus vinculā, against being fettered*
aenēūs, -ā, -ūm, *brass-*
Lūcānūs, -ā, -ūm, *Lucanian*
Lūcāniā, -ae, *Lucania*
consultō, -ārē, *to deliberate*

Donec eris felix, multos numerābis amīcos; tempōra si fuērint nubila, solus eris. Quid, si te rogavēro aliquid, nonne respondēbis? Novum Eborācum cum venēro, quae vidēro, scribam ad te. Lectiō, quae placuit, decies repetita placēbit. Mithridātes, Ponti rex, omnium militum suorum nomina memoriae suae infixērat. Caesar Pontico triumpho inter pompae ornamenta trium verborum praetulit titulum: Veni, vidi, vici. Agesilāus, rex Lacedaemoniorum cum libēris, quos magnopere diligēbat, interdum ludēbat. Amīcus falsus, qui tibi adversus vincula opem promisit, ubi primum catēna crepuerit, aufugiet. Rōmāni leges, quas senātus populusque sanxērat, aenēis tabulis incidērunt. Elefantos Italiā primum vidit Pyrrhi regis bello et boves Lucānos appellāvit, quia in Lucaniā primum apparuerunt. Ad paenitendum propērat, cito qui iudicat. Dum Pompēius consultat, Caesar summa cum celeritate Romam appropinquāvit. Ariovistus, Germanorum princeps totam Galliā occupatūrus erat. Uni non est pugnandum cum duobus. Tempore pacis cogitandum est de bello. Is fidelissime consilium dat, qui id suadet, quod ipse, si in eodem loco erit, factūrus erit.

248. Sāguntūm, -ī, <i>Saguntum</i>	dūcō, -ēre, <i>to bring</i>
foedērātūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>allied</i>	stūdīum, -ī, <i>zeal</i>
civītās, -ātīs, <i>a city</i>	quondām, <i>once upon a time</i>
vī expugnārē, <i>to storm</i>	committō, -ōnis, <i>a fellow-sol-</i>
exercitūm comparārē, <i>to raise</i>	<i>dier</i>
an army	fulgurā, <i>flashes of lightning</i>
Hasdrubāl, -īs, <i>Hasdrubal</i>	pervēnirē ad, <i>to reach</i>

Hannibal as general subdued in war all the tribes of Spain, stormed Saguntum, an allied city, and raised three armies. Of these he sent one into Africa; the second he left with his brother Hasdrubal in Spain; the third he brought with himself into Italy. I used to read the books of the ancient writers with great zeal and diligence in school. The cowardly soldier fled as soon as he saw the enemy. Once upon a time some one said to Alexander, king of Macedonia: The king of the Persians is leading an immense army to battle. Alexander replied: One butcher is not afraid of many sheep. Men will be more easily taught by examples than by precepts. Will you not (nonnē) be moved by the prayers and tears of your parents? Augustus after the civil wars never called his soldiers fellow-soldiers but soldiers. The flashes of lightning reach our eyes before we hear the crash of the thunders. Whilst Hannibal threatened [to] the city of Rome, the Romans sent *their* forces out of the city into Spain.

249. Sequence of Tenses.

When two sentences are so related to each other, that the one defines and explains the other, and the one is dependent on the other, they are connected in the way of **Subordination**, as:

crepant aedificia, priusquam cadant, *houses creak before they fall;*

crepant aedificia is the **Principal Clause**,

priusquam cadant is the **Dependent Clause**.

The **Subjunctive** is largely used in **Subordinate Sentences** (see 253, ff.).

In those **Dependent Clauses** which require the **Subjunctive** the choice of the tenses of the **Dependent Clause** is determined by the tense of the **Principal Clause** according to the following:

General Rules.

I. **Tenses**, in regard to their connection, are divided into two classes:

Principal, including the *Present*, both *Futures* and the *Perfect Definite*;

Historical, including the *Imperfect*, the *Historical Perfect* and the *Pluperfect*.

II. **Principal Tenses** are followed by the *Present Subjunctive* for *contemporary* action, and by the *Perfect Subjunctive* for *antecedent* action.

III. **Historical Tenses** are followed by the *Imperfect Subjunctive* for *contemporary* action, and by the *Pluperfect Subjunctive* for *antecedent* action.

Principal Clause.	Dependent Clause.
Present. cognosco, <i>I am finding out</i>	quid facias, <i>what you are doing</i>
Future. cognoscam, <i>I shall find out</i>	quid feceris, <i>what you have done, what you have been doing, what you did</i>
Fut. Perf. cognovĕro, <i>I shall have found out (shall know)</i>	
Perf. Defn. cognōvi, <i>I have found out (I know)</i>	
Imperf. cognoscĕbam, <i>I was finding out</i>	quid facĕres, <i>what you were doing</i>
Pluperf. cognovĕram, <i>I had found out (I knew)</i>	quid fecisses, <i>what you had done, had been doing</i>
Hist. Perf. Caesar cognōvit, <i>Caesar found out</i>	quid facĕrent hostes, <i>what the enemy was doing</i> quid fecissent hostes, <i>what the enemy had done</i>

The **Perfect Definite**, though properly a **Principal** tense, is more commonly treated as a *Historical* tense, and admits the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*, as:

oblitus es, quod dixĕrim, *you have forgotten what I said;*

interrogāvi eum, quid facĕret, *I have asked him what he was doing,*
feci hoc, ut intelligĕres, *I have done this that you might see.*

✓ In **Sentences of Result**, with *ūt*, *quī*, *quīn*, the verb of the **Dependent Clause** has the same tense as it would have if the clause were a **Principal** one.

Verres Siciliam ita perdidit, ut ea restitui in antiquum statum non possit *Verres so ruined Sicily, that she can not be restored to her ancient condition.*

The **Future Tenses** are wanting in the **Subjunctive**. After a **Future** or **Future Perfect**, their place is supplied by the **Present** or **Perfect Subjunctive**, after the other tenses by the **Active Periphrastic Subjunctive**, **Present** or **Imperfect**; as:

cognoscam, quid facias, *I shall find out what you will be doing*;
cognovēro, quid feceris, *I shall have found out what you have done*;
cognosco, quid facturus sis, *I am finding out what you will do*;
cognovēram, quid facturus esses, *I had found out what you would do.*

stābilis, -ē, <i>permanent</i>	cādūcū, -ā, -ūm, <i>drooping</i>
odīum, -ī, <i>enmity</i>	mōribundū, -ā, -ūm, <i>dying</i>
discidiūm, -ī, <i>discord</i>	dēfūō, -ērē, <i>to run one's s. dry</i>
funditū, <i>to the foundation</i>	vitrēū, -ā, -ūm, <i>of glass</i>
intercālō, -ārē, <i>to interpolate</i>	concāvū, -ā, -ūm, <i>hollow</i>
Pythāgorēū, -ī, <i>a Pythagorean</i>	Cāligulā, -ae, <i>Caligula</i>
commemorō -ārē, <i>to rehearse</i>	cervix, -icis, <i>the neck</i>
vītis, -, <i>a vine</i>	ictū, -ūs, <i>a stroke</i>

With **Superlatives** and **Ordinals** quisquē is translated *every*, as: optimum quidque, *every good thing*; quinto quoque anno, *every fifth year*.

Quae domus tam stabilis, quae tam firma civitas est, quae non odiis atque discidiis funditus evertatur? Plato voluptatem escam appellat, quod homines ea capiantur, ut hamo pisces. Caesar dictator annum ad cursum solis accommodavit, ut trecentorum sexaginta quinque dierum numeraretur, et unus dies quarto quoque anno intercalareretur. Tantus Germanorum terror in castris Caesaris erat, ut vel testamenta a militibus Romanis scriberentur. Augustus tantus erat, ut triumphos contemneret. Pythagorēi, quid quoque die dixissent, audivissent, egissent, vespēri commemorabant. Vitis, quae natura caduca est, nisi fulta sit, ad terram trahitur. Alexander

moribundus quaerentibus, quem imperii heredem facere vellet, respondit: Dignissimum. Rusticus exspectat, dum defluat annis. Si sitimus, nihil interest, utrum sit aureum poculum an vitreum, an manus concava. Caligula optabat, ut populus Romanus unam cervicem haberet, ut ipse uno ictu et uno die crudelitatem expleret.

250. fragilitās, -ātis, *frailty* benignitās, -ātis, *goodness*
 idēo tantūm, *for the reason only* significō, -ārē, *to give notice*

The words which are to be expressed by the **Subjunctive** are underlined.

Have you (tūně) learned so little in school that you do not know this? So great is the multitude of stars that they cannot be numbered. Life is short even if it lasts over 100 years. Sometimes there is need that we be reminded of human frailty. Our ancestors often fought that they might free their country. Sometimes men praise others only for the reason that they themselves may be praised by them. We carry on war that we may enjoy peace. We see every day how great is the goodness of God. Alexander had never said whom he was about to make his heir. Who does not know in how great honor music was held among the Greeks? The boy fell down from (dē) the roof, so that he broke his leg. For this reason we have two ears and one mouth, that we may hear much and speak little. There is no state that has not wicked citizens. Dogs are kept in houses that they may give notice if thieves [have] come. Tell me, I beseech you, what page the teacher gave us to be copied.

251. Use of the Indicative.

The **Indicative** is the mood of *Direct Assertions* or *Questions*, as:

necessitas non habet legem
 quare vitia sua nemo confitetur?
 quia etiam nunc in illis est

necessity recognizes no law
why will no man confess his
faults? because he continues
to indulge in them.

In general, the **Indicative** is used in Latin nearly as in English. The principal points of *difference* are the following:

The **Indicative** is sometimes used where the English idiom would suggest the *Subjunctive*, chiefly in expressions denoting the *propriety, advantage* or *necessity* of an action not performed, such as:

longum est, <i>it would be tedious</i>	possum	} <i>I might, I could</i>
utillus fuit, <i>it would have been better</i>	poteram	
pār est, <i>it would be fair</i>	debẽo	} <i>I ought or I should</i>
	debẽbam	

perturbatiõnes animõrum potẽram appellare morbos, sed non conveniet ad omnia	<i>I might call the disturbances of the mind "diseases," but that would not suit all the cases.</i>
--	---

The **Indicative** of the *Periphrastic Conjugations* is often so used, as:

haec condiciõ non accipienda fuit	<i>these terms ought not to have been accepted.</i>
-----------------------------------	---

With **General Relatives**, such as:

✓ quisquĩs, *no matter who*; quotquõd, *no matter how many*, and all forms in -cunquẽ, *-ever*, also with sive..sive, *whether..or*, the *Indicative* is employed where in English the *Potential* may be used, as:

quicquid id est, timẽo Danaõs et dona ferentes	<i>whatever it may be, I fear the Danaï, even when they bring presents.</i>
--	---

Independent Uses of the Subjunctive.

The **Subjunctive** represents the action of the verb as something merely *entertained* by the mind and *dependent* on other circumstances.

The **Present** and **Perfect Subjunctive** are used to denote an action as *possible* (**Potential Subjunctive**); also the *second person* of the **Imperfect Subjunctive** in the expressions:

credẽres, putãres, you would, might have thought	
vidẽres, cernẽres, you would, might have seen.	
hic quaerat quispiam	<i>here some one may ask</i>
dixerit quis	<i>some one may say.</i>

The regular negative is **nõn**.

The **Subjunctive** is used to denote a *wish*—the Present and Perfect a wish conceived as possible; the Imperfect and Pluperfect an unaccomplished one (**Optative Subjunctive**). The Present and Perfect are commonly, and the Imperfect and Pluperfect regularly preceded by *utinam*, *O that, I wish that, would that*.

stet haec urbs	<i>may this city continue to stand</i>
falsus utinam vates sim	<i>I wish I may be a false prophet</i>
utinam me mortuum vidisses	<i>would you had seen me dead</i>

The regular negative is *nē*.

The **Subjunctive** is used to express an *exhortation* or a *command* (**Exhortatory or Imperative Subjunctive**).

Pres. First Pers.	amemus patriam, <i>let us love our country</i>
“ Second Pers.	corpōris robōre utāre, <i>use your bodily strength</i>
“ Third Pers.	amet, <i>let him love</i>
Perf. Second Pers.	ne transieris Ibērum, <i>do not cross the Ebro</i>
(negative only).	hoc ne feceris, <i>thou shalt not do that</i> .

The regular negative is *nē*.

The **Subjunctive** is used in the Present and Perfect to express a *concession* (**Concessive Subjunctive**), as:

vendat aedes vir bonus, *suppose an honest man is selling a house;*
sit fur, *granted that he be a thief.*

The regular negative is *nē*.

The **Subjunctive** is used in *doubtful questions* (**Dubitative Subjunctive**), as:

quid hoc homīne faciās? *what are you to do with this man?*
quid agērem? *what was I to do?*

The regular negative is *nōn*.

rē tardō, -ārē, <i>to delay</i>	ingēnūm, -ī, <i>disposition</i>
ēnūmērō, -ārē, <i>to enumerate</i>	bōnā, -ōrūm, <i>good qualities</i>
prō (w. abl.), <i>consistently with</i>	furcā, -ae, <i>a pitchfork</i>
fortūnām pēriclitārī, <i>to try</i>	usquē, <i>ever</i>
one's luck	rēcurre, -rē, <i>to return</i>
vōcēs, -ūm, <i>speech</i>	Vālērīus, -ī, <i>Valerius</i>
sempiternū, -ā, -ūm, <i>eternal</i>	scēnicū, -ī, <i>a stage-player</i>

Veniet tempus mortis et quidem celeriter, sive retardabis, sive properabis. Longum est, enumerare Hannibalis proelia.

Optimum erat nefarios istos homines vel civitate ejicere, vel capitis damnare. Aut non suscipi bellum oportuit, aut geri pro dignitate populi Romani: Caesar sine pugna rem conficere poterat; cur fortunam periclitaretur? Sive vivimus, sive morimur, Dei sumus. Si christiani sumus, utamur et moribus et vocibus christianis. Si Deus est, sempiternus est. In rebus prosperis superbiam arrogantiamque fugiamus. Suum quisque noscat ingenium acremque se et bonorum et vitiorum suorum iudicem praebeat. Nullam virtutem Socratis magis quam patientiam laudaverim. Imitemur majores nostros; meminimus etiam adversus infimos justitiam esse servandam. Naturam expellas furca, tamen usque recurret. Nesciat manus dextra, quid faciat sinistra. Valerius cotidie cantabat; erat enim scenicus; quid faceret aliud?

252. tandēm, pray

pensum, -ī, *a task*

absolvō, -ērē, *to finish*

an, *or*

mandō, -ārē, *to order (with dat.)*

licēt, *I am free*

reliquā, -ōrum, *the rest*

dēindē, *then*

quā, *what*

mōrosus, -a, -um, *cross*

sodālis, -, *a schoolmate*

ediscō, -ērē, *to rehearse*

inā, *together*

recitō, -ārē, *to recite*

fiāt, *be it so*

pēractus, -a, -um, *finished*

Play.

Philip. Come, Charles.

Charles. Whither, pray?

Ph. Into the garden; for we have read and written enough; let us play also.

Ch. I will finish my task first (antē).

Ph. Have you not finished *it* yet?

Ch. Not yet the whole of it [every thing]. Or have you written and learned every thing which the teacher ordered us?

Ph. Not every thing.

Ch. Therefore we are not free yet to play.

Ph. Why may we not (licēt)? I will write and learn the rest after play.

Ch. But it is better to learn first, then play.

Ph. What a cross schoolmate I have!

Ch. I am not cross, but I wish to do the things which have been ordered.

Ph. Well then, (ergō) let us rehearse together. I will recite to you, you to me. Then, when we [shall] know every thing, we will immediately hasten to (ād) play.

Ch. Be it so, for finished labors are pleasant.

253. Dependent Uses of the Subjunctive.

Dependent **Subjunctive** Clauses may be classified as follows:

Conjunctive Clauses	introduced by	<i>Conjunctions,</i>
Relative Clauses	"	" <i>Relatives,</i>
Indirect Questions	"	" <i>Interrogative Words.</i>

Consecutive and Final Conjunctions.

ūt, that governs the **Subjunctive**:

I. when it means *that, in order that* (often to be translated by the Infinitive with *to, in order to*) to express **Purpose**; its Negative is **nē, that not, lest**.

esse oportet, ut vivas, non vi-	<i>you must eat to live, not live</i>
vēre, ut edas	<i>to eat</i>
cura ne quid ei desit	<i>take care that nothing be want-</i> <i>ing to him.</i>

II. when it means *so that* (often rendered by *to, so as to*) to express a **Result**. Its Negative is **ūt nōn, so that not**.

tanta vis probitātis est, ut eam	<i>so great is the power of upright-</i>
in hoste etiam diligāmus	<i>ness that we love it even in</i> <i>an enemy</i>
ita vixi, ut non frustra me na-	<i>I have so lived that I do not</i>
tum esse existimem	<i>think I was born in vain.</i>

III. when it means *granted that* to express a **Concession**; its Negative is **nē**.

ut desint vires, tamen est lau-	<i>granted that strenght be want-</i>
danda voluntas	<i>ing, yet the good will is to be</i> <i>praised</i>
ne sit summum malum dolor,	<i>granted that pain is not the</i>
malum certe est	<i>greatest evil, an evil it cer-</i> <i>tainly is.</i>

nēvē, and *not*, is used as *Continuative* after **nē**, as:

Thrasybūlus legem tulit, ne quis ante actārum rerum accusarē- tur neve multaretur	<i>Thrasybulus proposed a law that no one should be accused of or punished for past of- fences.</i>
---	---

After **mētūō**, **tīmēō**, **vērēōr**, *I fear*, **mētūs est**, **pēriculūm est**, *there is fear, danger*, **nē** must be rendered by *that* or *lest*, and **ūt** by *that not*, as:

Milo metuēbat, ne a servis indi- carētur	<i>Milo feared that he would be betrayed by his servants</i>
tīmēo, ut sustinēas labōres	<i>I fear that you will not hold out under your toils.</i>

The prefix **ālī-** in **ālīquīs** and similar Compounds is rejected after *Relatives* and the following *Conjunctions*:

sī, *if*; **nī****sī**, *if not*; **nē**, *lest*; **nūm**, *whether*; **cūm**, *when*.

Hence we say in *Final Clauses*:

nē quis , <i>that no one</i>	nē quandō , <i>that never</i>
nē quid , <i>that nothing</i>	nē quisquā , <i>that no one at all</i>
nēcūbī , <i>that nowhere</i>	nē quidquā , <i>that nothing at all</i>

littērae , - ārum , <i>written papers</i>	jūdicium capitis , <i>trial for life</i>
rēmittō , - ērē , <i>to slacken</i>	honestum , - i , <i>honesty</i>
rōbustus , - ā , - um , <i>stout</i>	callidus , - ā , - um , <i>smart</i>
Mediā , - ae , <i>Media</i>	Xanthippē , - ēs , <i>Xanthippe</i>
prēmō , - ērē , <i>to overcome</i>	jurgiosus , - ā , - um , <i>quarrelsome</i>
commōdē , <i>conveniently</i>	maritus , - i , <i>a husband</i>
circumspiciō , - ērē , <i>to look around</i>	labōres excipere , <i>to take toils upon one's self</i>
pōpularis , - ē , <i>popular</i>	sustinēō , - ērē , <i>to hold out</i>
officiō sātisfacere , <i>to discharge one's duty</i>	

Plerisque accēdit, *ut praesidiō litterārum freti, diligentiam in ediscendo remittant. Mortem, ut numquam timēas, semper cogita. Exercentur puēri laboribus, ut ingenio validi et corpore robusti evadant. Persarum reges voluptātis causa ita dividēbant annum, ut hiēmē Babylōne, in Mediā aestātem agerent. Ursi per hiēmē tam gravi somno premuntur, ut ne vulneribus quidem excitentur. Dives est, cui tanta est pecunia, ut nihil optet amplius. Ansēres graviōres sunt corpore,*

quam ut commode volare possint. Ut circumspiciamus omnia, quae populo grata atque jucunda sunt, nihil tam populare quam pacem, quam concordiam reperiemus. Socrates ita in iudicio capitis pro se ipse dixit, ut non reus, sed dominus esse videretur iudicum. Avarus timet, ne bona sibi eripiantur. Si non ipso honesto movemur, ut boni viri simus, sed utilitate, callidi sumus, non boni. Socratis uxor Xanthippe morosa admodum fuit et iurgiosa, ita ut per diem et noctem marito molesta esset. Omnes labores te excipere video, timeo, ut sustineas. Veremur, ut officio nostro satisfacere possimus.

254. consiliū, -ā, -ūm, <i>planted</i>	impēre, -āre, <i>to rule, govern</i>
pōmāriūm, -ī, <i>an orchard</i>	stādīūm, -ī, <i>a race</i>
abducere, -ere, <i>to take</i>	contendere, -ere, <i>to strive</i>
mūnificentia, -ae, <i>bounty</i>	flexuosus, -a, -ūm, <i>crooked</i>
grandis, -e, <i>great</i>	iter, -ineris, <i>a passage</i>
tradere, -ere, <i>to betray</i>	intrare, -are, <i>to enter</i>
imperium, -ī, <i>rule</i>	perpetuare, -are, <i>to suffer patiently</i>

The clause of **Purpose** is often to be translated by the Infinitive with *to*, *in order to*, as: veni, ut vidērem, *I came to see (that I might see)*.

The clause of **Result** is sometimes expressed in English by the Infinitive with *to* or *so as to*, as: nemo tam bonus est, ut numquam peccet, *no one is so good as never to sin*.

Atticus so lived that he was deservedly most dear to all the Athenians. Italy is so planted with trees that the whole of it appears an orchard. It happens, I know not how, that we see the faults of others more sharply than our own. The Romans took Cincinnatus from the plow that he might be dictator. Who is so wretched that he has not felt God's bounty? The fear at Rome was great that the Gauls would again come to Rome. Hannibal left Carthage through fear that he might be betrayed to the Romans. So great was Cato's diligence that he, *when* an old man, learned the Greek language. Mithridates had so learned the languages of 22 nations which were under his rule, that he could speak without an interpreter with all [to] whom he governed. The physician feared that you would not recover from this disease. Parents send their children to school in order to learn something. He who runs a

race ought to strive to conquer. The organ of hearing has a crooked passage, that nothing may be able to enter. We often patiently suffer griefs that we may not fall into greater ones. I fear that you are not diligent enough. There is this common vice in great and free states that envy is the companion of glory.

255. Consecutive and Final Conjunctions (continued).

The Ablative *quō* (= *ūt ēō*, *that thereby*), *in order that*, *so that*, with the **Subjunctive** is used as a Conjunction in clauses of **Purpose**, especially with *Comparatives*, as:

ager arātur, quō meliōres fructus edere possit *the field is plowed that it may yield better fruit.*

quōmīnūs (= *ūt ēō mīnūs*, *that thereby the less*), *that not*, with the **Subjunctive** is used with verbs of *Hindering*, such as:

<i>impēdirē, to hinder</i>	<i>obstārē, to be in the way</i>
<i>dētērrērē, to frighten off</i>	<i>obstistērē, to oppose</i>
<i>prōhibērē, to keep from</i>	<i>rēcūsārē, to refuse</i>

<i>mors non deterret sapientem,</i>	<i>death does not deter a wise man</i>
<i>quomīnus in omne tempus rei</i>	<i>from consulting the interest</i>
<i>publicae consulat</i>	<i>of the state the whole time.</i>

Instead of *quōmīnūs*, we may use *nē*, and when the principal clause is *negative*, *quīn*:

Regūlus ne sententiā dicēret recusāvit *Regulus refused to pronounce an opinion.*

quīn (= *quī*, *how*, and *nē*, *not*), *that not*, with the **Subjunctive** is used only after *negative* clauses or such questions as expect a negative answer. It is equivalent:

to *quī nōn*, *quōd nōn*, *but*, as:

nemo est, quīn hoc vidēat *there is no one but sees this;*

to *ūt nōn*, *but*, as *not*, as:

nemo est tam fortis, quīn rei novitāte perturbētur *no one is so brave as not to be confounded by the newness of a thing.*

quin is used in the sense of *that not* or *that* after **Negative Expressions** implying *doubt, omission* and the like; such are:

non dubito, *I do not doubt*
 non est dubium, *there is no doubt*
 quis dubitet? *who can doubt?*
 non multum abest, *there is not much wanting*
 nihil abest, *there is nothing wanting*
 nihil praetermitto } *I omit nothing*
 nihil intermitto }
 temperare mihi non possum, *I cannot restrain myself*
 vix me continēo, *I hardly refrain from*
 retinēri non possum, *I cannot be restrained*
 facere non possum quin, *I cannot help*
 fieri non potest quin, *it cannot happen but that*

quis dubitet, quin in virtute di- *who can doubt that wealth con-*
 vitiae sint? *sists in virtue?*
 non multum affuit, quin interficē- *I was not far from being*
 rer *killed.*

Concessive Conjunctions.

Concessive Conjunctions express a *Concession*, with the general signification *although, granting that*.

These are: etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, quamquā, *although*
 quamvis (quantumvis), *however much, however*
 licet, ut, cū, *though, suppose, whereas.*

Of these, **licet** (*properly a verb*) exclusively, and **quamvis** usually, take the **Present** or **Perfect Subjunctive**, as:

licet superbus ambules pecunia, *although you may strut about*
 fortuna non mutat genus *proud of your purse, fortune*
changes not birth
 vitia mentis, quamvis exigua *defects of the mind, no matter*
 sint, in majus excēdunt *how slight they be, go on in-*
creasing.

cū, *whereas, since*; **ut**, *granted that*; **nē**, *granted that not* (see 253) take the **Subjunctive**.

Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, *Phocion was constantly poor,*
 cum divitissimus esse posset *though he could be very rich.*

Etiam takes the **Indicative** to denote *real concessions*, and the **Subjunctive** to denote such as are *merely conceived* in the mind, as:

ista veritas, etiamsi jucunda non est, mihi tamen grata est	<i>that truth, although it is not agreeable, is nevertheless acceptable to me</i>
vita brevis est, etiamsi supra centum annos duret	<i>life is short, although it should last over 100 years.</i>

etsi, **tāmet** and **quamquā** regularly take the **Indicative** (unless otherwise required by the structure of the sentence), as:

virī boni recte agunt, etsi nul- lum consecutūrum emolumen- tum vident	<i>good men do right, though they see no profit about to result</i>
quamquam omnis virtus nos ad se allicit, tamen iustitia et liberalitas id maxime efficit	<i>though all excellence attracts us to itself, yet justice and liber- ality do this most.</i>

The Conjunctions of Comparison

tamquā, **quāsi** (**vēlūt** **sī**, **ūt** **sī**, **prōindē** **ac** **sī**), *as if*,
take the **Subjunctive**.

The **Tenses** follow the general rule of *Sequence 249*; accord-
ingly the *Present* and *Perfect* Subjunctive are sometimes used
where the English idiom would suggest the *Imperfect*, as:

superbi saepe ita se gerunt, quasi ipsi soli sint homines	<i>haughty people often behave so as if they alone were men.</i>
--	--

investigō, -ārē, to find out	evellō, -ērē, to pluck out
cortex, -icis, bark	calvitium, -i, baldness
truncus, -i, the trunk of a tree	maeror, -oris, sorrow
obducō, -ērē, to cover	levō, -ārē, to lessen
litterarum studiā, literary studies	officō, -ērē, to hinder
tēdō, -ērē, to keep up	vixdum, hardly yet
luctus, -us, grief	litteras dare, to send a letter
titubō, -ārē, to stumble	

Notice the frequent use of the **Plural** in words denoting pheno-
mena of nature, as: **nivēs**, *snow*; **pluviae**, *rain*; **cālōres**, *heat*; **frī-
gōrā**, *cold*.

Nihil tam difficile est, quin quaerendo investigari possit.
Natura cortice truncos obduxit, quo tutiores essent a frigoribus

et caloribus. Senectus non impedit, quominus litterarum studia usque ad ultimum vitae tempus teneamus. Sic cogitandum est, quasi in pectus intimum aliquis inspicere possit. Stultum est in luctu sibi capillum evellere, quasi calvitio maior levetur. Demostheni non offecit vitium linguae, quominus summus evaderet orator. Gravissimus morbus, ex quo vixdum convalui, mihi impedimento fuit, quominus ad te litteras darem. Quod turpe est, id quamvis occultetur, tamen honestum nullo modo fieri potest. Cavete, ne mentiamini; Deus enim omnia audit, etsi homines non audiant. Homo, quod crebro videt, non miratur, etiamsi, cur fiat nesciat. Socrates etsi omnium innocentissimus erat, tamen accusatus et damnatus est. Medici quamquam intelligunt saepe, tamen nunquam aegris dicunt, illo morbo eos esse morituros. Cave ne titubes!

256. institū, -ērē, to ordain

lōcūplēs, -ētīs, wealthy

conspēctūs, -ūs, a sight

cūpidō, -inīs, greed

sententiā dicērē, to state one's

opinion

nemo est, **quin** sciat { *there is no one but knows;*
there is no one who does not know;

non dubito, **quin** verum dixeris, *I do not doubt that you told the truth;*

non me impedies, **quominus** (ne, **quin**) id faciam, *you will not prevent me from doing this;*

nullum intermisi diem, **quin** aliquid discerem, *I have not allowed a day to pass without learning something.*

Nothing is found in the whole world that* has not been most wisely ordained by God. Xerxes did not doubt that with his forces he would easily overcome the Greeks. There is no doubt that God rules the world. We never sin without our conscience reminding us. There is no doubt that all the bad are wretched. What hinders us from everywhere practising virtue? The rain hinders us from walking. No one, however rich he may be, can do without the help of others. So live with men as if God saw you; so speak with God as if men heard you. There is nothing but God sees. We ought to live as if we lived in the

* The words which illustrate the lesson are underlined.

dūm, quōdā, dōnēc, until, take the **Present, Perfect and Future Perfect Indicative** when a *fact* is to be expressed, as:

haud desinam, donec perfecero *I will not cease, until I shall have accomplished.*

dūm, quōdā, until, implying *purpose, doubt or futurity*, take the **Subjunctive**:

Alexander paulisper exercitum consistere jussit, donec consideret pulvis *Alexander ordered the army to halt a short time until the dust should be down.*

antēquā and priusquā, *before*, have in narration the same construction as historical **cū** or **postquā**, viz. either the **Subjunctive** of the *Imperfect and Pluperfect*, or the **Perfect Indicative**, as:

Achaei non ante ausi sunt bellum capessere quam ab Roma revertissent legati *the Achaeans did not dare to begin the war before the ambassadors had returned from Rome*

antēquam bellum urbis nostrae opes absumpsit, potentissima fuit *before war consumed the wealth of our city it was very powerful.*

In reference to **Future Time**, these conjunctions take the **Present and Future Perfect Indicative**, also the **Present Subjunctive**, as:

tempestas minatur, antequam surgat *the storm threatens before it rises*

ante revertar quam luna bis impleverit orbem *I will return before the moon has twice filled her orb.*

nex, necis, *a violent death*
exanimis, -ē, *lifeless*
aliquamdū, *some time*
domum referre, *to carry home*
infestō, -ārē, *to infest*
contumacia, -ae, *boldness*
recedere, -ērē, *to depart*
devolo, -ārē, *to flee away*

suggestum, -ī, *a platform*
consistō, -ērē, *to stand*
concionor, -ārī, *to harangue*
imbecillus, -ā, -ūm, *feeble*
splendō, -ērē, *to be bright*
aurora, -ae, *the morning sun*
abundantia, -ae, *overflow*
fertilitas, -atis, *fertility*

Caesar post necem exanimis aliquamdū jacuit, donec eum tres servi domum retulerunt. Membris utimur, priusquam didicimus, cujus utilitatis causa ea habemus. Cum Alexander piratam interrogasset, quo jure mare infestaret, ille libera

contumaciā, “eōdem” inquit “quo tu orbem terrarum; sed quia id ego exigūo navigiō faciō, latro vocor; tu, quia magna classe et exercitū, imperātor.” Ut hirundīnes aestīvo tempore praesto sunt, frigore pulsae recedunt, ita falsi amici sereno vitae tempore praesto sunt; simulatque hiemem fortunae viderint, devolant omnes. Dionysius major, cum in communibus suggestis consistere non auderet, concionari ex turri alta solēbat. Labōra dum potes, ut, cum imbecillus eris, quiescas. Tempestas minatur, antequam surgat; crepant aedificia, antequam corruant. Lacedaemoniorum gens fortis fuit, dum Lycurgi leges vigebant. Fortuna vitrea est; tum cum splendet, frangitur. Dum aurora fulget, flores colligite. Cum Nilus suam aquarum abundantiam cohibuit, Aegyptii frustra agrorum fertilitatem sperant.

258. recta consilia, good advice

considō, -ērē, to alight

sugō, -ērē, to suck

Myndus, -ī, Myndus

egredior, -ī, to move out

pridie quam, the day before

insidior, -ārī (with dat.), to pursue

si libet, if he likes

descendō, -ērē, to come down

quaestor, -ōris, a quaestor

Archimedes, -is, Archimedes

Syria, -ae, Syria

Bithynia, -ae, Bithynia

When we are in good health, we easily give good advice to the sick. After bees have alighted on (in) flowers they suck honey from (ex) them. When Diogenes saw the splendid gates of the little city of Myndus he said to the townspeople: “Shut your gates lest your city move out.” We see the lightning before we hear (subj.) the thunder. The day before I came to London, my brother had departed for America. While fools avoid faults, they run into contrary ones. When the Roman ambassadors said to Ariovistus, chief of the Germans, “Come to Caesar” he replied: “Who is that Caesar? If he likes let him (ipse) come to me.” The Gauls came down into Italy two hundred years before they took Rome. Let boys be silent when wiser people speak. When Cicero was quaestor in Sicily, he discovered the tomb of Archimedes. When Hannibal was compelled to leave Carthage, he fled at first to Antiochus, king of Syria, afterwards to Prusias, king of Bithynia. As the Romans pursued him here also he killed himself with poison.

259.

Causal Conjunctions.

1. The following **Causal Conjunctions** take the *Indicative*:

quā } *because*
quod }

quoniam } *since, in as*
quandoquidē } *much as*
siquidē }

quoniam jam nox est, in vestra
tecta discedite

*since it is now night, go to your
houses*

quia natura mutari non potest,
idcirco verae amicitiae aeter-
nae sunt

*because nature cannot change,
therefore true friendships
are everlasting.*

The **Subjunctive** is used in causal clauses when a statement is made *not as a fact*, but as *the assertion or opinion* of some one else, as:

Socrates accusatus est, quod Socrates was brought to trial
corrumpere juvenitatem because (as they said) he cor-
rupted youth.

After those verbs which express the feeling of *joy, grief, etc.*, as: *gaudere, to rejoice, gratiam agere, to thank, dolere, to pain, gloriarī, to boast, quod* is used to give the ground of emotion, as:

quod scribis, gaudeo

I am glad that you write

tibi gratias ago, quod me omni
molestia liberas

*I thank you that you free me
from all trouble.*

quod, that, is also used to introduce explanatory clauses, chiefly after a **Demonstrative**:

bene facis, quod me adjuvas

you do well in assisting me

quod Regulus rediit mihi mira-
bile videtur

*that Regulus returned seems
wonderful to me.*

At the beginning of a sentence, **quod** is used in the sense of *as to*, especially in letters, as:

quod de domo scribis., *as to what you write of the house..*

nōn quod, nōn quō, not as if, and **nōn quā, not as if not**, take the **Subjunctive**, as:

pugiles ingemiscunt, non quod
dolēant, sed quod omne cor-
pus intenditur

*boxers groan not as if they
were in pain, but because all
the body is put to the stretch.*

2. Causal cūm, as, since, takes the Subjunctive.

cum vita sine amicis insidiarum *since life without friends is full*
et metus plena sit, ratio ipsa *of treachery and fear, reason*
monet amicitias comparare *itself advises us to contract*
friendships.

mihi est cūm aliquō, <i>I have to</i> <i>do with one</i>	Persis, -idis, <i>Persia</i> petō, -ere, <i>to attack</i>
attingō, -ere, <i>to set foot on</i>	Indi, -ōrum, <i>the Indians</i>
vastis, -is, -um, <i>vast</i>	pectus, -oris, <i>cattle</i>
alienigena, -ae, <i>a stranger</i>	porrigō, -ere, <i>to stretch out</i>
persequor, -i, <i>to hunt down</i>	denique, <i>in fine; sin, but if</i>

Scythae et Alexander Magnus.

Ubi ad fines Scytharum pervēnit Alexander, unus ex eorum legatis haec inter alia multa dixit:

Quid nobis tecum est? Nunquam terram tuam attigimus. Annon licet nobis, qui in vastis silvis vivimus, ignorare quis sis, et unde venias? Nec servire ulli possumus, nec imperare desideramus. Major fortiorque es fortasse quam quisquam, tamen alienigenam dominum pati nemo vult. Tu, qui te gloriaris ad latrones persequendos venisse, ipse omnium gentium latro es. Lydiam cepisti, Syriam occupasti, Persidem tenes, Indos petisti, jam etiam ad pecora nostra avaras manus porrigis. Quid tibi divitiis opus est, quae te esurire cogunt, ita ut quo plura habes, eo acrius cupias, quae non habes? Denique, si Deus es, tribuere mortalibus beneficia debes, non sua eripere; sin homo es, id quod es, semper esse te hominem cogita.

260. desino, -ere, <i>to cease</i>	redimo, -ere, <i>to redeem</i>
quae, <i>those things which</i>	venum do, -are, <i>to sell</i>
Zopyrus, -i, <i>Zopyrus</i>	vigilantia, -ae, <i>vigilance</i>
bellō captus, -i, <i>a captive</i>	curo, -are, <i>to care for</i>

He who forsakes you has never been your friend, because true friendship never ceases. Since the soul of man is immortal, it can in no manner perish. Those things which are to be done, do to-day, since the morrow is uncertain. There are many crimes which bad men do not commit, because they fear that they may be punished. Upright men practice virtue

although they do not expect reward. Why shall I hear words since I see the deeds? Zopyrus was laughed at by the others, because he blamed vices in Socrates which the latter had not. Many comets we do not see, because they are obscured by the rays of the sun. Men wonder at eclipses of the sun because they happen rarely, and they wonder at eclipses of the sun more than of the moon since the latter are more frequent. There was an immense number of captives whom Hannibal sold, since they were not redeemed by their *friends*. No one loves his country because it is great, but because it is his own. Cicero was called the father of his country, because by his prudence and vigilance the conspiracy of Catiline had been detected. We are wont to care less for what is present than for what is to be, because what is present we see with *our* eyes, but we do not know what will be.

261. Conditional Conjunctions.

In a **Conditional Sentence** the clause containing the condition is called the **Protasis**, and that containing the conclusion the **Apodosis**.

Protasis. si bovem non possis, *if you cannot drive an ox,*

Apodosis. asinum agas *drive a donkey.*

The **Protasis** is regularly introduced by the conditional particle **si**, *if*, or one of its compounds, viz:

nisi, *unless*

sīn, *if not, but if*

sī nōn, *if not*

quodsi, *but if.*

There are **Three Classes** of Conditional Sentences:

I. The condition is represented as a *fact*: **si** with the **Indicative** in both clauses:

si Deus est, aeternus est *if there is a God, he is eternal.* ✓

II. The condition is represented as *possible* or *likely* to be realized: **si** with **Present** or **Perfect Subjunctive**:

si quis ita agat, imprudens sit *if anybody were to act thus, he would not be wise.* ✓

III. The condition is represented as *contrary to fact*: **si** with **Imperfect** or **Pluperfect Subjunctive**:

facērem, si possem *I should do it if I could.* ✓

nīſī and **ſī nōn** are used for negative conditions; with **nīſī** the negative belongs to the whole sentence, with **ſī nōn** to a particular word, as:

nisi id confestim facis, te tradam magistratūi	<i>unless you do this at once I shall deliver you to the ma- gistrate</i>
dolōrem si non potēro frangere, occultābo	<i>if I shall not be able to over- come sorrow, I will conceal it.</i>

The **Subjunctive** is used in **Conditional Wishes** with:

dummōdō } dūm } mōdō }	<i>if only, provided</i>	dummōdō nē } dūm nē } mōdō nē }	<i>provided only not</i>
------------------------------	--------------------------	---------------------------------------	------------------------------

odērint, dum metūant	<i>let them hate if they only fear</i>
Athenienses summas laudes me- rentur, dummōdo ne tam leves fuissent	<i>the Athenians deserve the high- est praise if only they had not been so wanton.</i>

ſī mōdō, *if only, provided that*, requires the **Indicative**.

claudicō, -ārē, to limp	nūtūs, -ūs, a nod; ad nūtūm, at pleasure
dēservīō, -īrē, to be devoted	aurā, -ae, a breeze
injuriā, -ae, an outrage	incōlūmēm servārē, to keep safe
rēpellō, -ērē, to ward off	rēportō, -ārē, to carry back
bellicōsūs, -ā, -ūm, warlike	ācervūs, -ī, a heap
abscindō, -ērē, to cut off	portiō, -ōnis, a share
dīmīdiūs, -ā, -ūm, half	sūāvītēr, quietly
concedō, -ērē, to yield up	

Si juxta claudum habites, claudicāre disces. Sunt qui quidvis perpetiantur, cuius deserviant, dum quod velint consequantur. Galli omnes aequo animo belli patiuntur injurias, dummōdo repellant injuriā servitūtis. Si bellicōsis gentibus arma eripiuntur, hoc aequē ab iis accipitur, ac si manus eis abscinderentur. Rusticus quondam fundum a Jove conduxit hac condiōne, ut Jovi dimidiā partem fructūm concederet, si deus omnia ad ipſus nutum faceret: pluēret, serēnum caelum faceret, auras mittēret. Nulla aliā de causa leges sunt inventae, nisi ut cives incolūmes servarentur. Quidquid auri supra et infra terram est, nullus pretii est, si cum virtute comparētur. Si in unum locum cuncti mala sua contulissent,

quisque propria domum reportare mallet, quam ex communi miseriarum acervo portionem suam accipere. Memoria minuitur, nisi eam exercēas. Innocens, si accusatus est, absolvi potest; nocens, nisi accusatus fuerit, condemnari non potest. Si possis, suaviter; si non, quocunque modo. Si vis pacem, para bellum.

262. tēgō, -ērē, *to shelter*

pārūm dēsīdērārē aliquid, *to care
little for something*

rectūs, -ā, -ūm, *virtuous*

pōtentiā, -ae, *power*

ēquītans, -tis, *on horseback*

ādhinnīō, -irē, *to neigh to*

pēritūs, -ā, -ūm, *expert; pēri-
tior, a better judge*

instītūtō, -ērē, *to train*

vēnērōr, -ārī, *to respect*

prāvē factā, -ōrūm, *evil deeds*

jūdicēm essē de aliquo, *to sit in
judgment on some one*

prōpē ūt, *almost like*

exercō, -ērē, *to use*

contērō, -ērē, *to wear out*

rūbīgō, -inis, *rust*

Zeuxis, -, *Zeuxis*

ālīōquī, *otherwise*

Provided we are sheltered and clothed against the storm, we care little for ornament. Many neglect every thing honorable and virtuous provided they attain power. Physicians, if they could cure all diseases, would be very happy. Apelles, a very illustrious painter, had painted Alexander the Great on horseback. The king praised the likeness less than it deserved. But when Alexander's horse neighed to the painted horse as if it were a real steed, "Your horse, O king," said Apelles, "appears to be a better judge of the art of painting than you are." Scholars, if only (sī mōdō) they are well trained, love and respect their teacher. Would that men could do right as easily as blame evil deeds; we should be all happier. A good man will do nothing against his oath, not even if he shall sit in judgment on his very friend. The human body is almost like iron; if you use (subj.) iron, it is worn out; if you do not use it, nevertheless rust consumes it. You will be sad, if you are alone. If the masters of the houses are not at home, danger more easily threatens [to] the houses. Zeuxis, the most celebrated of painters, had painted a boy carrying grapes. A bird tried to eat the grapes. Then Zeuxis said: "I painted the grapes better than the boy; otherwise the bird would have feared the boy."

263. Relative Clauses with the Subjunctive.

As a rule, the **Relative Clause** is in the *Indicative* when a *definite fact* is stated:

planta, quae saepius transfertur, a tree often transplanted does
non coalescit not thrive.

The **Subjunctive** is used in **Relative Clauses**:

I. to denote **purpose** or **motive**; **quī** = **ut** **ēgō**, **ut** **tū**, **ut** **is**, etc.

missi sunt delecti cum Leonida, picked men were sent with
qui Thermopylas occuparent Leonidas to take possession
of Thermopylae.

II. to denote the **cause**, on account of which or the **hindrance** in spite of which; **quī** = **cū** **ēgō**, **cū** **tū**, **cū** **is**, etc. (often with **ut**, **utpōtē**, **as**; **quippē**, **namely**).

o virum simplicem, qui nos nihil O guileless man who hides
celet! nothing from us!

III. to denote **result** or to indicate a **characteristic** of the antecedent, sometimes in a restrictive sense, as:

non is sum, qui hoc faciā I am not such a one as to do this
orationes Catōnis, quas quidem Cato's speeches as far as I read
legērim them.

The construction of the **Consecutive** or **Characteristic Relative** is especially common:

a. after **is**, **tālīs**, **ējusmodī**, **tantūs**, **tām** with an Adjective or Adverb, **sōlūs** and **ūnūs**:

est innocentia affectio talis animi, quae nocēat nemini, innocence
is such a quality of mind as to do harm to no one.

b. after general expressions of *existence* and *non-existence*, as:

est qui	} there is, there are	habēo quod, I have to
sunt qui		reperiuntur qui, persons are
nemo est qui,	there is none to	found who
nihil est quod,	there is nothing	

sunt qui censēant unā animum cum corpore interire, there are
some who believe that the soul perishes together with the body.

c. after **dignūs**, **indignūs**, **idōnēūs**, **aptūs**:

indignas es, cui fides habeātur, you are unworthy of being believed.

A clause connected to another by a Relative, takes the Subjunctive, when it contains *not the sentiment of the writer* but of *some other person* alluded to, as:

Paetus omnes libros, quos frater suus reliquisset, mihi donāvit *Paetus presented to me all the books that his brother had left.*

Comparatives may be followed by **quā́m ū́t, quā́m quí,** with the Subjunctive, corresponding to the English *too...to*, as:

damna majōra sunt quam quae aestimāri possint *the losses are too great to be estimated.*

administratīō, -ōnis, *government*
pēdisēquā, -ae, *a waiting maid*
Cāniniūs, -ī, *Caninius, consul only one day*
consulātūs, -ūs, *consulship*
īnūsītatae luxūriae ēssē, *to be given to uncommon luxury*
āviditās, -ātis, *eagerness*

cūrīā, -ae, *the senate house*
doctōr, -ōris, *a teacher*
accīō, -īrē, *to call in*
āgō, -ērē, *to act*
fāmā et fidēs, *reputation and credit*
abstīnentīā, -ae, *moderation*
cognōminē appellārē, *to surname*

Si quid est, quod nec voluptātem sentiat nec dolōrem, id animal esse non potest. Administratīo mundi nihil habet in se, quod reprehendi possit. Si voles divitias cum virtūte comparāre, vix satis idoneae videbuntur divitiae, quae virtutis pedisēquae sint. Caniniūs fuit mirifica vigilantīa, qui suo toto consulātu somnum non vidērit. Nero inusitatae luxūriae fuit, ut qui retibus aurēis piscarētur. Catōnis aviditas legendi satiāri non potērat, ut qui in ipsa curia soleret legere. Philippus rex Aristotēlem Alexandro filio doctōrem accīvit, a quo ille et agendi accipēret praecepta et loquendi. Famae ac fidēi damna majōra sunt, quam quae aestimāri possint. Nemo omnium est, quem ego nūc magis cupiam vidēre quam te. Inventae sunt leges, quae cum omnibus una atque eādem voce loquerentur. Omnibus temporibus pauciores homīnes reperti sunt, quī suas cupiditates quam hostium copias vincērent. Quamquam adēo excellēbat Aristides abstinentīa, ut unus, quem quidem nos audiverimus, cognomīne Justus sit appellātus, tamen exsilio decem annōrum multātus est.

264. non satis dignus sum, qui..	mollitō, -irē, to assuage
I do not deserve to	rēspicērē ad, to look to
rēpēriō, -irē, to devise	lātēbrā, -ae, a lurking place
indicō, -ārē, to reveal	prōfundō, -ērē, to give up
debilitō, -ārē, to weaken	ardentēr, ardently
abūsūs, -ūs, abuse	somniō, -ārē, to dream
noxius, -ā, -ūm, hurtful	saeculūm, -ī, a generation
longinquitās, -ātis, length	discessūs, -ūs, a departure

You may read a good book again and again; but many books do not deserve to be read a second time. Words were devised not to conceal but to reveal truth. There is no speed which can be compared with the speed of the mind. No force is so great that it cannot be weakened. Nothing is so useful that it cannot become hurtful by abuse. There is no grief which length of time may not diminish and assuage. There is nothing which God cannot accomplish and indeed without any labor. Pleasure is not worthy [to which a wise man should look] of a wise man's regard. What lurking place is there into which the fear of death may not enter! There have been many found who were ready to give up not only *their* money but even life for their country. There are some who seek money more ardently than learning. There is no one who hates himself. There is hardly (*nullā fērē*) a night during which (*quā*) we may not dream. The old man plants trees [which may] to benefit the next (*altēr*) generation. There are some who think that death is the departure of the soul from the body.

265. Direct Questions.

Questions in Latin are introduced by **Interrogative Pronouns, Adverbs or Particles.**

Interrogative Pronouns.

quis? quid? *who? what?* quisnām? quidnām? *who, what pray?*
 qui? quae? quod? *which?*
 utr? utrā? utrūm? *which of the two?*
 quālis? quālē? *of what kind?*
 quantūs? quantā? quantūm? *how great?*
 quotūs? quotā? quotūm? *what? (in number or order)*
 quotusquisquē? quotāquaequē? quotumquodquē? *how few?*
 quot? *how many?*

Interrogative Adverbs.

ūbī? *where?*
 undē? *whence?*
 quō? *whither?*
 quā? *where? which way?*
 quādo? *when?*
 quōtīens? *how often?*

quōmōdō? }
 quēmadmōdūm? } *how?*
 cūr? }
 quārē? }
 quām ob rēm? } *why? what for?*
 quid? }

ūbīnām? *where pray?*
 undēnām? *whence pray?*
 quōnām? *whither pray?*
 quānām? *which way pray?*
 quamdiū? } *how long?*
 quōusquē? }
 quām? (only before **Adjectives**
 and **Adverbs**) *how? how much?*
 quantōpērē? (only before **Verbs**)
how greatly? how much?
 quidnī? *why not?*
 cūr nōn? *why not?*

The Interrogative Particles are:

—nē, nūm, nonnē, ūtrūm, —ān.

Of these **nē** asks merely for information; it cannot stand by itself, but is joined to any emphatic word, usually the verb, which then comes first in the sentence; it is not translated, as:

omnisne pecunia debita soluta est? *is all the money owing paid?*

When a **negative answer** is expected, **nūm** is used, which stands at the beginning of the sentence and is likewise not translated, as:
 num vespertilio avis est? *Is the bat a bird?*

With **nōn nē** forms a special interrogative particle **nonnē**, not; the answer expected is *yes*, as:

nonne lectio hujus libri te delectat? *does not the perusal of this book delight you?*

Double or Alternative questions have the following forms:

ūtrūm, <i>whether</i> ..	ān, <i>or</i> ..
— nē, “ ..	ān “ ..
....., “ ..	ān “ ..

utrum domi fuisti	an in schola?	} <i>have you been at home or in school?</i>
domine fuisti	an in schola?	
domi fuisti	an in schola?	

Sometimes the first part of an alternative question is omitted or implied and **ān** alone asks a question, as:

an nescis regibus longas esse manus? *or perhaps do you not know that kings have long arms?*

In direct questions *or not* is **annōn**; in indirect **necnē**.
 utrum domi fuisti **annon**? *have you been at home or not?*

Question and Answer.

In answering a question the emphatic word is generally repeated, as:

vidistine eum? *did you see him?* vidi, *yes, I did.*

solusne venisti? *did you come alone?* non solus, *no, I did not.*

The following **Responsives** are also used in answer to a direct question:

<i>yes</i>	<i>no</i>
Itā, <i>so</i>	nōn Itā, <i>no, not so</i>
Itā est, <i>so it is</i>	mīnīmē, <i>by no means</i>
Itā vērō est, <i>so it is indeed</i>	mīnīmē vērō, <i>by no means indeed</i>
sānē, <i>of course</i>	nīhīl mīnūs, <i>nothing less so</i>
sānē quidēm, <i>yes, indeed</i>	neutIquām, <i>not at all</i>
ētIām, <i>even so</i>	
vērō, <i>truly, in truth</i>	

immō, as a negative, substitutes something stronger in the place of a previous statement, as:

causa igitur non bona est? Im-	<i>the cause, then, is a bad one?</i>
mo optīma	<i>Nay, it is an excellent one</i>
num ille tibi familiāris est? Im-	<i>is he a friend of yours? On the</i>
mo alienissīmus	<i>contrary, a perfect stranger.</i>

festinō, -ārē, <i>to make haste</i>	porrigō, -ērē, <i>to hand</i>
lentūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>slow</i>	lintēūm, -ī, <i>a cloth</i>
Albertūs, -ī, <i>Albert</i>	accēdē, <i>come here</i>
clāmō, -ārē, <i>to cry out</i>	tūbēr, -īs, <i>a lump</i>
Brūnō, -ōnis, <i>Bruno</i>	frustūm, -ī, <i>a piece</i>
Ludōvicūs, -ī, <i>Lewis</i>	ācētūm, -ī, <i>vinegar</i>
gradūs, -ūs, <i>a step, pace</i>	in postērūm, <i>in future</i>
destillō, -ārē, <i>to trickle</i>	nīmīūm, <i>too much, too fast</i>

Festina lente.

Albertus. Quis clamat?

Bruno. Parvus Ludovicus clamat.

A. Quid clamas, Ludovice?

L. De gradibus decīdi.

A. Quid laesum est?

L. Nasus et frons; e naso sanguis destillat.

A. Tace, nihil est, quod timēas; frigīdam quis mihi porrigat aquam et lintēum. Accēde, ablūam te.

B. Tuber habet in fronte.

A. Lintēi frustum pete, idemque acēto tinge, id imponēmus. Tibi vero quotiēns dixi, ne nimīum currēres; si lento gradu incessisses, certe non esses lapsus. In postērum cautius ingredēre; sēva memoriā diligenter hoc praeceptum: Festina lente.

L. Fiet.

266. commōdō, -ārē, to lend : exardescō, -ārē, to break out

Of the Demonstrative *hic* the interrogative form with *ne* is:

hicīnē, haecīnē, hōcīnē; as:

hicīne liber tuus est? *is this your book?*

Who was more eloquent than Demosthenes? What is sweeter than honey? To whom have you lent your book? How many years did Alexander the Great reign? Of what parts does man consist? In what year did the first Punic war break out? Are they worthy of life who do nothing praiseworthy? Is each one the happier, the richer he is? Are they all cowards who are taken in battle? Did the Athenians do right in driving [that they drove] Aristides from the state? Is the mind immortal, or will it perish together with the body? Are you laughing or crying? Is anything (quid) more excellent than virtue? Nothing in truth. Is this your house? Yes. Is the world governed by the providence of God or by chance? Does wisdom alone make us happy or not? Do not men often despise the better? Did you read the book which I sent you the other day? No, I did not. Do we not owe the greatest thanks to our parents? Certainly. Did you write this letter or your brother?

267. Indirect Questions.

The **Subjunctive** is used in such questions as are dependent upon some word in the former part of the sentence (**Indirect Questions**).

The words:

ubi fuisti? *where have you been?*

are a **Direct Question**, with the verb in the **Indicative**; in the sentence:

dic mihi ubi fuëris, *tell me where you have been,*

the same words are an **Indirect Question**, and the dependent verb is in the **Subjunctive Mood**.

qualis sit animus ipse animus *the mind itself knows not what*
nescit *the mind is*

quis ego sim me rogitas? *do you ask me who I am?*

Indirect Questions have the same particles as the direct, **nūm** and **nē** corresponding to *whether* in English; **sī**, *if*, is used for *whether* after *tentāre*, *experiri*, *to try* and *expectāre*, *to expect*.

Epaminondas quaesivit salvusne *Epaminondas asked whether*
esset clipeus *his shield was safe*

paludem si nostri transirent *the enemy were waiting (to see)*
hostes expectabant *whether our men would cross*
the swamp.

Indirect Disjunctive Questions.

quaero utrum verum an falsum sit
quaero verumne an falsum sit
quaero verum an falsum sit
quaero verum falsumne sit

}

*I ask whether it is true
or false*

When the interrogative particle is omitted in the first member, **nē** may stand in the second, but only in **Indirect Questions**.

or not in **Indirect Questions** is **necne**, as: dii utrum sint, **necne** sint, *quaeritur, the question is whether there are gods or not.*

perspicuus, -ā, -ūm, *plain*

Fabricius, -ī, *Fabricius*

impellō, -ēre, *to drive*

sanctissimū consiliū, *the sov-*
ereign tribunal

Areopagus, -ī, *the Areopagus*

inquirō, -ēre, *to inquire*

insanus, -ī, *a madman*

usurpō, -āre, *to usurp*
piscator, -ōris, *an angler*

Quis hunc librum legit? Dic, quis hunc librum legērit. Egebatne amicus tuus? Immo locuples erat. Nonne perspicuum est, universum hunc mundum a Deo gubernāri? Infelix est Fabricius, quod rus suum ipse fodit? Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est? Vix dici potest, quot quantisque periculis

vita humāna circumdāta sit. Judīces reos interrogāre solent, quibus causis ad ea scelēra, quorum accusantur, impulsī sint. Areopāgus, sanctissimum Athenārum consilium, diligentissime inquirere solēbat, quid quisque civium ageret. Nescis, insāne, nescis, quantas vires virtus habēat; nomen tantum virtutis usurpas; quid ipsa valēat, ignōras. Cogitāto, quam longa sit hiems. An dives sit, omnes quaerunt, nemo an bonus. Num piscatōrem piscis amāre potest? Non intellēgunt homīnes, quam magnum vectīgal parsimoniā sit. Num tam stultus es, ut haec omnia casu facta esse existīmes? Nonne canis lupo similis est? Puer patrem interrōgat, num canes lupis similes sint.

268. nīhil intērest, *it makes no* sīlētō, -ērē, *to be silent*
difference exspectō, -ārē, *to look for*
 Xēnōcrātēs, -īs, *Xenocrates* quaerītūr, *the question is*
 de industriā, *on purpose*

It is uncertain how long the life of each of us will be. If we are thirsty it makes no difference whether it be water or wine *we drink*, nor does it matter whether it be a golden cup or a glass *one we use*, or the hollow of the hand. Xenocrates, when he was asked why he was almost always silent, replied: Because I have been sorry sometimes for having spoken, for having been silent never. Thales, *being* asked what was most common to men, replied: Hope, for even they have that who *have* nothing else. It is often not even useful to know [what there will be] the future. It is uncertain in what place death is looking for you; therefore, look you for it in every place. Is there one world or several (plūrēs)? The question is whether there is one world or several. Bring me back word whether your brother is at home. Which of you is the older? I do not know which of you is the older. Were you in school yesterday? Tell me were you in school yesterday. I was. Why did you not come to me? Tell me why you did not come to me. Will the physician ask a sick person whether he will be healed? Tell me does it hail in summer or in winter? Whether or not wisdom makes men happy is a question. It makes great difference whether an injury was done by chance or on purpose.

269. The Imperative.

The **Imperative** is used to express a *command, wish, advice or exhortation*.

The **Present Imperative** denotes that an action is to be performed *at once*, or to be continued if actually being performed, as:

si quid in te peccāvi, ignosce	<i>if I have sinned against you,</i> <i>forgive me</i>
justitiam cole et pietatem	<i>cultivate justice and piety.</i>

The **Future Imperative** is used where there is a direct reference to *future time*; it corresponds to the imperative use of the English *Future with shall* or to the Imperative *let*, and is properly used in general directions, laws, statutes and wills, as:

regio imperio duo sunt, consules appellantor	<i>there shall be two officers with</i> <i>royal power, they shall be</i> <i>called consuls.</i>
--	--

The regular negative of the Imperative is **nē**, which is, however, in classical Latin only found with the **Future Imperative**, as:

hominem mortuum, inquit lex, in urbe nē sepelito	<i>thou shalt not bury a dead man</i> <i>in the city, says the law.</i>
--	--

Instead of the **Negative Imperative** the following forms of the **Subjunctive** with **nē** are usually employed:

the second person of the **Perfect Subjunctive**, as:

hoc nē feceris, *that leave undone;*

the third person of the **Present Subjunctive**:

puer telum ne habeat, *a boy is not to have a weapon.*

Instead of the **Simple Imperative** several **Imperative Phrases** are common:

cūrā ūt, take care that	} each with the Subjunctive.
fāc. ūt, cause that	
fāc, do	

cūta ut quam primum venias, *come as soon as possible;*
valetudinem tuam fac ut cures, *take care of your health.*

cāvē nē, beware lest	} each with the Subjunctive.
cāvē, beware	
nōli, be unwilling, with the Infinitive.	

cave festines, *do not be in a hurry;* cave existimes, *do not think;*
noli me tangere, *do not touch me;* noli putāre, *do not suppose.*

obsēcrō, -ārē, *to beseech*
pōpūlārīs, -, *a fellow country-*
man

spectō, -ārē, *to look to*
rēgiūs, -ā, -ūm, *kingly*
succurrō, -ērē, *to succor*

despērō, -ārē, *to despair*

pār pārī rēferrē, *to return like*
for like

cūbitū surgērē, *to rise from bed*

cūbitūm irē, *to go to bed*

urgens, -tis, *pressing*

amicōs compārārē, *to make*
friends

rēpudiō, -ārē, *to cast off*

ānīmūm dēmittērē, *to be dis-*
heartened

respicērē finem, *to keep the*
goal in view

mālē gērērē, *to manage badly*

proximūs bōnīs, *next best*

Obsēcro, populāres, ferte misēro atque innocentī auxiliūm, subvenīte inōpi. Loca, quae diu fuērunt conclūsa, ne subīto intra. Mentem homīnis spectāto, non frontem. Regia, crede mihi, res est succurrēre lapsis. Nemo despēret; Deus unicuique dabit, quod ei plurimum prodērit. E duōbus malis elīge minus, e duōbus vitīis neutrum. Si offensus fuēris a quopīam, noli par pari referre. Bonus paterfamilias primus cubitū surgat, postrēmus cubitū eat. Nemīni onus impōnas, quod ipse ferre nequēas. Rem urgentem ne diffēras in crastīnum diem. Amīcos tibi compāra; eos vero, quos tibi comparaveris, ne statim repudiā. Ne in summo quidem pericūlo demittite ānimos. Fide, sed cui fidas, vide. Victor parcat hostībūs. Quidquid ages, prudenter agas, et respice finem. Dextra gerat gladiū, manus altēra monstret pacem. Ne verbis defendas, quae male gessisti. Proximus esto bonis, si non potes optimus esse. Qui dare vult aliis, ne dixerit: Vultisne? Imitāre formicam, quae etiam noctu operātur. Noli oblivisci, mi fili, quantum parentībūs et praeceptorībūs debēas. Cavēat emptor! Ignem igni ne addas!

270. diligētēr, *diligently*
bēnē mănē, *right early in the*
morning
irridēō, -ērē, *to mock*

Pergāmēnūs, -ī, *a Pergamean*
pārentūm lōcō, *in place of your*
parents
spēcīēs, -ēī, *a show*

Diligently take care of your health. Pray and work.
[Take care that you] do not fall. Get up, boys, right early

in the morning. Know thyself! Learn or depart! Do not sing of triumph before victory. Let there be a sound mind in a sound body. Take care, scholars, that you show yourselves attentive. Before old age take care that you live well, in old age that you die well. If you want to be loved, love. Mock not an unhappy person! Hurt not *your* friend even in joke. Thou shalt not kill. Do not answer, boy, unless you [shall] have been asked. Philip, king of the Macedonians, used to say: Fight with silver weapons, and you will conquer every thing. Attalus, king of the Pergameans, left this will: "The Roman people shall be the heir of my goods." Do not cultivate a barren field. Let the other side also (ět) be heard. A good book you should read a second time. Reverence God, reverence your parents and those whom nature has given you in place of your parents. Do not admire all things which have a show of glory. Let us imitate the example of Christ who blessed [to] his very enemies.

271. The Infinitive.

The **Infinitive** is not limited to a particular number or person, as the ordinary verbal forms, but is really a **Verbal Noun**.

The **Infinitive** governs the case of its verb, and is modified by adverbs and not by adjectives, as:

legere librum, *the reading of a book;*

diligenter legere librum, *the careful reading of a book.*

The **Infinitive** may be used as the **Subject** of a verb.

As such it is chiefly found with *essē* and impersonal verbs:

nunquam est utile peccare *to do wrong is never useful*

intērest omnium recte facere *it is the interest of all to do right.*

When the verb *essē*, *to be* (or others of similar meaning, see 203, 3) with an Adjective or Noun is used as the **Subject** of the sentence, such Adjective or Noun is put in the **Accusative**.

senem ante tempus fieri misē- *it is miserable to grow old be-*
rum est *fore the time.*

The Infinitive is used as the Object of Verbs.

Such are verbs denoting:

to be able, must, dare, posse, debere, andere

to begin, continue, cease, incipere, pergere, desinere

to be accustomed, learn, know how, assuescere, discere, scire

to wish, desire, resolve, velle, cupere, statuere.

vincere scis, Hannibal, victoria *how to win victory you know,*
 uti nescis *Hannibal; how to make use*
of victory you know not.

When the verb *essē, to be* (or others of similar meaning, see 203, 3) with an Adjective or Noun is used as the Object of a verb, such Adjective or Noun is put in the Nominative; as:

beatus esse sine virtute nemo *no one can be happy without*
 potest *virtue.*

propriū est, *it is the mark* isthuc, isthaec, isthoc, *the very*
 negotiā agere, *to transact af-* same; isthoc est, *that is what*
fairs *I call*

armatus, -ī, *an armed man* prospicio, -ere, *to foresee*
 se gerere, *to behave*

Postquam Romae reges regnare desiērunt, bini in singulos annos consules creati sunt. Et monere et moneri propriū est verae amicitiae. Solent diu cogitare omnes, qui magna negotia volunt agere. Milles perire melius est quam in sua civitate sine armatorum praesidio non posse vivere. Adsuesce et dicere verum et audire. Accipere praestat quam facere injuriam. Stultum est irasci iis, quae iram nostram non meruerunt nec sentiunt. Saepe optimum est tacere. Locutum fuisse me aliquando poenituit, tacuisse numquam. Aequum est filium possidere bona, quae pater possedit. Isthoc est sapere, non quod ante pedes modo est videre, sed etiam quae futura sunt prospicere. Utrumque vitium est et omnibus credere et nulli. Nihil miserius est quam propter nummos Deum contemnere. Numquam desinam ita me gerere, ut Deo bonisque hominibus placeam. Difficile est corrigere errores, qui nobiscum creverunt. Magni animi est injurias despicere. Plurimi cupiditates suas regere nesciunt, et tamen alios regere volunt. Vita ipsa plurimos sapere docet.

pennae, -ārūm, wings	māgis, better
ācerbūm, -ī, a calamity	prōbō, -ārē, to approve
tōlerābilis, -ē, endurable	falsā, -ōrūm, what is false
cognoscō, -ērē, to learn	

It is easy to do harm, difficult to do good. It is the first virtue to fly vice. To dwell in the city is irksome to him who has been accustomed to live in the country. It is beautiful to speak the truth; it is more beautiful to hear it willingly. To die is not to perish. All who wish to live according to nature, will obey [to] the divine and human law. If you wish to subject all things to yourself, subject yourself to reason. It is mean to prefer money to friendship. It is a fraud to take what you will not be able to return. To speak of [dē] future affairs will always be difficult. To err is human. To fly without wings is not an easy *thing*. To please the rabble is to displease the wise. To hear of calamities is more endurable than to see *them*. I can better find fault with past things than correct *them*. He who has accustomed himself to lie will easily steal. To receive a benefit is to sell *one's* liberty. I have never wished to please the people; for what I know the people do not approve; what they approve, I am ignorant of. The first step [of] to wisdom is to understand what is false, the second to learn truth. To lose a friend is the greatest of losses.

273. Accusative with the Infinitive.

The **Accusative** with the **Infinitive** is used like the English Objective with the Infinitive in such sentences as:

hoc verum esse scimus

we know this to be true.

In English we might also say: *We know that this is true*; but Latin permits *only* of the Infinitive Construction.

The **Accusative** with the **Infinitive** may be the **Subject** of the sentence. The *Predicate* is either a noun or an adjective with *est*, or an impersonal verb.

The most common phrases under this rule are:

pār est, <i>it is fair</i>	oportet, <i>there is need, ought</i>
iustum est, <i>it is just</i>	apparet, <i>it is clear</i>
certain est, <i>it is certain</i>	constat, <i>it is agreed, evident,</i>
verum est, <i>it is true</i>	<i>well known</i>
credibile est, <i>it is credible</i>	conducit
fās est, <i>it is right</i>	expedit
nēfās est, <i>it is forbidden</i>	prodest
fāmā est, <i>the story goes</i>	convēnit, <i>it is fitting</i>
opiniō est, <i>there is a report</i>	placēt, <i>it pleases</i>
spēs est, <i>there is hope</i>	displicēt, <i>it displeases</i>
necessē est, <i>it must needs</i>	

me scribere oportet, *I must write or I ought to write*
 certum est liberos amari, *it is certain that children are loved.*

The **Accusative** with the **Infinitive** is used as the **Object** of verbs of *Perceiving* and *Declaring* (*verba sentiendi et declarandi*), and similar expressions.

Verba sentiendi:

sentiŕē, <i>to perceive, notice</i>	
animadvertēŕē, <i>to see</i>	
audirē, <i>to hear</i>	
vidēŕē, <i>to see</i>	
accipēŕē, <i>to hear</i>	
compērirē, <i>to ascertain</i>	
cognoscēŕē, <i>to know</i>	
intelligērē, <i>to learn</i>	
cōgitārē, <i>to think</i>	
arbitrārī	} <i>to believe</i>
crēdērē	
existimārē	

Verba declarandi:

dīcērē, <i>to say</i>
nēgārē, <i>to deny, affirm that not</i>
affirmārē, <i>to affirm</i>
respondērē, <i>to answer</i>
scribērē, <i>to write</i>
fātērī, <i>to confess</i>
declārārē, <i>to declare</i>
demonstrārē, <i>to prove</i>
narrārē, <i>to tell</i>
nuntiārē, <i>to bring word</i>
dōcērē, <i>to teach</i>
ostendērē, <i>to show</i>

aves vidēmus construere nidos	<i>we see that birds build nests</i>
nemo negabit se esse mortalem	<i>no one will deny that he is mortal.</i>

Verbs of *Perceiving* take the **Accusative** with the **Present Participle** to represent the object as *actually seen, heard, etc.* as:

Catonem vidi in bibliotheca sedentem, *I saw Cato sitting in the library.*

Verbs of *Wishing* and *Desiring* take a dependent Accusative with the Infinitive. Such are:

völō, <i>I wish</i>	cūplō, <i>I desire</i>	sīnō, <i>I permit</i>
nōlō, <i>I do not wish</i>	jūbēō, <i>I bid</i>	pātīlōr, <i>I suffer</i>
mālō, <i>I like better</i>	vētō, <i>I forbid</i>	

discipulum me haberi volo, non doctorem	<i>I wish to be taken for a learner, not for a teacher</i>
Caesar pontem jubet rescindi	<i>Caesar orders the bridge to be broken down.</i>

Verbs of *Emotion*, as: gaudere, to rejoice, gratiam agere, to thank, dolere, to pain (see 259) may be considered as verbs of saying and thinking and, as such, take an Accusative with Infinitive, as:

salvum te advenisse gaudeo, *I rejoice that you have arrived safe.*

ludibrium, -i, <i>mockery</i>	consecro, -are, <i>to dedicate</i>
transilio, -ire, <i>to leap across</i>	permaneo, -ere, <i>to continue</i>
dilucidus, -a, -um, <i>clear</i>	perniciēs, -ei, <i>ruin</i>
antiquus, <i>anciently</i>	cūram habere, <i>to have regard for</i>
Ceres, -eris, <i>Ceres</i>	consequor, -i, <i>to follow</i>
Proserpina, -ae, <i>Proserpine</i>	exiguus, -a, -um, <i>scanty</i>

Fama est ludibrio fratris, Remum Romae novos transiisse muros. Tria convenit habere narrationem, ut brevis, ut dilucida, ut verisimilis sit. Constat Siciliam totam antiquitus Cereri et Proserpinae fuisse consecratam. Nihil difficilius est quam amicitiam usque ad extremum vitae diem permanere. Omne corpus mortale aliquo tempore interfirere necesse est. Nonne praestaret te mutum esse quam in aliorum perniciem esse disertum? Praeclarum sapientiae praeceptum est debere unumquemque nostrum majorem curam habere ejus temporis, quod post mortem nostram consecuturum est quam brevis illius et exigui, quo in hac vita sumus. Tempus est nos de illa perpetua jam, non de hac exigua vita cogitare. Multum mea interest vos omnes bonos pueros esse. Meliorem esse pessimis parva laus est. Decet cariorem nobis esse patriam quam nosmet ipsos. Cum corpore mentem crescere sentimus, pariterque senescere,

274. To translate such clauses as are introduced in English by the conjunction *that*, and require in Latin the **Accusative** with the **Infinitive**,

take no notice of *that*;

translate the **English Nominative** following *that* by the **Latin Accusative**;

translate the **English Verb** by the **Latin Infinitive**.

A **Predicate Noun** or **Adjective** and the **Participles** of the **Compound Infinitives** must agree with the **Accusative - Subject**; but, of course, the **Supine** remains unaltered.

sentio borēam frigidum esse
medici causā morbi inventa cu-
rationem esse inventam pu-
tant

*I feel that the north-wind is cold
physicians think that when the
cause of disease is discovered,
the cure has been discovered.*

invenio, -ire, to devise
consulto, -are, to consult
studium, -i, partiality
Balearis, -e, Balearic

cuniculus, -i, a rabbit
violō, -are, to injure
harenā obruere, to bury in the
sand

It is certain that children are loved by their parents. It is evident that laws were devised for (ad) the safety of citizens. It is true that nobody on this earth is always happy. How foolish it is to trust too much to prosperity! It is credible that the world was made for the sake of men. It becomes all men who consult about doubtful affairs to be free from anger and partiality. A law ought to be brief. It is necessary that the world be governed by God. It is well known that the inhabitants of the Balearic Islands implored the aid of the Roman army against an excessive multitude of rabbits. It is more difficult to bear wisely good fortune than bad. It has never been heard that a crocodile was injured by an Egyptian. Certain it is that many people die daily. You have never heard that fools are pleasing to sensible people. Who will deny that virtue is the greatest riches? They say that tortoises and crocodiles bury their eggs in the sand. The father forbids the son to come into his sight.

275. Tenses of the Infinitive.

After Verbs of *Perceiving* and *Declaring* (*verba sentiendi et declarandi*)

the **Present Infinitive** expresses *contemporaneous* action,
the **Perfect Infinitive** expresses *antecedent* action,
the **Future Infinitive** expresses *future* action.

Present Infinitive.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| I. credo eum scribere | <i>I believe that he is writing</i> |
| II. credēbam eum scribere | <i>I believed that he was writing.</i> |

Perfect Infinitive.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| I. credo eum scripsisse | <i>I believe that he has written</i> |
| II. credēbam eum scripsisse | <i>I believed that he had written.</i> |

Future Infinitive.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| I. credo eum scriptūrum esse | <i>I believe that he will write</i> |
| II. credēbam eum scriptūrum esse | <i>I believed that he would write.</i> |

I. After a **Principal Tense** translate:
the **Infinitive** like the **Indicative** of the *same* tense.

II. After a **Historical Tense** translate:
the **Infinitive Present** like the **Indicative Imperfect**
the **Infinitive Perfect** “ **Indicative Pluperfect**
the **Infinitive Future** “ **Subjunctive Imperfect** (*should and would*)

The **Future Infinitive** is often expressed by *forē* or *futūrūm essē* ūt—necessarily so when the verb has no *Supine*, as:

credo fore ut pluāt	<i>I believe it will rain</i>
credēbam fore ut pluēret	<i>I believed it would rain.</i>

The **Personal Pronouns**, which are in general used only for the sake of distinction or emphasis, must be **always** expressed in the **Accusative** with **Infinitive**. For the Pronouns of the third person the Reflexive *sē* is used in reference to the subject of the **Principal Clause**, and the Demonstratives *ēūm*, *ēām*, *ēōs*, *ēās* when referring to another noun.

nemo tam senex est qui se an-	<i>no one is so old but thinks he</i>
num non putet posse vivere	<i>can live another year</i>
Ennius deos esse censet, sed eos	<i>Ennius believes that there are</i>
non curare opinatur, quid	<i>gods, but he does not think</i>
agat humanum genus	<i>they care what mankind are</i>
	<i>doing.</i>

ōrīōr, -īrī, *to spring*
transducō, -ērē, *to bring across*
nāvigātiō circūm terrām, *a voyage round the world*
argūō, -ērē, *to prove*
glōbōsūs, -ūs, -ūm, *round like a ball*
Herōdōtūs, -ī, *Herodotus*

infans, -tis, *dumb*
ādūlescens, -tis, *young*
Antonīnūs Pīūs (-ī -ī), *Antoninus Pius, a Roman emperor*
sententiā, -ae, *a sentence*
Fābiā Dōlābellā (-ae -ae), *Fabia Dolabella*
viginti annōs, *these 20 years*

Caesar reperiēbat, plerosque Belgas esse ortos a Germānis Rhenumque antiquitus transductos. Navigatiōnes circum terram satis argūunt, eam esse globōsam. Solon cum interrogātus esset, cur nullum supplicium constituisset in eum, qui parentem necasset, respondit, se id neminem factūrum putasse. Herodōtus ait, nihil a Persis mendaciō turpius judicāri. Quidam idcirco Deum esse negant, quia non cernitur, proinde quasi nostram ipsam mentem vidēre possimus. Herodōtus scribit, Croesi filiū, cum esset infans, locūtum esse. Quis est, quamvis sit adulescens, qui sciat, se ad vespērum esse victūrum? Antonīnus Pius hanc praeclāram Scipiōnis sententiā saepe in ore habēbat, malle se unum civem servāre quam mille hostes occidēre. Fabiae Dolabellae triginta se annos habēre dicenti: verum est, inquit Cicēro, nam hoc jam viginti annos audīo. Constat, Romānos eōdem anno duas urbes florentissimas, Carthagīnem et Corinthum delevisse. Ex inimico cogita posse fieri amicum.

276. innūmērābilēs cōplae, *immense bodies*
sīdūs, -ērīs, *a star*
adspectūs, -ūs, *appearance*
indicō, -ārē, *to indicate*
fortūtūs, -ūs, -ūm, *matter of chance*

Crassūs, -ī, *Crassus*
Luciliūs, -ī, *Lucilius*
Epicūrētūs, -ī, *an Epicurean*
praestābiliōr, -ūs, *better*
ōtīōsūs, -ūs, -ūm, *of ease*
condimentūm, -ī, *an appetizer*
pōtiō, -ōnīs, *drink*

The ancient Greeks and Romans thought there were many gods. They are mistaken who believe that the mind perishes with the body. They live to no purpose who think they will live always. We perceive by the touch that stones are hard. Alexander hearing that Dareus was raising immense bodies of soldiers, replied: One wolf is not afraid of many sheep. Aristotle

asserts [teaches] that there never was a poet Orpheus. Most people say that their own dangers are nearer to them than those of others. Solon said that before death no one ought to be called happy. The appearance of the sun, moon and all the stars sufficiently indicates that they are not a matter of chance. Many Romans believed that Germany could not be inhabited on account of the cold. Who does not know that griefs are assuaged by tears? They say that Romulus was brought up among shepherds. Lucilius says that Crassus laughed once in his life. The Epicureans said that nothing was better than a life of ease. Socrates used to say that the appetizer of food was hunger, of drink thirst. It is agreed among all writers that Romulus was the first king of the Romans. The oracle of Delphi said that Socrates was the wisest of all men. Who has not heard that the Romans were conquered by Hannibal at Cannae?

277. Nominative with the Infinitive.

With **Passive Verbs** of *Perceiving* and *Declaring*, instead of the Infinitive with the Accusative a personal construction is more common by which the *Subject Accusative* becomes the *Subject Nominative* of the leading verb: **Nominative with the Infinitive.**

Accus. with Inf. tradunt Homērum caecum fuisse, *they say that Homer was blind*

Nomin. with Inf. Homērus caecus fuisse traditur, *Homer is said to have been blind.*

Especially to be noted is the construction of the **Nominative** with the **Infinitive** after:

jūbēō, *I order*

vētō, *I forbid*

sīnō, *I let*

vidēōr, *I seem*

consules jubentur exercitum
scribere

omnibus videmur recte fecisse,
quod amici causam defenderi-
mus

*the consuls are ordered to levy
an army*

*it seems to all that we did right
in defending the cause of our
friend.*

Macedōniā, -ae, *Macedonia*
castellūm, -ī, *a fort*
āsellūs, -ī, *a donkey*
pōtissimūm, *best*
fructūm cāpērē, *to derive ad-*
vantage
Helvētīūs, -ī, *a Helvetian*
incendō, -ērē, *to burn*
rēstitūō, -ērē, *to rebuild*

vācō, -ārē, *to be vacant*
lectulūm, -ī, *a bed*
Marcellūs, -ī, *Marcellus*
aegrē pati, *to be grieved*
disciplīnā, -ae, *discipline*
Drūidēs, -ūm, *the Druids,*
priests among the ancient
Celtic nations
transfērō, -rē, *to bring across*

Philippus, Macedoniæ rex omnia castella expugnari posse dicebat, in quæ modo asellus onustus auro posset adscendere. Plerique amicos eos potissimum diligunt, ex quibus sperant se maximum fructum esse capturos. Caesar Helvetios oppida vicosque, quos incendèrant, restituere iussit. Id ea maxime ratione fecit, quod noluit eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant, vacare. Duo equites Romani promisèrant, se Ciceronem ante lucem in lectulo interfecturos esse. Ceres prima homines frumenti usum docuisse dicitur. Creditur Tacitus, qui mores Germanorum terræque situm accuratissime descripsit, non audita tantum narrare, sed etiam quæ ipse vidèrit. Milites jussi sunt a Marcello temperare Archimedi. Lycurgus virgines sine dote nubere iussit, ut uxores eligerentur, non pecuniæ. Avarus aegre patitur vicinum suum esse se divitiorem. Publius Scipio dicere solitus est, nunquam se minus otiosum esse quam cum otiosus, nec minus solum quam cum solus esset. Homerus Lycurgi temporibus vixisse traditur. Thales primus defectiōnem solis prædixisse fertur. Disciplīna Druidum in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translata esse existimatur.

278. triumphō, -ārē, *to triumph*
rēgiā, -ae, *a (king's) palace*
flāgellūm, -ī, *a scourge; flāgel-*
lis caedēre, to scourge
apud tūos, *with your family*
cognōvī, *I learn*
Tērentīūs, -ī, *Terence*

fābulā, -ae, *a play*
Laelīūs, -ī, *Laelius*
Aristaeūs, -ī, *Aristaeus*
inventōr, -ōris, *an inventor*
adhærēō, -ērē, *to be joined*
cognoscō, -ērē, *to make the*
acquaintance of

A youth commonly hopes that he will live long. In war times we hope that the good cause shall at length triumph.

Croesus, king of Lydia, ordered all the treasures of his palace to be shown to Solon. Xerxes ordered the sea to be scourged. Your parents wish you to be diligent and pious; they do not wish you to have bad friends. Xanthippe, the wife of Socrates the philosopher, is said to have been cross and quarrelsome in a high degree. We hope that from this life we shall go (venire) to another and happier life. Nature herself bids us be thankful. All wish to live happily. I have received your most pleasing letter from which I learn that you are with your family. Lycurgus persuaded the Lacedaemonians that he had received his laws from Apollo. You promised to [that you would] come, but you have not come. Remember that you will die. The plays of Terence, on account of the elegance of the language were thought to have been written by Laelius. Aristaeus is said to have been the inventor of oil. It seems as if Sicily was once joined to Italy. They say that Plato came to Italy to (ūt) make the acquaintance of the Pythagoreans. The Phoenicians, it is said, were very experienced sailors.

279.

Direct Discourse.

A *Statement* which gives the exact words of the original speaker or writer is called *oratio recta*, or **Direct Discourse**.

inquām, *quoth I*, is used in direct quotations, **ājō**, *I say*, in indirect quotations. **inquām** always follows one or more of the words quoted, and when its subject is mentioned, it commonly follows the verb: *uva*, **inquit** *vulpes*, *nondum mātūra est*, *the grape is not yet ripe*, *says the fox*.

cūlex, **-īcīs**, *a gnat*
mōlēs, **-īs**, *weight*
grāvō, **-ārē**, *to oppress*
prōtīnūs, *immediately*
prorsūs nōn, *not at all*
confectūs annis, *stricken in*
visitō, **-ārē**, *to visit* [years
dēvōrō, **-ārē**, *to devour*
spēluncā, **-ae**, *a cave*
sālūtō, **-ārē**, *to salute*

exēō, **-īrē**, *to depart*
cāvernā, **-ae**, *a hole*
siccō, **-ārē**, *to dry*
cicādā, **-ae**, *a cricket*
impertīō, **-īrē**, *to share*
nōn ērāt ōtīum, *I had no time*
errō, **-ārē**, *to rove about*
cantō, **-ārē**, *to chirrup*
saepēs, **-īs**, *a hedge*
pascūm, **-ī**, *a pasture*

Culex in tauri cornu sedens dixit: sī te mole mea gravo, protinus avolābo. At taurus respondit: mea nihil intērest, utrum manēas an avōles; te enim prorsus nōn sensi.

Leo annis confectus morbum simulāvit. Tum ad aegrōtum regem visitandum complūres venērunt bestīae, quas protinus devorāvit. Sed cauta vulpes procul ante speluncam stabat regem salūtans. Interrogāvit leo: cur non intras? Respondit vulpes: quod vidēo multa intransiūm vestigiā, at nulla exeuntiūm.

Formīca hiēmis tempore grana, quae prudens collegērat aestate, e caverna trahēbat et siccābat. Hanc esuriēns cicāda rogāvit, ut sibi aliquid impertiret. Cui formīca: aestate quid agēbas? inquit. Tum illa: non erat otium, ut de futuro tempore cogitārem; errābam cantans per saepes et pascuā. Ridens formīca et grana refērens sic ait: si aestate cantasti, age, nunc hiēme salta.

280. cuculūs, -ī, a cuckoo	praedicō, -ārē, to advertise
maximōpērē, most particularly	verbēō, -ārē, to flog
cōturnix, -icis, a quail	atquē, exactly; proptēr id ipsūm,
mentīō, -ōnis, mention	for this very reason
spectō, -ārē, to concern	hērūs, -ī, a master
mērītūm, -ī, a merit	

A cuckoo questioned a starling which had flown from the city: "What do people say of (dē) my song? What of the nightingale?" — "They praise the song of the nightingale most particularly," says the starling. "What about the lark?" — "A great many praise its (hīc) song also," answers the starling. "And what about the quail?" — "Some also are delighted with its voice." — "What, pray," asks the cuckoo, "do they think (iudicārē) of me?" — "That," replies the starling, "I cannot say, for nobody makes mention of you." The cuckoo angry says: "Therefore I will always speak of myself."

This fable concerns those who are always advertising themselves and their merits.

A certain man flogged his servant, principally on account of *his* laziness. The latter began to cry out: "Why do you flog me? I have done nothing." — "Exactly for this very reason I flog you," replies the master, "because you have done nothing."

281. Indirect Discourse.

An **Indirect Quotation** expresses a thought indirectly, as *reported, recognized or contemplated* by some one: *oratio obliqua*.

Oratio recta.

Socrātes dicere solēbat: "omnes in eo quod sciunt satis sunt eloquentes;" *Socrates used to say: "All men are eloquent enough in what they understand."*

Oratio obliqua.

Socrātes dicere solēbat, omnes in eo quod scirent, satis esse eloquentes; *Socrates used to say that all men were eloquent enough in what they understood.*

In **Indirect Discourse** the *Verb* of the *Principal Clause* is in the **Infinitive** and its *Subject* in the **Accusative**; *Dependent Clauses* connected with it by *Relatives* and *Particles* take the **Subjunctive**.

Interrogative Sentences are put in the **Subjunctive** according to 267.

Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesāris pauca respondit: quid sibi vellet? cur in suas possessiones venīret?

Ariovistus gave a brief answer to Caesar's demands: what did he mean? why did he come into his possessions?

Imperative Sentences are put in the **Subjunctive**; the negative is, of course, *nē*.

mandāta remittunt, quorum haec erat summa: Caesar in Galliam reverteretur, exercitus dimittēret

they sent back orders of which the substance was as follows: Caesar should return into Gaul and disband his armies.

A **Clause** depending upon a *Subjunctive* or *Infinitive* takes the **Subjunctive** if it is regarded as an integral part of that clause. This is called **Attraction of Mood**.

mos est Athēnis laudāri in con- *it is custom at Athens for those*
ciōne eos, qui sint in proellīs *to be publicly eulogized who*
interfecti *have been slain in battle.*

The **Subjunctive** is used in *subordinate clauses* to express the thought of *some other person* than the speaker or writer:

quos vicēris, amīcos tibi esse *do not believe that those whom*
cave credas *you have conquered are your*
friends.

All references to the **Subject** of the leading clause are regularly expressed by the **Reflexive** *sui* (*suius*).

ānīmus sentit se sua vi movēri *the mind feels that it moves by*
its own force.

Arcās, -ādīs, *an Arcadian*
Mēgārā, -ae, *Megara*
caupō, -ōnis, *an innkeeper*
devertō, -ērē, *to put up*
hospēs, -ītis, *a friend*
quiescō, -ērē, *to retire to rest*
concubīa noctē, *in the first sleep*
hospitium, -ī, *the house of a*
friend
perterrō, -ērē, *to frighten*
visum, -ī, *a vision*
ducō, -ērē, *to conclude*
rēcumbō, -ērē, *to lie down again*

Inultūs, -ā, -ūm, *unavenged*
conjicō, -ērē, *to thrust into*
injecō, -ērē, *to throw over*
suprā, *above, over*
stercūs, -ōris, *dung*
commōvēō, -ērē, *to rouse*
praestō esse alīcui, *to wait*
upon some one
būbulcūs, -ī, *a driver*
erūō, -ērē, *to drag out*
pātēfācō, -ērē, *to bring to light*
poenās dārē, *to suffer punish-*
ment

Oratio recta.

Clarum somnium.

Oratio obliqua.

Cum duo quidam Arcādes familiāres iter una facerent et Megāram venissent, alter ad caupōnem devertit, alter ad hospitem. Qui ut cenāti quiverunt, concubīa nocte visus est in somnīs ei, qui erat in hospitio, ille alter orāre, ut subveniret, quod sibi a caupōne interitus pararetur; is

Inter alia clara somnia traditur hoc: Cum duo quidam Arcādes familiāres iter una facerent et Megāram venissent, alterum ad caupōnem devertisse, ad hospitem alterum. Qui ut cenāti quiescerent, concubīa nocte visum esse in somnīs ei, qui erat in hospitio, illum alterum orāre, ut subveniret, quod sibi a caupōne interitus

primo perterritus somnīo surrexit; dein cum se collegisset idque visum pro nihilo habendum esse duxisset, recubuit; tum ei dormienti idem ille visus est rogāre, ut quoniam sibi vivo non subvenisset, mortem suam ne inultam esse pateretur; se interfectum in plaustrum a caupōne esse conjectum et supra stercus injectum; petere, ut mane ad portam adesset, priusquam plaustrum ex urbe exiret. Hoc vero somnīo is commotus mane bubulco praesto ad portam fuit; quaesivit ex eo, quid esset in plastro; ille perterritus fugit; mortuus erūtus est; caupo re patefacta poenas dedit.

pararetur; eum primo perterritum somnīo surrexisse; dein cum se collegisset idque visum pro nihilo habendum esse duxisset, recubuisse; tum ei dormienti eundem illum visum esse rogāre, ut quoniam sibi vivo non subvenisset, mortem suam ne inultam esse pateretur; se interfectum in plaustrum a caupōne esse conjectum et supra stercus injectum; petere, ut mane ad portam adesset, priusquam plaustrum ex oppido exiret. Hoc vero somnīo eum commotum mane bubulco praesto ad portam fuisse; quaesisse ex eo, quid esset in plastro; illum perterritum fugisse; mortuum erūtum esse; caupōnem, re patefacta, poenas dedisse.

282. dulcis, -ē, *obliging*
Hispanūs, -ī, *a Spaniard*
appellō, -ārē, *to style*
intolerābilis, -ē, *intolerable*
appellātiō, -ōnis, *an appellation*

Direct Discourse.

Bitter enemies deserve better of (dē) some people than those friends who seem obliging; the former often tell the truth, the latter never.

Scipio when he was styled king by the Spaniards, said:
"The name of general which

praedicō, -ārē, *to boast*
sup̄erō, -ārē (with abl.), *to excel in*
consēquor̄, -ī, *to attain to*
praesēs, -idis, *a governor*

Indirect Discourse.

Cato used to say that bitter enemies deserved better of some people than those friends who seemed obliging; that the former often told the truth, the latter never.

Scipio when he was styled king by the Spaniards said the name of general which the

(quō) my soldiers have called me, is to me the greatest; the kingly name, elsewhere great, is intolerable at Rome; I beseech you to (ūt) abstain from the appellation of king."

Diogenes used to boast how much (quantō) he excelled even the king of Persia in happiness. "To me," says he, "nothing is wanting, to him nothing will be ever enough; I do not desire his pleasures, he can in no manner attain to mine."

Tiberius wrote to the governors of the provinces the following: "It is the duty of a good shepherd to shear, not to skin, his sheep."

soldiers had called him, was to him the greatest; the kingly name, elsewhere great, was intolerable at Rome, he besought them to abstain from the appellation of king.

Diogenes used to boast how much he excelled even the king of Persia in happiness, *by saying* that to himself nothing was wanting, to the king nothing would be enough; that he did not desire the king's pleasures, and the king could in no manner attain to his.

Tiberius wrote to the governors of the provinces that it was the duty of a good shepherd to shear, not to skin, his sheep.

283.

Participles.

1. There are two Participles in the *Active Voice*:

the **Present Participle** denotes *continuance*, as: scribens, *writing*;

the **Future Participle** is used to express *what is likely* or *about to happen*, as: scriptūrus, *about to write*.

2. There are two Participles in the *Passive Voice*:

the **Perfect Participle** denotes *completion*, as: scriptūs, *written*;

the **Gerundive** (so-called **Future Participle**) denotes *necessity* or *propriety*, as: scribendus, *to be written*.

3. Deponent Verbs have four Participles:

the **Present Participle**, as: hortans, *exhorting*;

the **Perfect Participle**, as: hortātūs, *having exhorted*;

the **Fut. Part. Act.**, as: hortātūrus, *being about to exhort*;

the **Fut. Part. Pass.**, as: hortandūs, *to be exhorted*.

4. The Participles are used **attributively**, or in the manner of ordinary Adjectives, as:

arbor florens, *a blossoming tree* scripta epistula, *a written letter*
puer dormiens, *a sleeping boy* urbs obsessa, *a besieged town.*

5. The Participles are used with the utmost freedom **appositively** and may have the value

of a *Relative*, as: divitiae semper duraturae, *riches which will last forever;*

of *while, when, after*, as: Plato scribens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing;*

of *if*, as: mendāci homīni ne verum quidem dicenti credimus, *we do not believe a liar, even if he speaks the truth;*

of *since, because*, as: cantus olorinus recte fabulosus habetur nunquam auditus, *the swan's song is justly regarded as fabulous, because it has never been heard;*

of *though, although*, as: oculus se non videns alia cernit, *the eye, though not seeing itself, sees other things;*

of *to, in order to* (expressing a purpose), as: Scipio in Africam trajecit Carthaginem deleturus, *Scipio crossed over into Africa to destroy Carthage.*

6. The Participle with a negative, as *nōn, nihīl* is often best rendered

by *without* and a *Participial Noun*, as: multi homines vituperant libros non intellectos, *many men find fault with books without understanding them.*

offerō, -rē, *to offer*
explorō, -ārē, *to explore*
Jūdaeus, -ī, *a Jew*
pōtestās, -ātis, *permission*
Jōsēphus, -ī, *Joseph*
evēhō, -ērē, *to raise*
imprōbūs, -ī, *a rascal*
jūvō, -ārē, *to avail*
exigō, -ērē, *to spend*

cālēfāciō, -ērē, *to heat*
adsuēfiō, -iēri, *to be trained*
ōnērō, -ārē, *to load*
sarcinae, -arūm, *baggage*
procumbō, -ērē, *to lie down*
rēsurgō, -ērē, *to rise again*
Hēphaestīōn, -ōnis, *Hephaestus*
pārītēr, *together* [tion
ādēō, -irē, *to reach*

Utrum est praeclarus aurum habere, an habentibus aurum imperare? Persarum regi intra imperii fines iter facienti ab omnibus munera offerebantur. Caesar adversus hostem copias ducturus praemisit equites, qui vias omnes explorarent. Cyrus rerum potitus Judaeis potestatem dedit in patriam redeundi. Deus Josëphum in Aegypto multa mala perpassum ad summos honores evexit. Sapiens quidam laudatus ab improbo: quam timëo, inquit, ne quid male fecërim! Quid hominem octoginta anni juvant per inertiam exacti? Currando calefactus cave, ne statim bibas. Camëlus adsuefiëri potest, ut onerandus sarcinis humi procumbat, oneratus resurgat. Hephaestion longe omnium amicorum carissimus erat Alexandro, cum ipso pariter educatus. Alexander moriens anulum suum dedërat Perdicaë. Insulas non possumus adire, nisi navibus, undique mari circumdätas. Avärus maximas saepe divitias possidens, iis non utitur. Risus interdum ita repente erumpit, ut eum cupientes tenere nequeamus.

284. Ardëä, -ae, Ardea	intüëör, -ëri, to look upon
vergërë äd, to decline towards	läcessö, -ërë, to provoke
jentäcülüm, -i, breakfast	plänë, perfectly
pulcherrimüs, -ä, -üm, most	audïö, -irë, to hearken to
glorious	inspicïö, -ërë, to examine

The Perfect Passive Participle supplies the place of a Verbal Noun with of, as: occisus Caesar, the murder of Caesar.

Tarquin the Proud, while besieging Ardea, lost his kingdom. In the morning [time] and when declining towards the west, the sun has less [of] strength. Caesar, having got possession of Alexandria, gave the government to Cleopatra. A friend had come to take breakfast with me. The murder of Caesar, the dictator, appeared to some the worst, to others the most glorious deed. He who is about to purchase land must before (prae) all things look upon the water, the roads, and the neighbors. A lion, when satiated and not provoked, is perfectly harmless. Alexander called the city which he had founded [founded by him] Alexandria. Tigers attack all animals, because they are always thirsting for blood. The rhinoceros when about to fight with an elephant is said to sharpen its

horn on rocks (*abl.*). Word was brought to Cincinnatus as he was plowing that he had been made dictator. Attentive friends hearkened to Socrates while he was discoursing on the immortality of souls. I never drink without being thirsty; many men drink without being thirsty. He is a fool who when he is going to buy a horse does not examine *the animal* itself, but its cloth and bridle. Numa was made king in the forty first year after the founding of the city.

285.

Participles (continued).

Verbs of *Perceiving* take the *Accusative* with the *Present Participle*, when the object is to be represented as *actually* seen, heard, etc.; also: *fācērē, inducērē, to represent, introduce* (see 273), as:

vidi puēros ludentes

I saw the boys playing

Xenophon facit Socrātem disputantem

Xenophon represents Socrates disputing.

attonītūs, -ā, -ūm, *stunned*

accēdērē ād, *to proceed to*

castīgō, -ārē, *to discipline*

recēdō, -ērē, *to move backwards*

scālā, -ae, *a ladder*

pīx, pīcis, *pitch*

applicō, -ārē *to apply*

Caesāriānūs, -ā, -ūm, *of Caesar*

mūtūs, -ā, -ūm, *silent*

immittō, -ērē, *to let loose*

prīus, *sooner*

Anchārīūs, -ī, *Ancharius*

vehēmentēr, *furiously*

perfōdīō, -ērē, *to stab to death*

corrādō, -ērē, *to scrape together*

porrīgō, -ērē, *to shake*

cistā, -ae, *a chest*

irrūō, -ērē, *to rush*

divīnūm nūmēn (-ī -īnīs),

obstūpescō, -ērē, *to be astonished*

divine majesty

ished

Imperātor milītes subīto terrōre attonītos castigāvit. Rōmāni Syracūsas oppugnantes scalas muris applicuērunt. Omnia adhibīta remediā interdum aegrōtis magis nocent quam prosunt. A cane muto prius quam a vehementer latranti mordebēris. Avāri pecuniā undīque corrāsam in cistis abscondunt. Divīni numīnis auxiliū et grātiā implorantes ad aedes sacras accedīmus. Navigantibus terra recedēre vidētur. Cassius naves pice complētās in Caesariānam classem immisit. Nero a senātu hostis patriāe judicātus ipse pugiōne se transfixit. Ancharīus quidam in conspectu Marīi perrossus

est, quia manum non porrexerat ei salutanti. Cum Romani milites primum elephantos in se irruentes viderent, obstupuerunt neque iis restiterunt. Is fidelissime dat consilium, qui id suadet, quod ipse, si in eodem loco erit, facturus erit. Helvetii cum novas sedes petitori essent, omnia oppida et vicos incendierant. Tullus Hostilius tricesimo imperii anno altero, fulmine ictus, cum domo sua arsit.

286. *ācūlētūs, -ī, a sting; ācū-*
lēis pungere, to sting

In primis, among the foremost

Tyrūs, -ī, Tyre

dēprēhendō, -ērē, to overtake

dimittō, -ērē, to disband

Sertōriūs, -ī, Sertorius

bellum excitāre, to stir up war

ōcēānūs, -ī, the ocean

confūgīō, -ērē, to flee to

sē rēcipere, to betake one's self

pārētēm fērīre, to knock one's
head against the wall

indignātiō, -ōnis, indignation

commōtūs, -ā, -ūm, moved

mōnōcērōs, -ōtis, a unicorn

Bees, when provoked, sting furiously. Epaminondas, when fighting, always stood among the foremost. Alexander, when besieging Tyre, built a mound out into (in with abl.) the sea. The Greeks burned Troy when taken. The soldiers of Anthony overtook Cicero in his flight. King Pyrrhus sent an ambassador to Rome to sue for peace. Though ordered by the senate, yet Caesar did not disband his army. Sertorius who had stirred up a severe war against the Romans in Spain, being [having been] at length conquered, fled to the ocean to betake himself to the Islands of the Blessed. Men, when moved by deep (gravis) grief and indignation, sometimes knock their heads against the wall. Ariovistus, the chief of the Germans, was about to occupy all Gaul. It is the way of timid people to fear even those things which ought not to be feared. Four hundred cavalry of the Helvetians fighting bravely put to flight four thousand of the Romans. He who has been struck by lightning does not see the flash of lightning. We are not wont to believe [to] a liar even if he speaks the truth. Many people leave their country to seek other settlements. The unicorn is rightly regarded as fabulous, because it has never been seen.

287.

Ablative Absolute.

A Noun or Pronoun with a *Participle* is used in the **Ablative Case** absolutely to express some accompanying circumstance or condition of the action.

The **Ablative Absolute** may be translated by the English *Nominative Absolute* which is a close equivalent; but, as a rule, the same change of form is required as in translating Participles in general (see 283). Examples are: '

Numa Pompilio reg- *Numa Pompilius reigning.* *When Numa*
nante *Pompilius was reigning.* *In the reign*
 of Numa Pompilius.

Tito imperante *In the reign of the emperor Titus.*

Caesare interfecto	<i>Caesar being, having been murdered.</i>
	<i>When Caesar had been murdered.</i>
	<i>After the murder of Caesar.</i>

An Adjective, or another Noun may take the place of the Participle, as:

Xerxe rege *Xerxes being king.*

natūra dūce *Nature being the leader. Under the guidance of nature.*

noletibus nobis *While we are unwilling. Against our will. In spite of us.*

patre invito *While father is, was unwilling. Against father's will.*

The want of a Perfect **Active** Participle in Latin is frequently supplied by the Ablative Absolute with a **Passive** Participle, thus:

Caesar, urbe capta, rediit { *The city being taken, Caesar returned.*
 { *Having taken the city, Caesar returned.*

Chrlō, -ōnīs, Chilo

Ōlympiā, -ae, *Olympia*

expirō, -ārē, *to expire*

insīdīae, -ārūm, treachery

committō, -ēre, to fight

Gāiūs Ātīlīŭs (-ī -ī), *Gaius Atilius*

Sardūs, -ī, a Sardinian

trīumphātūm est, *there was a triumph*

dīvulgō, -āre, to spread abroad

ēmīnēō, -ērē, to be prominent

ērīpīō, -ērē, to deliver

sentīō, -īrē, to be aware of

státũŏ, -ěřě, *to decide*

Iniquitās, -ātis, injustice

obstō, -ārē, to intervene

Dēō testē, calling on God to witness

Chilo, unus e septem sapientibus, filio victore Olympiae, nimio gaudio exspiravit. Vivo Hannibale Romani sese ab insidiis tutos non esse arbitrabantur. Duce Scipione Romani in Africam trajecerunt, ubi pugna ad Zamam commissa pax petentibus Carthaginensibus data est. Manlio Torquato, Gaio Atilio consulibus de Sardis triumphatum est, et omnibus locis pace facta Romani bellum non habebant, quod inde ab urbe condita semel tantum factum erat, regnante Numa Pompilio. Sapiens amissis omnibus rebus dives judicandus est. Fama divulgata, Numam Pompilium Sabinum virtute et sapientia eminere, hunc populus Romanus, quamquam peregrinum, praeteritis civibus regem creavit. Quam multis e periculis Deus vitam tuam eripuit te non sentiente! Judex, qui statuit aliquid altera parte non audita, iniquitatis arguitur. Eclipses non ubique cernuntur, aliquando propter nubila, saepius globo terrae obstante. Quod Deo teste promiseris, id tenendum est.

288. advēnīō, -īrē, to approach Pausāniās, -ae, Pausanias
Thermōpylae, -ārūm, Thermo- Mardōniūs, -ī, Mardonius
pylae Plātaeae, -ārūm, Plataea
vīgēō, -ērē, to thrive expers, -tis, free
confāgrātīō, -ōnīs, an eruption convēnit, it is agreed

The Greeks, on the approach of the Persians, occupied Thermopylae. After the expulsion (expellō) of the kings, the first consuls at Rome were Brutus and Collatinus. It thunders sometimes also when the sky is serene. We cannot doubt that there is a God, as nature herself teaches it. Schools are a great hope of one's country; when they flourish, the state also thrives. The Greeks under the leadership of Themistocles conquered the Persians at Salamis. In the reign of the emperor Titus there occurred an eruption of Vesuvius; in the reign of Tiberius, a violent earthquake. When the sea is calm, any one can be pilot. Under the leadership of Pausanias the Greeks put to flight the immense forces of Mardonius at Plataea. For 44 years Mithridates carried on war with the Romans with often varying fortune. Pythagoras, who first called himself a philosopher, flourished when Servius Tullius was king of the Romans. We ought to be free

from all fear, since God regulates human affairs. Under the guidance of nature, the ancients comprehended that there was a God, but it was not agreed among them what God was.

289.

Gerund.

1. As the Infinitive is used as a *Verbal Noun* in the Nominative and Accusative Cases, so the **Gerund**, corresponding to the English participial noun in *ing*, is used in the remaining cases, viz.:

Nom.	scribere est utile	<i>writing is useful</i>
Gen.	ars scribendi	<i>the art of writing</i>
Dat.	scribendo adfui	<i>I was present at the writing</i>
Acc.	scribere disco	<i>I learn to write</i>
	ad scribendum utilis	<i>useful for writing</i>
Abl.	scribendo discimus	<i>we learn by writing.</i>

2. The **Gerund** governs the same case as the verb, as:

ars scribendi epistolam	<i>the art of writing a letter</i>
cupidus te audiendi	<i>desirous of hearing you</i>
inurias ferendo	<i>by bearing wrongs</i>
ad beate vivendum	<i>for living happily</i>
parendo legibus	<i>by obeying the laws</i>

cruciſ, -arē, to torture	vincē, -erē, to overcome
mōdērātē, with moderation	certāmēn, -inīs, a contest
gēlascō, -ērē, to freeze	Persicūs, -ā, -ūm, Persian
grandō, -inīs, hail	auscultans, -tīs, a hearer
fortūnā adēō aspērā, a lot so hard	permōvērē, -ērē, to excite

Avāri homīnes non solum libidinē augendi divitiās cruciantur, sed etiā amittendi metu. Parsimonīa est scientiā vitandi sumptus supervaciōs sive ars re familiāri moderātē utendi. Si pluvīa inter decidendum gelascit, grando fit. Valetūdo, amicitīa ceterāque bona quanti sint, carendo magis quam fruendo intellexi. Nulla fortūna adēō aspērā est, quam prudenter patiēdo vir fortis non vincat. Reddenda est terra terrae. In certāmine ad Thermopŷlas milites Persici postrēmo flagellōrum ictibus ad pugnandum coacti sunt. Optīmus orātor

est, qui dicendo animos auscultantium et docet et delectat et permovet. Cato perpetuo censēbat, Carthaginem esse delendam. Cum iudici dicenda sententia erit, meminērit se Deum habere testem. Saepe in metuendo plus mali est quam in ipso illo, quod timetur. Summa voluptas ex discendo capitur. Ut equus equitandi imperito inutilis est, ita libri sunt inutilēs ignaro legendi.

290. noxiūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>noxious</i>	insuetūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>unaccustom-</i>
herbā, -ae, <i>a weed</i>	ratiō, -ōnis, <i>reflection</i> [ed
exstirpō, -ārē, <i>to eradicate</i>	lignūm, -ī, <i>wood</i>
ādessē, <i>to be at hand</i>	combūrō, -ērē, <i>to burn</i>
stilūs, -ī, <i>a stilus</i>	cognōvī, <i>I have become ac-</i>
prōhibēō, -ērē, <i>to check</i>	quainted with, I know

We eradicate the noxious weeds of fields by plowing. In reading we ought to imitate bees. The opportunity to learn is not always at hand. The ancients used a stilus for (ād) writing. No one can have a just cause [of] for bearing arms against his country. This pupil is more inclined to (ād) play than to learn. By hoping misfortune is made lighter. Anger is to be checked in punishing. There is always opportunity of reading, not always of hearing. My brother being unaccustomed [of] to sailing fears the sea. Man is born for (ād) understanding and thinking. A man should do nothing without reflection. Trees afford wood not only for burning but also for building and other necessary things. From whom did the spider learn the art of weaving *its* nets? Three things are especially to be respected by youths: God, one's parents, the laws. In the most ancient times many peoples did not yet know the art of writing. Let pupils be desirous of learning. Wisdom is to be considered the art of living.

291.

Gerundive.

1. The Gerundive, in its adjective use, denotes *necessity* or *propriety*.

Its most frequent use is with *esse* in the **Passive Periphrastic Conjugation** (see 247). The neuter of the Gerundive with *est*, *erāt*, etc. is used impersonally if what is said holds good of people in general, as: *vivendum est*, *we or you must live*.

But the person *by whom* may also be added in the **Dative**, thus:

mihi scribendum est, *I must or should write*

tibi scribendum est, *thou must or shouldst write*

ei scribendum est, *he must or should write*

nobis scribendum est, *we must or should write*

vobis scribendum est, *you must or should write*

eis scribendum est, *they must or should write*

2. The Gerundive is used as an **Objective Predicate** to denote *Purpose* after verbs signifying *to give, take, send, leave*, as:

curāre, *to take care*

dāre, *to give*

relinquere, *to leave*

mittere, *to send*

accipere, *to receive*

permittere, *to permit*

locare, *to let, lease*

conducere, *to contract for*

patriam diripiendam relinquimus

we leave our country to be plundered.

3. The Gerundive of verbs governing the accusative is frequently used instead of the Gerund in the following manner:

The **Accusative** is put in the same Case as the Gerund.

The Gerund is then changed into the Gerundive.

The Gerundive is made to agree with the Substantive in *Gender, Number and Case*; thus:

Gerund.	Gerundive.
Gen. scribendi epistulam	scribendae epistulae
Dat. scribendo epistulam	scribendae epistulae
Acc. ad scribendum epistulam	ad scribendam epistulam
Abl. scribendo epistulam	scribenda epistula

4. The **Genitive** of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with nouns and adjectives, as:

<i>ars vivendi</i> , <i>the art of living</i>	<i>equitandi peritus</i> , <i>skillful in riding</i>
<i>consilium urbis delendae</i> , <i>a plan for destroying the city</i>	<i>civitatis regendae peritus</i> , <i>skillful in governing the state.</i>

Very common are *causā* and *grātiā*, on account of, for the sake of, for the purpose of, (with the Genitive of Gerund and Gerundive) to point out *design* or *purpose*, as:
memoriæ exercendæ gratiā, for the sake of exercising the memory.

5. The **Dative** of the Gerund or Gerundive may be used with adjectives of fitness, such as:

utilis, -ē, useful, good *aptus*, -ā, -ūm, adapted, suited
inutilis, -ē, useless, unfit *idoneus*, -ā, -ūm, fit, suitable, suited,

to denote the *object for which*; but the more common construction of these adjectives is that of the Accusative with *ad*, to, thus:

aqua utilis bibendo, water good for drinking
charta inutilis ad scribendum, paper unfit to write upon.

6. The **Accusative** of the Gerund and Gerundive is most frequently used after *ad*, to, denoting *purpose*, as:

ad colendos agros, for cultivating the fields
me vocas ad scribendum, you summon me to write
propensus ad discendum, inclined to learn.

7. The **Ablative** of the Gerund and Gerundive is used as Ablative of *means* or *instrument*, and most frequently after the preposition *in*, in, as:

mens discendo alitur, the mind is nourished by learning
moderatio in jocando, restraint in joking.

gestō, -ārē, to carry
perdiscō, -ērē, to learn
spectō, -ārē, to inquire into
Crētā, -ae, Crete
Minos, ōis, Minos
contendō, -ērē, to proceed
conspiciō, -ērē, to see
moeniā, -iūm, (city) walls
pōnō, -ērē, to erect
fācultās, -ātis, a means

littērārūm ēlēmētā, the elements of education
lābōrō, -ārē, to take pains
dissuādēō, -ērē, to dissuade
sibi conciliārē, to draw upon one's self
confirmō, -ārē, to establish
pellucidus, -ā, -ūm, clear
reddō, -ērē, to reflect
vēlūt, so to speak

āquā nitrōsā (-ae -ae), alkaline water

Multi propter gloriæ cupiditatem cupidi sunt bellorum gerendorum. Boves oneribus gestandis non sunt idonei. Pythagoras Babylonem ad perdiscendos siderum motus originemque mundi spectandam profectus est. Inde Cretam et Lacedaemona ad cognoscendas Minos et Lycurgi leges contendit. Ab oppugnanda Neapoli Hannibalem deterruerunt conspecta moenia. Monumenta ponuntur admirationis, venerationis, caritatis testandae gratia. In primis litterarum elementis docendis saepe parum laboratur. Suadendo et dissuadendo jam multi inimicitias sibi conciliaverunt. Philosophi in iis ipsis libris, quos de contemnenda gloria scribunt, nomina sua inscribunt. Cimon pacis inter Athenienses et Lacedaemonios confirmandae causa Spartam contendit. Natura nobis facultatem dedit nosmet ipsos videndi; fons cuique pellucidus imaginem suam reddit. Musicam natura ipsa videtur velut muneri nobis dedisse ad tolerandos facilius labores. Aqua nitrosa utilis est bibendo.

292. occultis, -a, -um, secret	In iis, therein	[with
consuetudo, -inis, habit	versor, -ari	In, to have to do
religio, -onis, religion	plus virium, more energy	
impius, -a, -um, impious	afferre ad, to bring to	
memoriam augere, to improve	deliberatio, -onis, deliberation	
the memory	genus vitae, a line of life	
per se, as such	rectus, -a, -um, straight	

Many are more desirous of buying books than of reading them. He who is not skilled in governing a house will be far less fit for ruling a state. Secret enmities are more to be feared than open ones. The habit of disputing against religion is bad and impious. New friends ought not to be preferred to old ones. I return the greatest thanks to my parents because they took care [me to be instructed] that I was instructed. The only art of improving the memory is practice. We came into the garden for the sake of taking a walk. Virtues as such ought to be practised, and therein we must follow duty, not advantage. Justice has to do with protecting human society and giving to every one his own. Amusements will benefit boys, because boys after amusements bring more energy to their studies (discere). The deliberation

on choosing a line of life is the most difficult of all. Remember that youth is the time for [of] learning. We ought to pray that we may have a sound mind in a sound body. Men should never depart from the straight way.

293. Supine.

The **Supines** are verbal nouns of the Fourth Declension, having only the accusative and ablative singular, as: *āmātūm, āmātū, to love.*

The **Former Supine** (in *ūm*) is used after verbs of *motion* to express the *purpose* of the motion; it has an *active meaning*, as:
venio te rogātum, I come to ask you.

With the passive infinitive *īrī* (lit. *to be gone*) the Supine in *ūm* forms the **Future Infinitive Passive**, *āmātūm īrī, to be about to be loved* (121, 5.)

The **Letter Supine** (in *tī*) has a *passive meaning*; it is used only with a few Adjectives denoting *ease* or *difficulty*, *pleasure* or *displeasure*, *right* or *wrong*; with the nouns *fās*, *right*, *nēfās*, *wrong*, sometimes with *ōpūs*, *need*, as:

quid est tam jucundum auditu? what is so agreeable in hearing?

<i>spectō, -ārē, to view, look at</i>	<i>hūmānitās, -ātis, humanity</i>
<i>Ōlympicūs, -ā, -ūm, Olympian</i>	<i>mansuetūdō, -inis, mildness</i>
<i>Fābiūs Pictōr (-ī -ōris), Fabius Pictor</i>	<i>Hadrūmētūm, -ī, Hadrumetum</i>
<i>sciscitōr, -ārī, to inquire</i>	<i>Zāmā, -ae, Zama</i>
<i>sācrificiūm, -ī, a sacrifice</i>	<i>millē passūm (1000 paces), a mile</i>
<i>plācō, -ārē, to appease</i>	<i>rectōr, -ōris, a master</i>
<i>rēfērō, -rē, to tell, relate</i>	<i>Tuscūlānūm, -ī, a Tusculan farm</i>
	<i>sālūtō, -ārē, to pay one's respects</i>

Innumēros homīnes constat olim profectos esse in Graeciām spectātum ludos Ōlympicos. Bello Punico secundo Fabius Pictor Delphos ad oraclūm missus est sciscitātum, quibus precibus sacrificisque dii placāri possent. Quae tibi jucunda sunt relātu, saepe altēri minime jucunda sunt auditu. Pompeius fuit tanta humanitāte, ut difficile dictu sit, utrum hostes magis virtūtem ejus timuerint, an mansuetudinem dilexerint. Mulieres spectātum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsae.

Oratōrem eum puto, qui verbis ad audiendum jucundis uti potest. Nonne ipsi vidētis, quid in hoc negotiō dictu factū-que opus sit? Hannībal — incredibile dictu — bidūo et duā-bus noctibus Hadrumētum pervēnit, quod distat a Zama circiter millia passuum trecenta. Virtus difficilis inventu est; rectōrem ducemque desidērat; sed vitia etiā sine magistro discuntur. Quid est tam jucundum auditū quam sapientibus sententiis ornāta oratiō? Cicēro Romam profectūrus erat ludos spectā-tum, cum amīci ad eum salutandum in Tusculānum venērunt.

291. Equivalents of the Supine.

The **Former Supine**, as an expression of *purpose*, is not very common, its place being supplied in various ways. Thus the sentence:

The Carthaginians sent ambassadors to sue for peace,
may be rendered:

Supine. Carthaginienses legātos misērunt **pacem petītum**.

Gerundive { C. legātos misērunt **ad pacem petendam**.
with **ād**, { C. legātos misērunt **pacis petendae causā**.
causā

Fut. Part. C. legātos misērunt **pacem petitūros**.

ūt w. Subj. C. legātos misērunt, **ut pacem petērent**.

quī w. Subj. C. legātos misērunt, **qui pacem petērent**.

The use of the **Latter Supine** is confined to a few verbs, as: dictū, *to tell*; factū, *to do*; auditū, *to hear*; visū, *to see*. With facilis, difficilis, jucundus, the construction of **ād** with the gerund is more common, as:

res est facilis ad cognoscendum (cognītu), *the thing is easy to know*.

grātūlōr, -ārī, *to congratulate*

Argī, -ōrūm, *Argos*

concedō, -ērē, *to retire*

Vējentēs, -iūm, *the people of Veji*

orātōr, -ōris, *an envoy*

Aedūī, -ōrūm, *the Aedui*

flōrens, -tis, *in blossom*

convēniō, -irē, *to crowd*

pīrūm, -ī, *a pear*

usitātūs, -ā, -ūm, *usual*

Do you wish to go with me to hunt? I know that many have come to me, not to congratulate *me*, but for the sake of eating and drinking. Hannibal was recalled to defend his

country. This book is most difficult to understand. The shorter a narrative *is*, the clearer it is and the easier to understand. What is pleasanter to hear than a fine speech? Themistocles, when, after being expelled by the Athenians, he had left his country, retired to Argos to live *there*. The people of Veji sent envoys to Rome to sue for peace. Few women had come to look, most *came* that they might be looked at. The Aedui sent ambassadors to Cæsar to ask assistance. You yourselves will see what is best to be done, *my* friends. What is more beautiful to see than a tree in blossom? A vast multitude of men crowded into the city to view the public games. Pears are sweet to *the* taste. Nothing is more agreeable to hear than the counsels of faithful friends. Merchants go to market either to buy or to sell various wares. Let us ask what is best to be done, *not* what is the most usual.

295. Co-ordinate Conjunctions.

The following Particles are called **Copulative Conjunctions**:

et, -**quē**, **atquē** (**ac**), and
nēquē, and *not*
etiam, **quodquē**, also

et is simply *and*, the most common and general copulative, and connects independent words and clauses without any additional meaning; -**quē**, affixed to the word it annexes, combines things that belong closely to one another; **atquē** adds a more important to a less important member. The following may serve as an example to illustrate the various usages:

dies et noctes	means	<i>days and nights</i> , simply;
dies noctesque	"	<i>days and nights</i> , as a whole;
dies atque noctes	"	<i>days and (also) nights</i> .

furem fur cognoscit, et lupus lupum	<i>thief knows thief, and wolf knows wolf</i>
dum vires annique sinunt, tole- rāte labōrem	<i>work while your strength and years permit you</i>
intra moenia atque in sinu urbis sunt hostes	<i>within the walls and even in the heart of the city are the enemies.</i>

ac does not stand before a vowel or **h**; **atquē** either before vowels or consonants. They generally mean *as, than*, after adjectives and adverbs of likeness and unlikeness, as: **aequē ac**, *as much as, equally as*; **sēcūs ac**, *aliter atquē*, *otherwise than*.

etiam (lit. *and farther*) *even, yet, still*, adds a new circumstance and generally precedes the words to which it belongs; **quodquē**, *so also*, which refers only to a single word and follows that word, implies a sameness in the whole, as:

etiam mendicus mendico invidet *even the beggar envies the beggar*
otia corpus alunt, animus quo- *rest strengthens the body, the*
que pascitur illis *mind, too, is thus supported.*

Several *Subjects* or *Objects*, standing in the **same relations**,

either take **et** throughout: **polysyndeton**, *joined in various ways*;
 or omit it throughout: **asyndeton**, *unconnected*;
 or take **quē** only before the last member, thus:

summa fide et constantia et iustitia } *with the greatest faith,*
summa fide, constantia, iustitia } *constancy and justice.*
summa fide, constantia iustitiaque

et is used after **multī** followed by another adjective, where in English *and* is usually omitted; as: **multae et magnae arborea**, *many large trees*.

In the second member of a sentence *and not* is expressed by **nēquē**, as: **dicunt, nec dubitant**, *they say and do not doubt*. Mark the following **Idiomatic Expressions**:

<i>and no one</i>	nēquē quisquā	<i>nor any one</i>
<i>and no</i>	nēquē ullū	<i>nor any</i>
<i>and nothing</i>	nēquē quidquā	<i>nor any thing</i>
<i>and never</i>	nēquē unquā	<i>nor ever</i>

The following are **Disjunctive Conjunctions**:

aut, vēl, -vē, sīvē (seu), or.

aut, *or*, denotes absolute exclusion or substitution, as: **vincēris aut vincis**, *you are conquered or conquering*.

vēl (lit. *you may choose*) gives a choice, often with **etiam**, *even*, **potius**, *rather*, as:

hic populus indomitus vel potius *this untamable or rather savage*
immānis *people.*

-vě which is always affixed to another word, is only a weaker form of věl, as: plus minusvě, *more or less*.

sivē (seu), if you choose, indicates merely an alternative of words, as:

discessus sive potius turpissima fuga the decampment, or rather the most shameful flight.

suspectūs, -ā, -ūm, suspected

răpîō, -ērē, to hurry

Dīō, -ōnīs, Dio

indulgěō, -ērě, to favor

cēdō, -ērē, to slide away

Ītāliām pētērē, *to make for Italy*

regnūm constitūērē, *to establish
a kingdom*

pessimē, *utterly*

vexō, -ārē, to rack

architectūs, -ī, a maker

rector, -ōris, a ruler

sānītās, -ātis, recoveru

fercŭlŭm, -ī, a dish

abdoměn, -íns, *the abdomen*

intestină, -ōrūm, the intestines

formă, -ae, *figure*

Parthūs, -ī, a Parthian

communis, hand to hand

Tyrannis amicitiae quoque suspecti sunt. Opinionibus vulgi rapimur in errorem nec vera percipimus. Ratio docet, quid faciendum fugiendumque sit. Dionysius tyrannus Diōni maxime indulgit neque eum secus dilexit ac fratrem suum. Horae cedunt et dies et menses et anni, nec praeteritum tempus unquam revertitur, nec quid sequatur sciri potest. Aeneas Trojam reliquit Italiamque petiit. Etiam in Italia Aeneae magna pericula imminabant, sed haec quoque vicit et regnum in Italia constituit. Verres Siciliam per tres annos pessime vexavit ac perdidit. Deus solus potest esse architectus et rector caeli et terrae. Hadrianus uno eodemque tempore audire, scribere, dictare, loqui poterat. Tempora mutantur, nos et mutamur in illis. Romani leges, quas senatus populusque sanxerat, aeneis tabulis inciderunt. Nihil aeque sanitatem impedit, ac remedium crebra mutatio. Multos morbos ac medicos multa fercula fecerunt. In superiore corporis parte seu pectore est cor et pulmo; in inferiore seu abdomine est stomachus cum intestinis. Stulti sunt, qui forma opibusve superbiunt. Parthi comminus in acie proeliari aut obsessas urbes vi expugnare nesciverunt. Triginta tyranni circumsteterunt Socratem nec potuerunt animum eius infringere.

296. <i>lōquācītās, -ātīs, loquacity</i>	<i>diligens, -tīs, a lover</i>
<i>lūsūs, -ūs, gaming</i>	<i>Plūtō, -ōnīs, Pluto, the god of</i>
<i>bellō dōmārē, to subdue in war</i>	<i>the infernal regions</i>
<i>amplificō, -ārē, to enlarge</i>	<i>ālīūd. .ālīūd, one thing . . another</i>
<i>Thēbānūs, -ī, a Theban</i>	<i>diripīō, -ērē, to plunder</i>

God sees and rules all things. Our mind is immortal and will not perish along with the body. Avoid avarice, loquacity, gaming, hatred and the rest of vices. Ancus Marcius subdued the Latins in war, enlarged the city of Rome and surrounded it with new walls. We had rather be poor and honest than rich and wicked. Naked I came into this world and naked I shall return. Virtue is highly to be valued even in an enemy. Hannibal was forced to leave Carthage and never returned. Aristides among the Athenians and Epaminondas among the Thebans are said to have been such (*adēō*) lovers of truth, that they never told a lie even in joke. "I hate that man who says one thing and thinks another," Achilles used to say, "as much as I do the gates of Pluto." The Romans carried on severe wars against the Gauls and Spaniards. Xerxes before the naval battle in which he was defeated by Themistocles had sent four thousand [of] armed men to plunder the temple of Apollo; as if he were carrying on war, not only with the Greeks, but also with the immortal gods. All things have been well ordained by nature, or rather by God. Be what you appear to be. There is nothing new under the sun!

297. Co-ordinate Conjunctions (continued).

The following are **Adversative Conjunctions**:

autēm, sēd, vērūm, vērō, āt, but
atquī, but for all that
tāmēn, nevertheless
cētērūm, for the rest

The weakest of them all in adversative power is **autēm** which is only used to connect sentences, and commonly follows the first word.

spirītus promptus, caro autem the spirit is willing, but the
infirma flesh is weak.

sēd has two meanings; after affirmative sentences it is equivalent to *but (yet)*; after negative sentences to *but (on the contrary)*.

homo propōnit, sed Deus dispōnit *man proposeth, but God disposeth*
non opus est verbis, sed fustibus *there is no need of words, but of knocks.*

vērūm, *it is true, true*, always takes the first place in the sentence; **vērō**, *in truth*, is generally put in the second place:

verum praeterita omittāmus *but let us lay aside past things*
illud vero plane ferendum non est *but this, indeed, is not at all to be suffered.*

At is stronger than **sēd**; and **atquī**, *but for all that* is even stronger again:

popūlus me sibilat, at mihi plaudo *the mob may hiss me, but I congratulate myself*
o rem difficīlem, inquis, et inexplicābilem. Atqui explicanda est *a hard case, you say, and an inexplicable one. And nevertheless it ought to be explained.*

tāmēn, *yet, nevertheless*, is the usual correlative of a concessive conjunction; generally it comes first unless a particular word is to be made emphatic:

natūrā expellas furca, tamen usque recurret, *you may drive out nature with a pitchfork, for all that she will ever be returning.*

The Causal Conjunctions are:

nām, **enīm**, **namquē**, **ētēnīm**, *for*

nām is always put at the beginning, **enīm** always follows the first word, of the sentence; **namquē** and **ētēnīm** are commonly put in the first place.

The Illative Conjunctions are:

Itāquē, **Igitūr**, **ergō**, *therefore*
Idēō, **idcirco**, *on that account*
prōindē, *accordingly*

Itāquē is put at the beginning of the sentence and is used of *facts*; **Igitūr** follows one or more words in its clause, and is used of *opinions*; **ergō**, *consequently*, denotes necessary consequence and is more emphatic than **Igitūr**; it is put at the beginning of the sentence or after an emphatic word. **prōindē** is only employed in exhortations:

quot homīnes, tot sententiāe; *many men, many minds; there-*
 falli igitur possumus *fore we may be mistaken*
 negat haec filiam me suam esse; *she says that I am not her*
 non ergo haec mater mea est *daughter, therefore she is*
not my mother
 proinde fac magno animo sis! *accordingly, be of good cheer!*

nēquē is used for nōn with the conjunctions: *enim, vērō, tāmēn, igitur*, thus:

neque enim, *for not*
 neque tamen, *yet not*

neque vero, *but not*
 neque igitur, *therefore not*

Astyāgēs, -īs, *Astyages*
 Harpāgūs, -ī, *Harpagus*
 saltūs, -ūs, *the wood*
 permūtō, -ārē, *to exchange*
 convivium, -ī, *a feast*
 probō, -ārē, *to judge*

dērelīctiō, -ōnis, *a disregard*
 milūūs, -ī, *a kite*
 quoddām bellūm nātūrālē, *a kind*
of natural warfare
 continēō, -ērē, *to contain*
 conjūrātūs, -ī, *a conspirator*

Cyrus infans ab Astyāge traditus est Harpāgo, ut in saltibus exponeretur. At sors ejus cum sorte parvūli regīi pastōris permutata est; ipse enim pro filio pastōris educatus, ille pro nepōte regis expositus est. Amīcus in convivio non cognoscitur; errat igitur, qui amīcum in convivio probat. Commūnis utilitātis derelictio contra naturam est; est enim injusta. Milio est quoddam bellum naturāle cum corvo; ergo alter alterius, ubicunque nactus est, ova frangit. Minus curare solēmus quod adest quam quod futurum est, quia quod adest, oculis vidēmus, sed nescimus, quid futurum sit. Omnes res intereunt, non in nihilum, sed in suas partes. Quod est bonum, omne laudabile est; quod autem laudabile est, omne est honestum; bonum igitur quod est, honestum est. Corpus quasi vas est animi; hic enim corpore continetur, ut aqua vase. Stellae omnes, quae infixae caelo esse videntur, moventur tamen. Non acerba, sed blanda timēas verba. A conjurātis Caesar ipse quidem trucidatus, neque tamen ejus testamentum abolitum erat. Est tempus quando nihil, est tempus quando aliquid, nullum tamen est tempus in quo dicenda sunt omnia.

Disjunctive.

aut...aut } *either...or*
 vel...vel }
 sive...sive, *whether...or*

Comparative.

ut...Ita } *as...*
 quemadmodum...Ita } *so*

mulcēō, -ērē, *to tame*
 ductō, -ārē, *to draw after*
 urgēō, -ērē, *to press*
 ingrūō, -ērē, *to break into*
 imbūō, -ērē, *to stain*
 imperiūm, -ī, *power*

āmōrēm conciliārē, *to gain love*
 futūrā prospicere, *to look into the future*
 expetendū, -ā, -ūm, *desirable*
 propriūm est, *it is the mark*
 stultissimū, *the biggest of fools*

Cotidie mutāmur, nec quod sumus, fuīmus, nec cras erīmus. Olim et a regibus et a filiis regum agricultūra exercebātur. Orpheus cantu suo non feras modo mulcēbat, sed saxa etiā silvasque ductābat. Plebs Romāna et inopiā et militiā urgebātur. Metus ingrūt in domicilia tam divitum quam pauperum. Quis ignoret sceleratissimum illum Imperatorem Nerōnem, cujus impiāe manus cum multorum aliorum tum ipsius matris sanguine imbūtae sunt? Haec lex inter amicos sancta esto, ut nec rogent turpia nec faciant rogati. Aut imperi aut divitiarum causa bella fere omnia inter mortales orta sunt. Tam diligentia quam probitate amorem hominum conciliamus. Sapiens videt non solum praesentia ac memoria tenet praeterita, sed etiam futura prospicit. Sine virtute neque amicitiam neque ullam rem expetendam consequi possumus. Et monere et moneri proprium est verae amicitiae. Quemadmodum stultus est, qui equum empturus non ipsum inspicit, sed stratum ejus ac frena, sic stultissimus est, qui hominem ex veste aestimat.

300. profectō, in fact

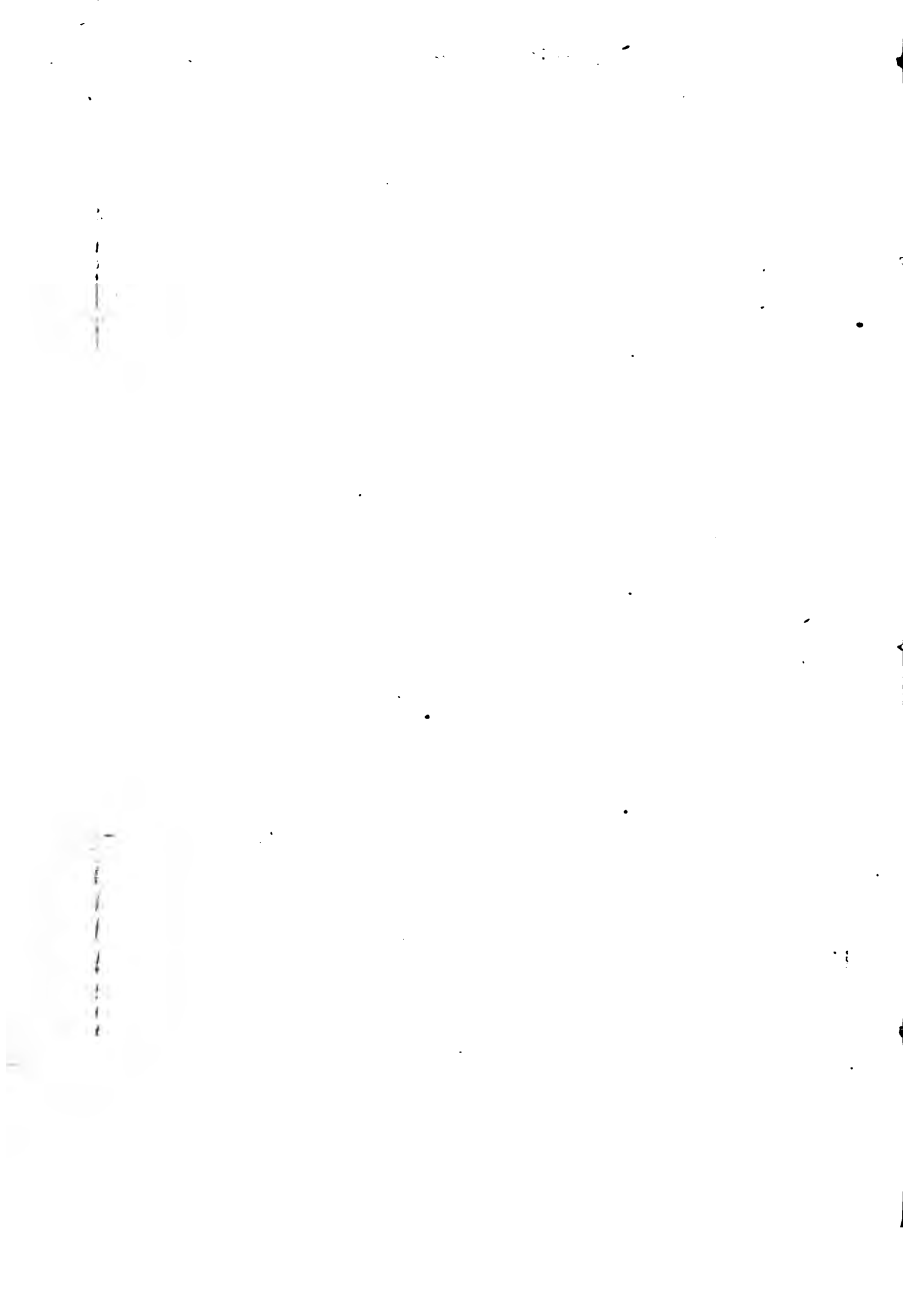
gērō, -ērē, *to do*
 vīs, -, *violence*
 olēā, -ae, *an olive*
 prōvenīō, -irē, *to thrive*
 mollis, -ē, *effeminate*

educatiō, -ōnis, *education*
 nervūs, -ī, *a nerve*
 rōdō, -ērē, *to carp at*
 expētō, -ērē, *to search out*
 viri nobiles, *the nobles*
 nihil laborare, *to do no work*

vigilō, -ārē, *to wake*

There is in fact a God who both hears and sees what we do. An injury is done in two ways, either by violence or by fraud.

I cannot lie, nor if I could would I desire. Tullus Hostilius was not only unlike the last king, but even more warlike than Romulus. The tiger fears neither the lion nor the elephant. Many men can neither read nor write. Pure water has neither taste nor smell nor color. What birds can both swim and fly? Olives and vines thrive neither in very cold nor in very hot countries. You violate not only human but also divine law by perjury. They are justly despised who do good neither to themselves nor to others. Fortune can neither give nor take away probity from any one. An effeminate education breaks the nerves of both body and mind. Envy carps at not only the living but also the dead. Accustom yourself both to speak the truth and to hear *it*. Not only fortune helps the brave, as it is in an old proverb, but much more reason. Virtue alone will never perish, therefore we must search it out. The nobles can either corrupt or correct the morals of the state. You do no work, therefore you have nothing. Many indeed know what is just, but they do *it* not. Whether we work or play, or sleep or wake, our life doth pass.



VOCABULARIES

of all Latin and English words occurring in the Examples and Exercises with their special meanings as used in this book.

1. LATIN AND ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

NOTE. Changeable parts of words are printed in **bold-faced** type, so as to indicate the manner of forming the genitive, the gender endings, and the principal parts of verbs.

The **-**, simply added to a noun, indicates that the genitive is like the nominative.

(m.), (f.), (n.), (pl.) mean: masculine, feminine, neuter, plural, respectively.

The signs of quantity are given, unless the syllable is long by position (1, 5), or contains a diphthong (6, 3).

A.

ā, āb (with abl.), from, by
abdītūs, -ā, -ūm, hid
abdōmēn, -īnīs (n.), the abdomen
abducō, abduxī, abductūm, ab-
ducērē, to carry away; to take
āberrō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to go
astray
ābhinc, ago
ābhorrēō, -ūi, (no sup.), -ērē, to
differ; to be averse
ablūō, abluī, ablūtūm, ablūērē,
to wash (off)
ābōlēō, ābōlēvi, ābōlītūm, ābō-
lēērē, to abolish
abscindō, abscidī, abscissūm, ab-
scindērē, to cut off
abscondō, abscondī, abscondī-
tūm, abscondērē, to hide
absens, -tis, absent
absolvō, absolvi, absōlūtūm, ab-
solvērē, to acquit, finish
absquē (with abl.), without
abstinens, -tis, under restraint

abstīnentiā, -ae (f.), moderation
abstīnēō, abstīnūi, abstentūm,
abstīnērē, to keep from, to ab-
stain; abstīnērē mānūs, to keep
one's hands from
absūmō, absumpsi, absumptūm,
absūmērē, to use up; incendiō
absūmērē, to destroy by fire
ābundantiā, -ae (f.), overflow
ābundō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
abound, have abundance
ābūsūs, -ūs (m.), abuse
ābūtōr, ābūsūs sūm, ābūtī, to
abuse
āc, and
accēdō, accessī, accessūm, ac-
cēdērē, to proceed; ād impē-
rīūm accēdērē, to come to the
throne; accēdē, come here
acceptūs, -ā, -ūm, received; ac-
ceptable
accidō, accidī, (no sup.), accidērē,
to happen, occur
accīō, -īvi, -ītūm, -īrē, to call
in

accipīō, accēpī, acceptūm, accī-
pērē, to receive, take, accept;
to hear
accommodātūs, -ā, -ūm, adapted,
convenient
accommodō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē,
to adjust
accūrātūs, -ā, -ūm, accurate
accūsō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to
accuse, charge
ācēr, -rīs, -rē, keen, sharp,
bitter; ācerrīmūs, ardent
ācerbūs, -ā, -ūm, bitter; acer-
būm, -ī (n.), a calamity
ācervūs, -ī (m.), a heap
ācētūm, -ī (n.), vinegar
Achillēs, -īs (m.), Achilles, the
celebrated Grecian hero
ācīēs, -ēī (f.), a (line of) battle
acquirō, acquisīvī, acquisitūm,
acquirērē, to acquire
āculēūs, -ī (m.), a sting
ācūō, ācūī, ācūtūm, ācūērē, to
sharpen
ād (with accus.), to, near, until
addō, -īdī, -ītūm, -ērē, to add
ādēō, so, so much
ādōō, ādīī, ādītūm, ādīrē, to
reach
ādēssē see adsūm
ādhaerēō, ādhaesī, ādhaesūm,
ādhaerērē, to be joined
ādhibēō, -ūī, -ītūm, -ērē, to
apply
adhinnīō, -īvī, -ītūm, -īrē, to
neigh to
adhortōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, to
exhort
ādīmō, ādēmī, ādemptūm, ādī-
mērē, to take away
ādīpiscōr, ādeptūs sūm, ādīpiscī,
to acquire

adjicīō, adjēcī, adjectūm, adjī-
cērē, to add
adjūvō, adjūvī, adjūtūm, adjū-
vārē, to assist, abet
administrātīō, -ōnīs (f.), govern-
ment
administrō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē,
to govern
admirābīlīs, -ē, wonderful
admirātīō, -ōnīs (f.), admiration
admirōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, to ad-
mire, wonder at
admiscēō, admiscūī, admixtūm,
admiscērē, to commingle, to
add
admōdūm, in a high degree, very
admōnēō, -ūī, -ītūm, -ērē, to
remind
admōnītīō, -ōnīs (f.), a warning
ādōlescens see ādūlescens
ādōrīōr, ādortūs sūm, ādōrīrī,
to attack
adspectūs, -ūs (m.), appearance
adspergō see aspergō
adspicīō, adspexī, adspectūm,
adspicērē, to see
adsūm, adfūī, ādessē, to be pre-
sent, to be at hand
ādūlescens, -tīs (m.), a youth;
young. Written also ādōlescens
advēnīō, advēnī, adventūm, ad-
vērīrē, to approach, arrive
adversāriā, -ae (f.), an enemy
adversāriūs, -ī (m.), an enemy
adversūs, adversūm (with accus.),
against, towards
adversūs, -ā, -ūm, adverse; un-
favorable; rēs adversae, cāsūs
adversī, adversity; adversā for-
tūnā, bad fortune
aedēs, -īs (f.), a temple
aedificiūm, -ī (n.), a building

aedificō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to build

Aedui, -ōrum (m. pl.), the Aedui, a tribe in Gaul

aegēr, -rā, -rūm, sick, ill; a patient; aegre pati, to be grieved

aegrītūdō, -inis (f.), sickness

aegrōtūs, -ā, -ūm, sick

Aegyptiūs, -ī (m.), an Egyptian

Aegyptūs, -ī (f.), Egypt

aemulor, -ātūssum, -ārī, to emulate

aemulūs, -ī (m.), a rival

Aenēas, -ae (m.), Aeneas, ancestor of the Romans

āenēūs, -ā, -ūm, brass-

aequālis, - (m.), a contemporary

aequālītēr, equally

aequē, equally; aequē ac, as much as, equally as

aequō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to be equal

aequūs, -ā, -ūm, even, just

āēr, āēris (m.), the air

aestās, -ātis (f.), the summer

aestimō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē (ex), to estimate, to value; magni

aestimārē, to value highly;

plūris aestimārē, to esteem of more value; plūrimī aestimārē,

to value very highly; parvi

aestimārē, to esteem lightly

aestivūs, -ā, -ūm, belonging to the summer; summer-

aetās, -ātis (f.), an age

aeternūs, -ā, -ūm, eternal

affātūm, plenty

affērō, attūli, allātūm, afferrē, to bring to; utilitātē, mūnūs

afferrē, to render service

afficiō, affeci, affectūm, afficērē, to treat, affect

affirmō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to affirm

Āfricā, -ae (f.), Africa

Āgāmemnōn, -ōnis (m.), Agamemnon, commander in chief of the Grecian forces before Troy

āgē, come

āgēr, -rī (m.), a field, land

Āgēsilāūs, -ī (m.), Agesilaus, one of the Spartan kings

aggēr, -īs (m.), a mound

āgō, ēgi, actūm, āgērē, to do, to act; grātias āgērē, to return thanks; vitām āgērē, to pass one's life; hiēmēm, aestātēm āgērē, to spend the winter, summer; nēgōtiā āgērē, to transact affairs

agrīcōlā, -ae (m.), a farmer, husbandman

agricultūrā, -ae (f.), agriculture

ājō, I say

ālaudā, -ae (f.), a lark

Albertūs, -ī (m.), Albert

Alcibiādēs, -īs (m.), Alcibiades, an Athenian general

Ālexandēr, -rī (m.), Alexander

Ālexandriā, -ae (f.), Alexandria

ālībi, elsewhere

ālīenīgēnā, -ae (m.), a stranger

ālīenō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to alienate

ālīenūs, -ā, -ūm, of others, strange; foreign; ignis ālīenūs, a fire abroad; ālīenā, -ōrum (pl. n.), the property of others

ālīōquī, otherwise

ālīquāmdrū, some time

ālīquandō, some time, at some time

ālīquantō, some more

āliquantūm, somewhat
 āliquis, āliquā, āliquīd, āliquōd,
 some one, some, any one; āli-
 quīd, something, anything,
 more or less
 āliquōt, some
 ālītēr, otherwise; ālītēr atquē,
 otherwise than
 ālītūs, -ā, -ūd, other, another;
 nihīl ālītūd, nothing else; ālītūs..
 ālītūs, one..another; ālīt..ālīt,
 some..others; ālītā omniā, any-
 thing else
 ālīt, ālītī, ālītūm or ālītūm, ālītērē,
 to keep
 Alpēs, -īūm (pl. f.), the Alps
 altēr, -ā, -ūm, the other (of two),
 one of two; altēr Rōmūlūs, a
 second Romulus; altērō tantō,
 twice as much
 altītūs, -ā, -ūm, high, deep
 alvētūs, -ī (m.), a hive
 alvūs, -ī (f.), the belly
 āmans, -tīs, fond
 ambō, -ae, -ō, both
 ambūlō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to
 take a walk, to walk
 Āmēricā, -ae (f.), America
 āmicitiā, -ae (f.), friendship
 āmicūs, -ī (m.), a friend; friendly
 āmittō, āmisī, āmissūm, āmit-
 tērē, to lose
 amnīs, - (m.), a river [like
 āmō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to love,
 āmōr, -ōrīs (m.), love
 amplificō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē,
 to enlarge
 amplūs, more
 amplūs, -ā, -ūm, roomy
 ampūtō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to
 cut off
 ān, or

ānās, -ātīs (f.), a duck
 Anchārītūs, -ī (m.), Ancharius,
 a Roman family name
 Anchisēs, -ae (m.), Anchises,
 father of Aeneas
 Ancūs Marcītūs, -ī -ī (m.), An-
 cus Marcius, the fourth king
 of Rome
 Anglīcūs, -ā, -ūm, English
 angūlūs, -ī (m.), a corner
 angustūs, -ā, -ūm, narrow
 ānimā, -ae (f.), the soul
 ānimadvertō, -ānimadvertī, āni-
 madversūm, ānimadvertērē,
 to see
 ānimāl, -ālīs (n.), an animal
 ānimans, -tīs (m. f. & n.), a liv-
 ing being
 ānīmūs, -ī (m.), the mind, soul,
 spirit; ānimōs dēmittērē, to be
 disheartened
 annōn, or not
 annūs, -ī (m.), a year
 ansēr, -īs (m.), a goose
 antē (with accus.), before
 antēā, before (that), formerly
 antēgrēdīōr, antēgressūs sūm,
 antēgrēdī, to precede
 antēpōnō, antēpōsūī, antēpōsī-
 tūm, antēpōnērē, to prefer
 antēquām, before that, before
 Antīōchūs, -ī (m.), Antiochus
 antīquitās, -ātīs (f.), antiquity
 antīquitūs, anciently
 antīquūs, -ā, -ūm, ancient, early;
 antīquī, -ōrūm, the ancients
 Antōninūs Pīūs, -ī -ī (m.), An-
 toninus Pius, a Roman em-
 peror
 Antōnītūs, -ī (m.), Anthony, a
 Roman family name
 ānūlūs, -ī (m.), a ring

anxiūs, -ā, -ūm, *anxious*
 Äpellēs, -īs (m.), *Apelles, a distinguished Greek painter*
 äpēr, -rī (m.), *a wild boar*
 äpertūs, -ā, -ūm, *open*
 äpīs, - (f.), *a bee*
 Äpollō, -īnīs (m.), *Apollo*
 appārēō, -ūī, -ītūm, -ērē, *to appear; appārēt, it is clear*
 appellātiō, -ōnīs (f.), *an appellation*
 appellō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, *to name, call, style; cognōmīnē*
 appellārē, *to surname*
 appētō, appētīvī (-ī), appētītūm, appētērē, *to seek*
 applicō, -ūī (-āvī), -ītūm (-ātūm), -ārē, *to apply*
 apprōpinquō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, *to approach*
 aptūs, -ā, -ūm, *fitted, fitting, apt, suited, suitable*
 äpūd (with accus.), *among, with, at, near, before, in presence of; äpūd Pliniūm, in Pliny*
 äquā, -ae (f.), *water*
 äquilā, -ae (f.), *an eagle*
 Ärabs, -ābīs (m.), *an Arabian*
 äränēā, -ae (f.), *a spider*
 äratrūm, -ī (n.), *a plow*
 arbītrōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, *to think, regard, consider, pronounce*
 arbōr, -īs (f.), *a tree*
 Arcās, -ādīs (m.), *an Arcadian*
 arcessō, arcessīvī, arcessītūm, arcessērē, *to summon*
 Archimēdēs, -īs (m.), *Archimedes*
 archītectūs, -ī (m.), *a maker*
 arcūs, -ūs (m.), *a bow*
 Ardēā, -ae (f.), *Ardea*
 ardentēr, *ardently* [burn
 ardēō, arsi, arsum, ardērē, *to*

ärēā, -ae (f.), *a piece of ground*
 ärenā *see härēnā*
 Ärēōpāgūs, -ī (m.), *the Areopagus*
 Arganthōnīūs, -ī (m.), *king Arganthonius*
 argentūs, -ā, -ūm, *silver*
 argentūm, -ī (n.), *silver; money*
 Argī, -ōrūm (m.), *Argos*
 argūō, argūī, argūtūm, argüērē, *to accuse, charge with, prove*
 Äriōn, -ōnīs (m.), *Arion*
 Äriōvistūs, -ī (m.), *Ariovistus, a German king*
 Äristaeūs, -ī (m.), *Aristaeus*
 Äristidēs, -īs (m.), *Aristides, renowned for his integrity*
 Äristōtēlēs, -īs (m.), *Aristotle, teacher of Alexander*
 armā, -ōrūm (pl. n.), *arms, weapons*
 armātūs, -ī (m.), *an armed man*
 äro, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, *to plow*
 arrogantīā, -ae (f.), *haughtiness*
 ars, -tīs (f.), *an art; skill*
 artifex, -īcīs (m.), *an artist*
 artificiōsūs, -ā, -ūm, *artificial*
 arx, -cīs (f.), *a citadel*
 äs, assīs (m.), *an as (Roman coin); a farthing*
 ascendō, ascendī, ascensūm, ascendērē, *to climb up*
 äsellūs, -ī (m.), *a donkey*
 Äsiā, -ae (f.), *Asia*
 äsinūs, -ī (m.), *an ass*
 äspēr, -ā, -ūm, *rough, sharp, harsh; fortunā aspērā, a hard lot*
 aspergō, aspersī, aspersūm, aspergērē, *to sprinkle*
 assīdūūs, -ā, -ūm, *industrious*
 assimulō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, *to feign*

assuēfāciō, -fēcī, -factūm, -fācērē, to train
 assuescō, assuēvī, assuētūm, assuescērē, to be accustomed, to accustom one's self
 Astyāgēs, -īs (m.), *Astyages*
 āt, but
 Āthēnae, -ārūm (pl. f.), *Athens*
 Āthēniēnsīs, - (m.), *an Athenian*
 Āttiliūs, -ī (m.), *Attilius*
 atquē, and
 atquī, exactly; but for all that
 ātrox, -ōcis, *cruel*
 Attālūs, -ī (m.), *Attalus, king of Pergamos*
 attendō, attendī, attentūm, attendērē, to mind
 attentūs, -ūs, -ūm, *attentive*
 Atticiūs, -ī (m.), *Atticus, the intimate friend of Cicero*
 attingō, attingī, attactūm, attingērē, to touch, to set foot on
 attōnitiūs, -ūs, -ūm, *stunned*
 auctumnūs see autumnūs
 audax, -ācis, *daring*
 audēō, ausūs sūm, audērē, to dare, venture
 audiō, -ivī, -itūm, -irē, to hear; to hearken; mālē audirē, to be in bad repute
 auditūs, -ūs (m.), *the organ of hearing*
 aufūgiō, aufūgī, (no sup.), aufūgērē, to flee away
 augēō, auxī, auctūm, augērē, to increase; augērī, to be increasing; mēmōriām augērē, to improve the memory
 Augustūs, -ī (m.), *Augustus, the first emperor of Rome*
 aurā, -ae (f.), *a breeze*
 aurēūs, -ūs, -ūm, *golden*

aurīs, - (f.), *the ear*
 auritiūs, -ūs, -ūm, *having ears; testis auritiūs, an ear-witness*
 aurōrā, -ae (f.), *the morning sun*
 aurūm, -ī (n.), *gold*
 auscultans, -tis (m.), *a hearer*
 aut, or; aut...aut, either...or
 autēm, but, yet
 autumnūs, -ī (m.), *autumn*
 auxiliūm, -ī (n.), *help, assistance, aid*
 āvāritiā, -ae (f.) *avarice*
 āvārūs, -ūs, -ūm, *greedy; āvārūs, -ī (m.), a miser*
 āviditās, -ātis (f.), *eagerness*
 āvis, - (f.), *a bird*
 āvolō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to fly off, away
 āvunculūs, -ī (m.), *an uncle*
 axis, - (m.), *an axis*

B.

Bābylōn, -īs (f.), *Babylon*
 Bālēāris, -ēs, *Balearic*
 barbārūs, -ī (m.), *a barbarian*
 bēātūs, -ūs, -ūm, *happy, blessed*
 Belgae, -ārūm (m.), *the Belgians*
 bellicōsūs, -ūs, -ūm, *warlike*
 bellūm, -ī (n.), *war; bellūm nāvālē, naval warfare; bellūm nātūrālē, natural warfare; bellī dōmiquē, in war and in peace; bellō captūs, a captive*
 bēnē, well; bēnē ēmērē, to buy cheap; bēnē vendērē, to sell dear
 bēnēdicō, dixī, dictūm, dicērē, to bless
 bēnēfactūm, -ī (n.), *a favor*
 bēnēficientiā, -ae (f.), *beneficence*
 bēnēficiūm, -ī (n.), *a benefit*
 bēnignitās, -ātis (f.), *goodness*

bestiā, -ae (f.), a beast [drink
bībō, bībī, bībītūm, bibērē, to
bidūm, -ī (n.), two days
binī, -ae, -ā, two (at a time)
bis, twice
Bithyniā, -ae (f.), Bithynia
blandiōr, -itūs sūm, -iri, to
soothe
blandūs, -ā, -ūm, flattering
bonūm, -ī (n.), a good; bonā
-ōrūm, blessings; good qual-
ities
bonūs, -ā, -ūm, good
boreās, -ae (m.), the north-wind
bōs, bōvis (m.), an ox
brēvis, -ē, short
brēvitās, -ātis (f.), low stature
Britanniā, -ae (f.), (Great) Britain
Britannūs, -ī (m.), a Briton
Brūnō, -ōnis (m.), Bruno
Brūtūs, -ī (m.), Brutus
būbulcūs, -ī (m.), a driver

C.

cādō, cēcidi, cāsūm, cādērē,
to fall
cādūcūs, -ā, -ūm, drooping
caecūs, -ā, -ūm, blind
caedō, cēcidi, caestūm, caedērē,
to beat; flāgellis caedērē, to
scourge
caelestīs, -ē, heavenly; arcūs
caelestīs (m.), the rainbow
caelūm, -ī (n.), heaven, the sky.
Written also: coelūm
Caesār, -is (m.), Caesar
Caesāriānūs, -ā, -ūm, of Caesar
cālāmītās, -ātis (f.), calamity
calcār, -ārīs (n.), a spur
cālēfāciō, -fēcī, -factūm, -fā-
cērē, to heat
cālīdūs, -ā, -ūm, hot

Cāliforniā, -ae (f.), California
Cāligulā, -ae (m.), Cāligula, a
Roman emperor
callidūs, -ā, -ūm, smart
calvitūm, -ī (n.), baldness
cāmēlūs, -ī (m.), a camel
Cāmillūs, -ī (m.), Camillus
Campānūs, -ī (m.), a Campanian
campūs, -ī (m.), a plain
candidūs, -ā, -ūm, white; hon-
orable
Cāninīūs, -ī (m.), Caninius, con-
sul only one day
cānis, - (m.), a dog
Cannae, -ārūm (pl. f.), Cannae
cānō, cēcini, cantūm, cānērē, to
sing
cantō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to
sing; to chirrup (of the cricket)
cantūs, -ūs (m.), a song
cāpillūs, -ī (m.), a hair
cāpiō, cēpi, captūm, cāpērē, to
take, catch, take prisoner;
fructum cāpērē, to gain ad-
vantage
Cāpitōliūm, -ī (n.), the Capitol
captūs, -ā, -ūm, captive; bellō
captūs, a captive
cāpūt, -itīs (n.), the head; cāpitīs
damnārē, to condemn to death;
iudiciūm cāpitīs, trial for life
carcēr, -is (m.), a prison
cārēō, -ui, -itūm, -ērē, to be
or do without, to lack
cāritās, -ātis (f.), love, affection
cārō, carnīs (f.), flesh
Cārōlūs, -ī (m.), Charles
Carthāginiēnsīs, -ē, Carthaginian
Carthāgō, -inis (f.), Carthage
cārūs, -ā, -ūm, dear
cāsēūs, -ī (m.), a cheese
Cassīūs, -ī (m.), Cassius

castellūm, -ī (n.), a fort
 castigō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to
 chastise; to discipline
 castrūm, -ī (n.), a fort; castrā,
 -ōrūm, a camp
 cāsūs, -ūs (m.), an accident,
 chance; cāsūs adversi, adver-
 sity; cāsū, by chance
 cātēnā, -ae (f.), a chain
 Cātīlinā, -ae (m.), Catiline
 Cātō, -ōnis (m.), Cato; Cātō mājōr,
 Cato the elder
 caudā, -ae (f.), a tail
 caupō, -ōnis (m.), an innkeeper
 causā, -ae (f.), a cause, a trial;
 causā, on account, in conse-
 quence, for the sake of; suā
 ipsiūs causā, for one's own sake
 cautiūs, more guardedly
 cautūs, -ā, -ūm, cautious; cautā
 vulpēs, the wily fox
 cāvēō, cāvī, cautūm, cāvērē, to
 be on one's guard, beware of,
 care for, take heed
 cāvernā, -ae (f.), a hole
 cēdō, cessī, cessūm, cēdērē, to
 glide away
 cēlēbēr, -rīs, -rē, famous, cele-
 brated
 celeritās, -ātīs (f.), swiftness,
 speed
 celeritēr, quickly
 cellā pēnāriā, -ae -ae (f.), a
 granary
 cēlō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to con-
 ceal from, to keep ignorant of
 cēnā, -ae (f.), dinner. Written
 also: coenā
 cēnō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to dine;
 cēnātūs, -ā, -ūm, having
 dined, after dinner. Written
 also: coenō

cenſēō, cenſūī, cenſūm, cen-
 sērē, to hold
 cenſōr, -ōrīs (m.), a censor
 centūm, a hundred
 Cērēs, -ērīs (f.), Ceres, the god-
 dess of corn and tillage
 cernō, (crēvī, crētūm), cernērē,
 to see
 certāmen, -inīs (n.), a contest
 certē, to be sure, certainly
 certūs, -ā, -ūm, certain, sure
 cervix, -icīs (f.), the neck
 cētēri, -ae, -ā, the rest, the
 other
 cētērūm, for the rest
 Chīlō, -ōnis (m.), Chilo, one of the
 7 wise men
 Christiānūs, -ī (m.), a Christian
 Christūs, -ī (m.), Christ
 cībūs, -ī (m.), food, meat
 cīcādā, -ae (f.), a cricket
 Cīcērō, -ōnis (m.), Cicero
 cīcōniā, -ae (f.), a stork
 Cīmōn, -ōnis (m.), Cimon
 Cīcīnnātūs, -ī (m.), Cincinnatus
 circā (with accus.), around, about
 circīter (with accus.), about
 circūm (with accus.), around, about
 circumdō, circumdēdī, circumdā-
 tūm, circumdārē, to surround
 circumspīcīō, -spexī, -spectūm,
 -spīcērē, to look around
 circumstō, -stētī, (no sup.), cir-
 cumstārē, to stand around
 cīs, cītrā (with accus.), on this side
 Cīsalpīnūs, -ā, -ūm, Cisalpine
 cistā, -ae (f.), a chest
 cītō, soon, quickly
 cīvīlīs, -ē, civil
 cīvīs, - (m.), a citizen; fellow-
 citizen
 cīvītās, -ātīs (f.), a state; a city

clāmō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
cry out
clārūs, -ā, -ūm, bright, famous,
illustrious, noted
classis, - (f.), a fleet
claudicō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
limp
claudō, clausi, clausūm, clau-
dērē, to shut
claudūs, -ā, -ūm, lame
elementiā, -ae (f.), clemency
Clēōpatrā, -ae (f.), Cleopatra
Clitūs, -ī (m.), Clitus, a friend
of Alexander the Great
cōarguō, -ī (no sup.), -ērē, to con-
coelūm see caelūm [vict
coenā see cēnā
coenō see cēnō
coepī, coeptūm, coepissē, to
have begun
cōercēō, -ūi, -itūm, -ērē, to
restrain
cōgītō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
think, reflect
cognōmēn, -īnis (n.), a sur-
name; cognōminē appellārē,
to surname
cognoscō, cognōvi, cognītūm,
cognoscērē, to know, recog-
nize, make the acquaintance;
cognōvi, I know; vērā cognos-
cērē, to learn truth
cōgō, cōgēi, cōactūm, cōgērē,
to compel, force; to assemble
cōhibēō, -ūi, -itūm, -ērē, to
restrain
Collātīnūs, -ī (m.), Collatinus
colligō, collēgi, collectūm, collī-
gērē, to collect, gather
collōcō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
put, place; to let; castrā collō-
cārē, to pitch a camp

collōquōr, collōcūtīs sūm, collō-
quī, to converse
collūm, -ī (n.), the neck
collustrō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē,
to illuminate
cōlō, cōlūi, cultūm, cōlērē, to
cultivate; virtūtēm cōlērē, to
practice virtue; cōlērē pāren-
tēs, to respect one's parents
cōlōr, -ōris (m.), color, com-
plexion
combūrō, combussī, combustūm,
combūrērē, to burn
cōmēs, -ītis (m.), a companion
cōmētēs, -ae (m.), a comet
cōmītōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, to
accompany
commēmōrō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē,
to mention; to rehearse
commendātiō, -ōnis (f.), a re-
commendation
commendō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē,
to recommend
commilitō, -ōnis (m.), a fellow-
soldier
commīnūs, hand to hand
committō, commisi, commissūm,
committērē, to commit, trust;
pugnām committērē, to fight a
battle
commōdē, conveniently
commōdō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē,
to lend
commōnēficiō, -fēcī, -factūm,
-fācērē, to remind
commōnēō, -ūi, -itūm, -ērē, to
remind
commōvēō, commōvi, commō-
tūm, commōvērē, to move,
rouse
communis, -ē, common
cōmōediā, -ae (f.), a comedy

compārō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to provide; to compare; amicōs compārārē, to make friends; exercitūm compārārē, to raise an army
compērīō, compērī, compertūm, compērīrē, to ascertain
complectōr, complexūs sūm, complectī, to embrace
complēō, complēvī, complētūm, complērē, to fill
complūrēs, -ā, several
compōs, -ōtis, capable, master of
compōsitiō, -ōnis (f.), arrangement
concāvūs, -ā, -ūm, hollow
concedō, concessī, concessūm, concedērē, to yield up; to retire
concessūs, -ūs (m.), permission
conciliō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to bring about; inimicitias sibi conciliārē, to draw enmities upon one's self; amorē conciliārē, to gain the love
conciō, -ōnis (f.), an assembly
conciōnōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, to harangue
concludō, conclusī, conclusūm, concludērē, to shut up
concordiā, -ae (f.), concord
concubiūs, -ā, -ūm, belonging to sleep; concubiā noctē, in the first sleep
condemnō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to condemn, find guilty
condiciō, -ōnis (f.), a condition
condimentūm, -ī (n.), an appetizer
condō, condidī, conditūm, condērē, to found
conduct, it is useful

conducō, conduxī, conductūm, conducērē, to hire
confectūs, -ā, -ūm, stricken in
confērō, contūli, collātūm, conferrē, to bring together; beneficiā conferrē, to confer benefits
conficō, confeci, confectūm, conficērē, to accomplish, complete, conclude; (of food) to chew
confidō, confisūs sūm, confidērē, to trust, confide
confirmō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to establish
conflāgratiō, -ōnis (f.), an eruption
conflūō, confluxī, confluxūm, conflūērē, to flock
confūgiō, confūgi, (ae sup.), confūgērē, to flee to
congrēgō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to collect into a flock; pass. congrēgārī, to assemble
conjićō, conjići, coniectūm, conjićērē, to throw, thrust into
conjungō, junxī, conjunctūm, conjungērē, to unite
conjūratiō, -ōnis (f.), a conspiracy; conjūratiōnē facērē, to get up a conspiracy
conjūrātūs, -ī (m.), a conspirator
cōnōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, to try
conscientiā, -ae (f.), conscience
consciscō, conscivī, conscitūm, consciscērē, to bring upon; mortē sibi consciscērē, to bring death upon one's self
consēcrō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to dedicate
consēquōr, consēcutūs sūm, consēquī, to follow; to earn, to attain, obtain

considerātē, *with consideration*
 considō, consēdī, consessūm,
 considērē, *to alight, settle*
 consiliūm, -ī (n.), *advice, coun-
 sel, design, prudence; a coun-
 cil; rectā consiliā, good advice;*
 sanctissimūm consiliūm, *the*
sovereign tribunal

consistō, constitī, constitūm,
 consistērē, *to consist of; to*
halt; to stand

consitūs, -ā, -ūm, *planted*
 conspectūs, -ūs (m.), *sight*
 conspiciō, conspexī, conspec-
 tūm, conspicerē, *to see*

constans, -tis, *steady, constant*
 constāt, *it is evident, it is agreed,*
it is well known

constitūō, constitūī, constitūtūm,
 constitūērē, *to set, determine,*
appoint, establish

constō, constitī, (no sup.), con-
 stārē, *to consist; to cost*

consuescō, consuēvī, consuētūm,
 consuescērē, *to accustom*

consuetūdō, -inīs (f.), *habit, in-
 tercourse; consuetūdō valētīs,*
the usual state of health

consul, -is (m.), *a consul*
 consulātūs, -ūs (m.), *consul-
 ship*

consulō, consulūī, consultūm,
 consulērē alicūī, *to consult the*
interest of some one; con-
sulērē aliquēm, to consult some
one

consultō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, *to*
deliberate, consult

consumō, consumpsī, consump-
 tūm, consumērē, *to consume*
 contemnō, contempsī, contemp-
 tūm, contemnērē, *to despise*

contendō, contendī, contentūm,
 contendērē, *to strive; to pro-
 ceed*

contentūs, -ā, -ūm, *contented,*
content, satisfied

contērō, contrivī, contritūm,
 contērērē, *to wear out*

continēō, continūī, contentūm,
 continērē, *to contain*

contrā (with accus.), *against, con-*
trary to, opposite

contrāhō, contraxī, contractūm,
 contrāhērē, *to contract*

contrāriūs, -ā, -ūm, *contrary*
 contūmāciā, -ae (f.), *boldness*

convalescō, convālūī, (convālī-
 tūm), convalescērē, *to recover*

convēiō, convēī, conventūm,
 convēirē, *to crowd; to meet*

convēnit, *it is fitting; it is agreed*
 conventūs, -ūs (m.), *a meeting*

convertō, convertī, conversūm,
 convertērē, *to turn about; se*
convertērē, to revolve

conviciā, -ōrūm (pl. n.), *abusive*
language

convincō, conviciī, convictūm,
 convincērē, *to convict*

conviviūm, -ī (n.), *a feast*
 cōpiā, -ae (f.), *abundance, plenty,*
stock; cōpiāe, -ārūm, troops,
forces

cōr, cordīs (n.), *the heart*
 cōrām (with abl.), *in presence of*

Cōrinthiūs, -ī (m.), *a Corinthian*
 Cōrinthūs, -ī (f.), *the city of*
Corinth

Corneliā, -ae (f.), *Cornelia*
 cornū, -ūs (n.), *a horn*

cōrōnā, -ae (f.), *a crown*
 cōrōnō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, *to*
crown

corpūs, -ōris (n.) a body
 corradō, corrasī, corrasūm, cor-
 radērē, to scrape together
 corrigō, correxi, correctūm,
 corrigērē, to correct
 corrupō, corrupī, corruptūm,
 corrupērē, to corrupt
 corruō, corruī, (no sup.), corruērē,
 to fall to the ground
 cortex, -icis (m.), the bark
 corvūs, -ī (m.), a raven
 cōtidīs } daily, every day. Writ-
 cottidīs } ten also: quōtidīs
 cōturnix, -icis (f.), a quail
 crās, to-morrow
 crassūs, -ūs, -ūm, dense
 Crassūs, -ī (m.), Crassus
 crastinūs, -ūs, -ūm, of to-morrow;
 diēs crastinūs, (the day of) to-
 morrow
 crebēr, -rā, -rūm, frequent
 crebrō, frequently
 credibīlis, -is, -is, credible
 credō, credidī, creditūm, cre-
 dērē, to believe
 credulūs, -ūs, -ūm, credulous
 crēō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
 create, elect, make
 crēpō, crēpūī, crēpitūm, crē-
 pārē, to creak, clank
 crescō, crevī, crētūm, crescērē,
 to grow, increase
 Crētā, -ae (f.), Crete
 crōcōdīlūs, -ī (m.), a crocodile
 Croesūs, -ī (m.), Croesus, cele-
 brated for his riches
 crūciātūs, -ūs (m.), torture
 crūciō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
 torture
 crūdellīs, -is, -is, cruel
 crūdelitās, -ātis (f.), cruelty
 crūs, -ūris (n.), the leg

cūbitūm, -ī (n.), a cubit
 cūbō, cūbūī, cūbitūm, cūbārē,
 to lie down; cūbitūm irē, to go
 to bed; cūbitū surgērē, to rise
 from bed
 cūcūlūs, -ī (m.), a cuckoo
 cūlex, -icis (m.), a gnat
 culmūs, -ī (m.), a thatched roof
 culpā, -ae (f.), a fault
 cultēr, -rī (m.), a knife
 culturā, -ae (f.), cultivation
 cūm (with abl.), with
 cūm (conjunct.), when, at the time
 when, as; though, suppose,
 whereas, since; cūm primūm,
 the first moment that
 cūm . . tūm, both . . and especially
 cunctūs, -ūs, -ūm, the whole; pl.
 cunctī, -ae, -ā, all together
 cūnicūlūs, -ī (m.), a rabbit
 cūpiditās, -ātis (f.), passion,
 desire
 cūpidō, -inis (f.), greed, craving
 for more
 cūpidūs, -ūs, -ūm, eager, desir-
 ous
 cūpiō, cūpīvi, cūpitūm, cūpērē,
 to wish, desire, covet
 cūr, why
 cūrā, -ae (f.), care; cūrām hā-
 berē, to have regard
 cūriā, -ae (f.), the senate house
 cūriōsūs, -ūs, -ūm, inquisitive
 cūrō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
 take care; to care for, to
 cure
 currō, cūcurri, cursūm, currērē,
 to run
 cursūs, -ūs (m.), a course, run-
 ning
 custōs, -ōdis (m.), a protector
 Cūrūs, -ī (m.), Cyrus

D.

damnātiō, -ōnis (f.), *condemning*
 damnō, -āvi, -ātum, -ārē, to
condemn, find guilty; capitis
 damnārē, to condemn to death
 damnūm, -ī (n.), a loss
 Dārēus, -ī (m.), *Dareus, a Per-*
sian king
 Dāvidēs, -īs (m.), *David*
 dē (with abl.), of, from, on, con-
 cerning, about
 dēā, -ae (f.), a goddess
 debēō, -ūi, -itum, -ērē, to owe;
I ought, must, should; debēri,
to be due
 debilis, -ē, weak
 debilitō, -āvi, -ātum, -ārē, to
weaken
 decēdō, decēssi, decēssum, de-
 cēdērē, to depart; vitā decē-
 dērē, to depart from life
 decēm, ten
 decēmvīr, -ī (m.), a *decemvir*
 decēt, it becomes; decūt, decērē
 decidō, decidī, (no sup.), decīdērē,
 to fall down
 decies, ten times
 declārō, -āvi, -ātum, -ārē, to
declare
 dedēcēt, it is unbecoming; dedē-
 cūt, dedēcērē
 dedēcūs, -ōris (n.), a *disgrace;*
 magnō dedēcōri essē, to bring
 great disgrace
 deducō, deduxī, deductum, de-
 ducērē, to conduct
 deessē see desum
 defectiō, -ōnis (f.), an *eclipse*
 defendō, defendī, defensum, de-
 fendērē, to defend
 defensor, -ōris (m.), a *defender*

deferō, detūli, delātum, defer-
 rē, to confer on
 deficiō, defeci, defectum, defi-
 cērē, to be wanting
 defigō, defixī, defixum, defigērē,
 to plunge, plant
 deflūō, defluxī, defluxum, deflū-
 ērē, to run one's self dry
 defungōr, defunctus sūm, de-
 fungī, to discharge
 deglūbō, deglupsī, degluptum,
 deglūbērē, to skin
 deīndē, then, afterwards
 delectō, -āvi, -ātum, -ārē, to
delight
 delēō, delēvi, delētum, delērē,
 to destroy
 delibērātiō, -ōnis (f.), *delibera-*
tion
 delibērō, -āvi, -ātum, -ārē, to
deliberate
 delictum, -ī (n.), a *fault*
 Delphī, -ōrum (pl. m.), *Delphi*
 Delphicius, -ā, -um, *Delphic, of*
Delphi
 delphinus, -ī (m.), a *dolphin*
 demergō, demersi, demersum,
 demergērē, to plunge
 demittō, demisi, demissum, de-
 mittērē, to let sink; animōs
 demittērē, to be disheartened
 Demōcritus, -ī (m.), *Democritus,*
a celebrated philosopher
 demonstrō, -āvi, -ātum, -ārē,
 to prove
 Demosthēnēs, -īs (m.), *Demos-*
thenes
 demūm, indeed
 deniq̄ue, in fine
 dens, -tis, (m.) a *tooth; dens genū-*
inūs, a cheek tooth
 deorsum, downwards

dēpellō, dēpūlī, dēpulsūm, dēpellērē, to drive from, banish
 dēprēhendō, dēprēhendī, dēprēhensūm, dēprēhendērē, to overtake
 dērēlictīō, -ōnīs (f.), disregard
 dērīdēō, dērīsī, dērīsūm, dērīdērē, to laugh at
 descendō, descendī, descensūm, descendērē, to come down
 describendū, -ā, -ūm, to be copied
 describō, descripsī, descriptūm, describērē, to describe
 dēsērō, dēsērūī, dēsertūm, dēsērērē, to forsake
 dēserviō, (no perf. & sup.), -īrē, to be devoted to
 dēsīdērō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to require, desire; pārūm dēsīdērārē, to care little for
 dēsīdiōse, idly
 designō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to appoint
 dēsīlīō, dēsīlūī, dēsultūm, dēsīlīrē, to leap down
 dēsīnō, dēsīvī & dēsīlī, dēsītūm, dēsīnērē, to cease
 dēspērō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to despair
 dēspīcīō, despexī, despectūm, despīcērē, to despise
 dēstillō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to trickle
 dēsūm, dēsūī, dēssē, to be wanting
 dētēgō, dētēxī, dētectūm, dētēgērē, to discover, detect
 dētērīōr, -ūs, worse
 dētērrēō, -ūī, -ītūm, -ērē, to deter, frighten off
 dēūs, -ī (m.), a god; Dēūs, God

dēvertō, dēvertī, dēversūm, dēvertērē, to put up
 dēvōlō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to flee, fly away
 dēvōrō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to devour
 dextēr, dext(ē)rā, dext(ē)rūm, right; dextrā, -ae (f.), the right hand, (mānūs, understood)
 dicō, dixī, dictūm, dicērē, to say, speak, tell, call, name; sententiā dicērē, to state one's opinion
 dictātōr, -ōrīs (m.), a dictator
 dictīō, -ōnīs (f.), a speech
 dictō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to dictate
 diēs, -ēī (m. & f.), a day; diēs nātālīs, a birthday; diēs crastīnūs, (the day of) to-morrow
 differō, distūlī, dilātūm, differērē, to disagree; to put off
 difficīlīs, -ē, difficult
 diffīdō, diffīsūs sūm, diffīdērē, to distrust
 diffundō, diffudī, diffūsūm, diffundērē, to diffuse
 dīgītūs, -ī (m.), a finger; transversūs dīgītūs, a finger's breadth
 dignītās, -ātīs (f.), dignity
 dignōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, to deem worthy
 dignūs, -ā, -ūm, worthy; laudē dignūs, praiseworthy; nōn sātīs dignūs sūm, I do not deserve
 dilābōr, dilapsūs sūm, dilābī, to fall away
 dilātīō, -ōnīs (f.), delay
 diligens, -tīs, diligent, careful; vērītātīs diligens, a lover of truth

diligentē, *carefully, diligently*
 diligentīā, -ae (f.), *diligence*
 diligō, dilexī, dilectūm, diligēre, *to love*
 dilucidus, -ā, -ūm, *clear*
 dimicō, -āvī, -ātum, -ārē, *to fight*
 dimidiūm, -ī (n.), *the half*
 dimidiūs, -ā, -ūm, *half*
 dimittō, dimisi, dimissum, dimitterē, *to dismiss, disband*
 Diō, -ōnis (m.), *Dio, brother-in-law of the tyrant Dionysius*
 Diōgēnēs, -īs (m.), *Diogenes, the philosopher of Sinope*
 Diōnysius, -ī (m.), *Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse*
 diripō, diripui, direptum, diripere, *to plunder*
 diruō, dirui, dirutum, diruere, *to demolish*
 discēdō, discessi, discessum, discēderē, *to leave, depart*
 discernō, discrevi, discretum, discernere, *to distinguish*
 discessus, -ūs (m.), *departure*
 discidiūm, -ī (n.), *discord*
 disciplinā, -ae (f.), *a discipline*
 discipulus, -ī (m.), *a pupil, scholar*
 discō, didici, (no sup.), discere, *to learn*
 discordiā, -ae (f.), *discord*
 discrepō, -ui, -itum, -arē, *to disagree*
 disertus, -ā, -ūm, *eloquent*
 dispār, -āris, *unlike*
 displicēdō, -ui, -itum, -ere, *to displease*
 disputō, -āvī, -ātum, -arē, *to dispute*
 dissentiō, dissensi, dissensum, dissentire, *to disagree*

dissērō, dissēri, dissertum, dissērerē, *to discourse*
 dissimilis, -ē, *unlike*
 dissuādēdō, dissuāsi, dissuāsūm, dissuāderē, *to dissuade*
 distingūō, distinxi, distinctum, distinguerē, *to distinguish*
 distō (no perf. & sup.), -ārē, *to be distant, disagree*
 diū, *for a long time, long*
 diutinus, -ā, -ūm, *long*
 diversus, -ā, -ūm, *different*
 divēs, -ītis, *rich*
 dividō, divisi, divisum, dividerē, *to divide*
 divinus, -ā, -ūm, *divine*
 divitiāe, -arum (pl. f.), *riches*
 divulgō, -āvī, -ātum, -arē, *to spread abroad*
 dō, dēdi, dātum, dārē, *to give; to put; litterās dārē, to send a letter; dōnō dārē, to give as a present; poenās dārē, to suffer punishment*
 docēdō, docui, doctum, docere, *to teach*
 doctōr, -ōris (m.), *a teacher*
 doctrinā, -ae (f.), *learning*
 doctus, -ā, -ūm, *learned*
 dōlēdō, -ui, -itum, -ere, *to grieve for*
 dōlō, *fraudulently*
 dōlōr, -ōris (m.), *pain, grief*
 domiciliūm, -ī (n.), *an abode, a home*
 dōminā, -ae (f.), *a mistress*
 dōminōr, -ātus sum, -āri, *to rule*
 dōminūs, -ī (m.), *a master*
 dōmō, dōmui, dōmitum, dōmāre, *to subjugate; bellō dōmāre, to subdue in war*

dōmūs, -ūs (f.), a house; dōmī, at home; dōmūm, home; dōmō, from home; bellī dōmīquē, in war and in peace; dōmī millītiaquē, at home and in the field

dōnēc, as long as, while, until
dōnō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to present with

dōnūm, -ī (n.), a gift, present;
dōnō dārē, to give as a present
dormiō, -īvi, -itūm, -irē, to sleep

dōs, dōtis (f.), a dowry, gift
Drūidēs, -ūm (pl. m.), the Druids, priests among the Celtic nations

dūbītō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to doubt

dūbīūs, -ūs, -ūm, doubtful; dūbīūm nōn est, there is no doubt

dūcentī, -ae, -ūs, two hundred
ducō, duxī, ductūm, dūcērē, to lead, bring, take; to conclude; laudī dūcērē, to count it a praise; nihīlī dūcērē, to think nothing of

ductō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to draw after

dulcis, -ē, sweet (to the taste); agreeable, obliging

dūm, while, as long as, until; if only, provided

dummōdō, if only, provided

dūō, -ae, -ō, two

dūōdēcīm, twelve

dūōdēcīsimūs, -ūs, -ūm, the eighteenth

dūrō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to last
dūrūs, -ūs, -ūm, hard

dux, dūcis (m.), a leader, guide

E.

e (with ablat.), from, of, out of
Ebōrācūm, -ī (n.), York; Ebōrācūm Nōvūm, New York

eclipsīs, - (f.), an eclipse

ēdiscō, ēdīdīcī, (no sup.), ēdiscērē, to rehearse; to learn by heart

ēdō, ēdī, ēsūm, ēdērē, to eat

ēdōcēō, ēdōcūī, ēdoctūm, ēdōcērē, to teach

ēdūcātīō, -ōnis (f.), education

ēdūcō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to bring up, educate

ēdūcō, ēdūxī, ēductūm, ēdūcērē, to lead out

ēficiō, ēfēcī, effectūm, ēficērē, to make, accomplish

ēflāgītō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to importune

ēffūgīō, ēffūgī, (no sup.), ēffūgērē, to escape

ēgēō, -ūī, (no sup.), -ērē, to (be in) need

ēgō, I; ēgōmēt, I

ēgrēdīōr, ēgressūs sūm, ēgrēdī, to move out

ējicīō, ējēcī, ējectūm, ējicērē, to drive from

ēlābōr, ēlapsūs sūm, ēlābī, to slip

ēlēgāntiā, -ae (f.), elegance

ēlēmētūm, -ī (n.), an element

ēlēphantūs, -ī (m.), an elephant

ēlēphās, -antis (m.), an elephant

ēligō, ēlēgī, ēlectūm, ēligērē, to choose, elect; to gather

ēlōquens, -tis, eloquent

ēlōquentiā, -ae (f.), the art of speaking, eloquence

ēlōquōr, ēlōcūtūs sūm, ēlōquī, to speak; vis ēlōquendī, the power of speaking

ēminēō, -ūi, (no sup.), -ērē, to be prominent

ēmō, ēmi, emptūm, ēmērē, to buy, purchase

emptōr, -ōris (m.), a buyer
ēnim, for

Enniūs, -ī (m.), Ennius

enūmērō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to enumerate

ēō, īvi, itūm, irē, to go; cūbītūm
irē, to go to bed

ēō, to this degree

ēō...quō, the...the

Epāminondās, -ae (m.), Epaminondas

Ēphēsūs, -ī (f.), Ephesus

Ēpicūrēūs, -ī (m.), an Epicurean

Ēpirōtēs, -ae (m.), an Epirote

ēpistōlā, -ae (f.), a letter

ēpistulā, -ae (f.), a letter

ēquēs, -ītis (m.), a rider, a knight; ēquītes, cavalry, horse

ēquītans, -tis, on horseback

ēquītō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to ride

ēquūs, -ī (m.), a horse, steed

ergā (with accus.), toward, unto

ergō, on account of; therefore, consequently

ērīpīō, ērīpī, ēreptūm, ēripērē, to snatch, take away; to deliver from

errans, -tis, wandering

errō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to err, wander; to rove about

errōr, -ōris (m.), error

ērūdīō, -īvi, -ītūm, -irē, to instruct

ērumpō, ērūpī, ēruptūm, ērumpērē, to break out, burst from

ērūō, ērūi, ērūtūm, ērūrē, to drag out

escā, -ae (f.), a bait; escae, -ārūm, food

essē see sūm

[ger
ēsūrīō, -īvi, (no sup.), -irē, to hun-
ēt, and, even; ēt...ēt, both...and;
ēt...nequē, on the one hand...
and on the other hand not

ētēnim, for

ētīām, also; yes; (before a com-
parative) still

ētīamnunc, even now

ētīamsī, even if, although

etsī, although

Euphrātēs, -īs (m.), the river
Euphrates

Eurōpā, -ae (f.), Europe

ēvādō, ēvāsī, ēvāsūm, ēvādērē, to become, turn out

ēvānescō, ēvāntī, (no sup.), ēvā-
nescērē, to disappear

ēvēhō, ēvēxi, ēvectūm, ēvēhērē, to raise

ēvellō, ēvellī, ēvulsūm, ēvellērē, to pluck out

ēvenīō, ēvenī, ēventūm, ēvenīrē, to turn out; ēvenīt, it happens

ēvertō, ēvertī, ēversūm, ēver-
tērē, to overthrow

ex (with abl.), from, of, out of

exānimīs, -ē, lifeless

exardescō, exarsī, exarsūm, ex-
ardescērē, to be inflamed; to break out

excēdō, excessī, excessūm, ex-
cēdērē, to exceed

excellens, -tis, excellent

excellō, (no part. & sup.), excel-
lērē, to distinguish one's self

excelsūs, -ūs, -ūm, lofty

excipīō, excēpī, exceptūm, exci-
pērē, to take; lābōrēs excipērē, to take toils upon one's self

excitō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
arouse; bellūm excitāre, to
stir up war; equūm excitāre,
to urge a horse
exemplūm, -ī (n.), an example
exō, -ī, -ītūm, -irē, to de-
part, come off, leave
exercō, -ūi, -ītūm, -ērē, to ex-
ercise, practice; cultivate, use
exercitātō, -ōnis (f.), use, prac-
tice, exercise
exercitātūs, -ā, -ūm, practiced
exercitūs, -ūs (m.), an army
exigō, exēgi, exactūm, exigērē,
to spend
exigūūs, -ā, -ūm, small, scanty
existō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē,
to regard, believe
exoptō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
desire, long for
expēdit, it is useful
expellō, expūli, expulsūm, ex-
pellērē, to drive away, to ex-
pel
expergiscōr, experrectūs sūm,
expergiscī, to wake up
experientīā, -ae (f.), experience
experior, expertūs sūm, expē-
riri, to try
expers, -tis, free; without share
expetendūs, -ā, -ūm, desirable
expetō, expētivī, expētītūm,
expētērē, to search out
explānō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
explain
explēō, explēvi, explētūm, ex-
plērē, to fill
explōrō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
explore
expōnō, expōsi, expōsitūm,
expōnērē, to expose
exprobrātō, -ōnis (f.), a reproof

expugnō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
capture; vi expugnārē, to
storm
exsiliūm, -ī (n.), exile
existō, existiī, (no sup.), exsi-
stērē, to become
expectō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
expect, wait, look for
expirō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
expire
extirpō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
eradicate
extrūdō, extruxi, exstructūm,
extrūdērē, to build
extollō, extūli, (no sup.), extol-
lērē, to extol
extrā (with accus.), without, be-
yond, except
extrēmūs, -ā, -ūm, extreme, last

F.

Fābiā Dōlābellā, -ae -ae (f.),
Fabia Dolabella
Fābiūs Pictōr, -ī -ōris (m.),
Fabius Pictor
Fābriciūs, -ī (m.), Fabricius
fābulā, -ae (f.), a play; a fable
fābulōsūs, -ā, -ūm, fabulous
fācilē, easily, readily; unques-
tionably
fācilis, -ē, easy
fācilitās, -ātis (f.), easy access
fācinūs, -ōris (n.), a deed; a
crime
fāciō, fēcī, factūm, fācērē, to
make, do; to put; rēūm fācērē,
to summon; conjurātionēm fā-
cērē, to get up a conspiracy;
trāgēdiām fācērē, to compose a
tragedy; minimi fācērē, to make
of very little account; flocci
fācērē, to care not a straw for

factūm, -ī (n.), *a deed, an action*;
prāvē factā, evil deeds
facultās, -ātīs (f.), *ability, faculty, means*
fallō, **fēfelli**, **falsūm**, **fallērē**, *to deceive*; **fallī**, *to be mistaken*;
fallīt mē, it escapes my notice, is unknown to me
falsūs, -ā, -ūm, *false*; **falsā**, -ōrūm (pl. n.), *falsehood, what is false*
fāmā, -ae (f.), *public opinion; rumor; reputation; glory*;
fāmā est, the story goes; **fāmā** et **fidēs**, *reputation and credit*
fāmēs, -īs (f.), *hunger*
fāmilliāris, - (m.), *an intimate friend*
fāmilliārītās, -ātīs (f.), *intimacy*
fās (n. indecl.), *right*
fātēōr, **fassūs sūm**, **fātērī**, *to confess*
fātūm, -ī (n.), *destiny*
fāvō, **fāvi**, **fautūm**, **fāvērē**, *to favor*
fēlicitās, -ātīs (f.), *good fortune, happiness*
felix, -icīs, *happy*
fērā, -ae (f.), *a wild beast (bestiā understood)*
fercūlūm, -ī (n.), *a dish*
fērē, *almost*; **nullūs fērē**, *hardly any*
fērīō, (no *perf. & sup.*), **fērīrē**, *to strike*; **pāriētēm fērīrē**, *to knock one's head against the wall*
fermē, *almost*
fērō, **tūlī**, **lātūm**, **ferrē**, *to bear, carry*; **molestē ferrē**, *to be annoyed*
fērox, -ōcīs, *warlike*

ferrūm, -ī (n.), *iron, a sword*
fertilitās, -ātīs (f.), *fertility*
festinō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, *to make haste*
fidēlis, -ē, *faithful*
fidēs, -ēī (f.), *faith, belief, loyalty*;
credit
fidō, **fistūs sūm**, **fidērē**, *to trust, confide*
fiduciā, -ae (f.), *confidence*
fidūs, -ā, -ūm, *faithful*
filīā, -ae (f.), *a daughter*
filīūs -ī (m.), *a son*
finīō, -īvi, -itūm, -irē, *to finish*
finīs, - (m.), *an end, limit, goal*;
finēs, -iūm (m.), *a territory*
finitīmūs, -ā, -ūm, *neighboring*
fiō, **factūs sūm**, **fiērī**, *to become, turn out, be made*
firmitās, -ātīs (f.), *strength*
firmūs, -ā, -ūm, *strong, firm*
fit, *it happens*
fixūs, -ā, -ūm, *fixed*
flagellūm, -ī (n.), *a scourge*; **flagellis caedērē**, *to scourge*
flagitūm, -ī (n.), *a shameful deed*
flagītō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, *to ask, demand*
flexuōsūs, -ā, -ūm, *crooked*
flocūs, -ī (m.), *a lock of wool*; *a straw*
flōrens, -tīs, *flourishing*; *in blossom*
flōrēō, -āi, (no *sup.*), -ērē, *to flourish*; *to be distinguished*
flōs, -ōris (m.), *a flower*
flumēn, -inīs (n.), *a river*
fōdīō, **fōdī**, **fossūm**, **fōdērē**, *to dig*
foederātūs, -ā, -ūm, *allied*
foliūm, -ī (n.), *a leaf*

fons, -tis (m.), *a source*
 fōrās, *out doors, to the doors*
 fōrē, *to be about to be*
 fōrēm, *I should be*
 fōris, *out of doors, abroad*
 formā, -ae (f.), *figure*
 formicā, -ae (f.), *an ant*
 forsītān } *perhaps*
 fortassē }
 fortē, *perchance*
 fortis, -is, *brave; fortēs, -iūm,*
the brave
 fortitūdō, -inis (f.), *bravery,*
courage
 fortuitūs, -ā, -iūm, *accidental,*
a matter of chance
 fortunā, -ae (f.), *fortune; luck;*
 aspērā fortunā, *a hard lot;*
 fortunā adversā, *bad fortune;*
 fortunām pēriclitārī, *to try*
one's luck
 fortunātūs, -ā, -iūm, *fortunate;*
 insūlae fortunātae, *the Islands*
of the Blessed
 fōrūm, -ī (n.), *the forum, market*
 fossā, -ae (f.), *a ditch*
 fōvēā, -ae (f.), *a pit*
 fragilitās, -ātis (f.), *frailty*
 frāgōr, -ōris (m.), *a crash*
 frangō, frēgī, fractūm, frangērē,
to break
 frātēr -ris (m.), *a brother*
 fraus, -dis (f.), *a fraud; fraudē,*
fraudulently
 frēnī, -ōrūm (pl. m.), *a bit*
 frēnūm, -ī (n.), *a bridle*
 frēquens, -tis, *frequent(ly),*
crowded
 frētūs, -ā, -iūm, *trusting, relying*
 frigidūs, -ā, -iūm, *cold*
 frigūs, -ōris (n.), *cold*
 frons, -tis (f.), *the forehead*

fructūs, -ūs (m.), *fruit; fructūm*
 cāpērē, *to gain advantage*
 frugālitās, -ātis (f.), *frugality*
 frumentūm, -ī (n.), *corn; frū-*
mentā, -ōrūm, grain
 frūōr, frūitūs & fructūs sūm,
 frūī, *to enjoy*
 frustrā, *in vain*
 frustūm, -ī (n.), *a piece*
 (frux), frūgis (f.) usually pl. frū-
 gēs, -iūm, *fruit*
 fūgā, -ae (f.), *a flight*
 fūgīō, fūgī, fūgitūm, fūgērē, *to*
flee or fly, avoid; escape; fūgit
mē, it escapes my notice, is
unknown to me
 fūgō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, *to put*
to flight
 fulciō, fulsī, fultūm, fulcīrē, *to*
support
 fulgēō, fulsī, (no sup.), fulgērē, *to*
shine
 fulgūr, -is (n.), *a flash of light-*
ning
 fulmēn, -inis (n.), *a lightning*
that strikes, a thunderbolt
 fūmūs, -ī (m.), *smoke*
 funditūs, *to the foundation*
 fundūs, -ī (m.), *a piece of land*
 fungōr, functūs sūm, fungī, *to*
discharge
 fūnūs, -ōris (n.), *a funeral*
 fūr -is (m.), *a thief*
 furcā, -ae (f.), *a pitchfork*
 fūrōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, *to steal*
 fūtūrūs, -ā, -iūm, *about to be,*
future

G.

Gājūs, -ī (m.), *Gajus*
 Gallīā, -ae (f.), *Gaul*
 Gallīcūs, -ā, -iūm, *Gallia*

gallinā, -ae (f.), a hen
 Gallūs, -ī (m.), a Gaul
 gaudēō, gavisūs sūm, gaudērē, to rejoice, delight
 gaudīum, -ī (n.), joy
 gēlascō, (no perf. & sup.), -ērē, to freeze
 gēminō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to double
 gemmā, -ae (f.), a gem
 gēnētrix, -icis (f.), a mother
 gens, -tis (f.), a tribe, nation
 gēnūinūs, -ā, -ūm, belonging to the cheek
 gēnūs, -ērīs (n.), a kind, race; animālīum gēnūs, a class of animals; gēnūs vitae, a line of life
 Germāniā, -ae (f.), Germany
 Germānūs, -ī (m.), a German
 gērō, gessī, gestūm, gērērē, to carry on, do; mālē gērērē, to manage badly; sē gērērē, to behave
 gestō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to carry
 glādiūs, -ī (m.), a sword
 glans, -dis (f.), an acorn
 glōbōstūs, -ā, -ūm, round like a ball
 glōbūs, -ī (m.), a globe
 glōriā, -ae (f.), glory, honor
 glōriōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, to boast
 Gracchūs, -ī (m.), Gracchus; Gracchī, -ōrūm (pl. m.), the Gracchi
 grādūs, -ūs (m.), a step; lentō grādū, at a slow pace
 Graeciā, -ae (f.), Greece
 Graecūs, -ā, -ūm, Greek
 grandīnāt, it hails [old
 grandīs, -ē, great; grandīs nātū,

grandō, -inis (f.), hail
 grānūm, -ī (n.), a grain
 grātiā, -ae (f.), favor; grātiaē -ārūm, favors, thanks; grātias āgērē, to return thanks; grātiā, for the sake of
 grātiōsūs, -ā, -ūm, liked
 grātūlōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, to congratulate
 grātūs, -ā, -ūm, pleasing; thankful, grateful
 grāvīs, -ē, heavy, severe, burdensome; morbūs grāvīs, a severe sickness
 grāvītēr, severely; grāvītēr ādhortārī, to exhort earnestly
 grāvō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to oppress
 gūbernātōr, -ōrīs (m.), a pilot
 gūbernō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to govern
 gustō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to taste

H.

hābēō, -uī, -itūm, -ērē, to have, to keep, to hold, maintain; to think, consider; ōrātiōnēm hābērē, to deliver a speech; prō nihilo hābērē, to regard as nothing; hābērī, to be thought, considered; to be taken (for); mālē sē rēs hābet, things go wrong
 hābitō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to live, to dwell, inhabit
 Hādriānūs, -ī (m.), the emperor Hadrian
 Hādrūmētūm, -ī (n.), Hadrumetum
 hāmūs, -ī (m.), a hook
 Hannibāl, -īs (m.), Hannibal, a Carthaginian general

hārēnā, -ae (f.), *sand*. Written also **ārēnā**

Harpāgūs, -ī (m.), *Harpagus*
Hasdrūbāl, -īs (m.), *Hasdrubal*
haud, *not*

hēbēs, -ētīs, *dull, dim*

Hēbrēūs, -ī (m.), *a Hebrew*

Helvētīūs, -ī (m.), *a Helvetian*

Henricūs, -ī (m.), *Henry*

Hēphaestīōn, -ōnīs (m.), *Hephaestion*

herbā, -ae (f.), *an herb, weed, plant*

hērēs, -ēdīs (m.), *an heir*

hērī, *yesterday*

Hērōdōtūs, -ī (m.), *Herodotus*

herōs, -ōīs (m.), *a hero*

hērūs, -ī (m.), *a master*

Hespērūs, -ī (m.), *the evening star*

Hībernīā, -ae (f.), *Ireland*

hīc, *haec*, **hōc**, *this (of mine), the latter, the former; hīcīnē, haecīnē, hōcīnē? this here?*

hīems, **hīēmīs** (f.), *winter*

hīlārīs, -ē, *cheerful*

Hīmērā, -ae (f.), *Himera*

hinnītūs, -ūs (m.), *neighing*

hīrundō, -īnīs (f.), *a swallow*

Hispanīā, -ae (f.), *Spain*

Hispanūs, -ī (m.), *a Spaniard*

histōriā, -ae (f.), *history*

histōricūs, -ī (m.), *a historian*

histriō, -ōnīs (m.), *an actor*

hōdīē, *to-day*

Hōmērūs, -ī (m.), *the Greek poet Homer*

hōmō, -īnīs (m.), *man; a man; a person; hōmīnēs, people*

hōnestūm, -ī (n.), *honesty*

hōnestūs, -ā, -ūm, *honorable, virtuous*

hōnōr, -ōrīs (m.), *an honor*

hōnōrātūs, -ā, -ūm, *honored*

hōrā, -ae (f.), *an hour*

horrēō, -ūī, (no sup.), -ēre, *to shudder at*

Hortensiūs, -ī (m.), *Hortensius*

hortōr, -ātūs sūm, -āri, *to exhort*

hortūs, -ī (m.), *a garden*

hospēs, -ītīs (m.), *a friend*

hospitiūm, -ī (n.), *the house of a friend*

hostīs, - (m.), *an enemy*

hūc, *hither; to this degree*

hūmānītās, -ātīs (f.), *humanity*

hūmānūs, -ā, -ūm, *human*

hūmīlīs, -ē, *low*

hūmūs, -ī (f.), *soil; hūmō, from the ground; hūmī, on the ground*

Hystaspēs, -īs (m.), *Hystaspes*

I.

ibī, *there, here*

icō, **icī**, **ictūm**, **icērē**, *to strike*

ictūs, -ūs (m.), *a stroke*

ideircō, *for this reason, therefore*

idēm, **ēādēm**, **idēm**, *the same;*

idēm quī, *the same who, the same as*

idēō, *for the reason, on that account*

idōnēūs, -ā, -ūm, *fit, suitable, suited*

igītūr, *therefore*

ignārūs, -ā, -ūm, *ignorant*

ignāviā, -ae (f.), *indolence, cowardice*

ignāvūs, -ā, -ūm, *cowardly; coward*

ignīs, - (m.), *fire*

ignōmīniā, -ae (f.), *disgrace*

ignōrō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to ignore, to be ignorant
 illē, illā, illū, that; the former, the latter
 illicīdō, illexī, illectūm, illicērē, to allure
 imāgō, -inīs (f.), an image, likeness
 imbēcillūs, -ā, -ūm, feeble
 imbūō, imbūi, imbūtūm, imbūērē, to stain
 imitātīō, -ōnīs (f.), imitation
 imitōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, to imitate
 immēmōr, -īs, unmindful
 immērītō, unjustly
 immīnēdō, (no perf. & sup.), -ērē, to threaten
 immittō, immisi, immissūm, immittērē, to let loose
 immō, nay, on the contrary
 immōdicē, excessively
 immortalīs, -ē, immortal
 immortalitās, -ātīs (f.), immortality
 impatiēns, -tīs, incapable of enduring
 impēdimentūm, -ī (n.), a hindrance; obstacle
 impēdiō, -ivi, -itūm -irē, to hinder, prevent
 impellō, impūli, impulsūm, impellērē, to drive
 impēnētrābilīs, -ē, impenetrable
 impērātōr, -ōrīs (m.), a general; an emperor
 impērītūs, -ā, -ūm, ignorant
 impērīūm, -ī (n.), empire; rule, power; government; contrā
 impērīūm, contrary to orders;
 ad impērīūm accēdērē, to come to the throne

impērō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to command, govern, rule
 impertīdō, -ivi, -itūm, -irē, to share
 impētūs, -ūs (m.), assault
 impiētās, -ātīs (f.), impiety
 impiūs, -ā, -ūm, impious
 implēdō, implēvi, implētūm, implērē, to fill
 implōrō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to implore
 impōnō, impōsi, impōsitūm, impōnērē, to put, place, lay on, impose
 impōs, -ōtīs, not in possession of
 impōtēns, -tīs, unable, powerless
 to control
 imprimō, impressi, impressūm, imprimērē, to stamp; to press upon
 imprōbūs, -ā, -ūm, wicked; a rascal
 in (with the accus.), into, to, against, for; in diēm, for the day; in (with the abl.), in, among
 inānīs, -ē, void
 incēdō, incessi, incessūm, incēdērē, to walk
 incendīūm, -ī (n.), a fire, burning
 incendō, incendi, incensūm, incendērē, to burn
 incertūs, -ā, -ūm, uncertain
 incīdō, incīdi, (no sup.), incīdērē, to fall into
 incīdō, incīdi, incīsūm, incīdērē, to engrave, carve upon
 incipīō, incēpi, inceptūm, incipērē, to begin
 incolā, -ae (m.), an inhabitant
 incolō, incolui, incultūm, incolērē, to inhabit

incōlūmīs, -ē, *safe*
 inconstans, -tīs, *inconstant*
 inconsultō, *inconsiderately*
 incredibilīs, -ē, *incredible*
 incūsō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, *to accuse*
 indē, *thence*
 Indī, -ōrūm (pl. m.), *the Indians*
 Indiā, -ae (f.), *India*
 indicō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, *to indicate, reveal, tell*
 indicō, indixī, indictūm, indicērē, *to declare*
 indigēō, -ūī, (no sup.), -ērē, *to need*
 indignātiō, -ōnis (f.), *indignation*
 indignūs, -ā, -ūm, *unworthy*
 indolēs, -īs (f.), *disposition*
 inducō, induxī, inductūm, inducērē, *to introduce*
 indulgēō, indulsī, indultūm, indulgērē, *to give up; to favor*
 indūō, indūī, indūtūm, indūērē, *to put on*
 industriā, -ae (f.), *industry; de industriā, on purpose*
 ineptūs, -ā, -ūm, *inapt*
 Inertiā, -ae (f.), *laziness, idleness*
 infāmīā, -ae (f.), *dishonor*
 infans, -tīs (m. & f.), *a child; dumb*
 infelix, -icīs, *unhappy*
 infēriōr, -iūs, lower *infest*
 infestō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, *to infest*
 infigō, infixī, infixūm, infigērē, *to fix in*
 infimūs, -ā, -ūm, *lowest*
 infriā, *below, under, beneath, later than, smaller than*
 infringō, infrēgī, infractūm, infringērē, *to break*
 ingēnūm, -ī (n.), *talent, (natural) disposition, mind*

ingens, -tīs, *vast, immense*
 ingēnūūs, -ī (m.), *a gentleman*
 ingrātūs, -ā, -ūm, *ungrateful, unpleasant*
 ingrēdiōr, ingressūs sūm, ingrēdī, *to march, come in*
 ingrūō, -ī (no sup.), -ērē, *to break into*
 Inimicitīā, -ae (f.), *enmity*
 Inimicūs, -ī (m.), *enemy; opposed, unfriendly*
 Iniquitās, -ātīs (f.), *injustice*
 Initiūm, -ī (n.), *a beginning*
 injiciō, injeci, injectūm, injicērē, *to strike into, to throw over*
 injucundūs, -ā, -ūm, *disagreeable*
 injuriā, -ae (f.), *an injury, wrong; insult; injuriā, unjustly; injuriā servitūtis, the outrage of slavery*
 injustitiā, -ae (f.), *unjustice*
 injustūs, -ā, -ūm, *unjust*
 innātūs, -ā, -ūm, *born in*
 innōcens, -tīs, *innocent*
 innōcentiā, -ae (f.), *innocence*
 innoxius, -ā, -ūm, *harmless*
 innūmērabilīs, -ē, or innūmērūs, -ā, -ūm, *innumerable*
 Inōpiā, -ae (f.), *want*
 Inops, -ōpis (m.), *a poor man*
 inprimis, *chiefly, especially*
 inquā, *I say, quoth I*
 inquirō, inquisivī, inquisitūm, inquirērē, *to inquire*
 insānūs, -ī (m.), *a madman*
 insatiabilīs, -ē, *that cannot be satisfied*
 insciūs, -ā, -ūm, *ignorant*
 inscribō, inscripsī, inscriptūm, inscribērē, *to inscribe, write upon*

insīdiāe, -ārūm (pl. f.), *treachery*
insīdiōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, *to lay*
a snare, to pursue

insimulō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, *to*
accuse, charge

insipiens, -tis (m.), *a fool*

inspicīō, inspexī, inspectūm, in-
spicērē, *to look into, exam-*
ine

instār (n. indecl.), *like*

instītūō, instītūī, instītūtūm, in-
stītūōrē, *to establish, ordain;*
to train

insūētūs, -ā, -ūm, *unaccustomed*

insulā, -ae (f.), *an island*

intactūs, -ā, -ūm, *untouched*

intellēgō, intellexī, intellectūm,
intellēgērē, *to understand,*
see, comprehend

intēr (with accus.), *among, between*

intercālō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, *to*
interpolate

interdicō, interdixī, interdictūm,
interdicērē, *to forbid; aquā*
et ignī interdicērē, to banish
one

interdūm, *sometimes*

intērēō, intērī, intērītūm, in-
tērīrē, *to perish, pass away*

intērēssē *see intersūm*

interficō, interfēcī, interfectūm,
interficērē, *to kill*

intēriōr, -ūs, *interior*

intērīrē *see intērēō*

intērītūs, -ūs (m.), *destruction;*
loss

interjicō, interjecī, interjectūm,
interjicērē, *to throw in*

interpēs, -ētīs (m.), *an inter-*
preter

interrōgō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē,
to ask, inquire

intersūm, interfūī, intērēssē, *to*
be present at, to take part in;
intērest, it concerns, interests,
is the interest, is of import-
ance; nihīl intērest, it makes
no difference

intestīnā, -ōrūm (pl. n.), *the in-*
testines

intīmūs, -ā, -ūm, *inmost, hinder*

intōlērābilis, -ē, *intolerable*

intonsūs, -ā, -ūm, *unshaved*

intrā (with accus.), *within*

intrō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, *to*
enter

intūēōr, -ītūs sūm, -ērī, *to look*
upon

inultūs, -ā, -ūm, *unavenged*

inūsītātūs, -ā, -ūm, *extraordin-*
ary, uncommon

inūtīlis, -ē, *useless, unfit*

invēnīō, invēnī, inventūm, invē-
nīrē, *to find (out), invent; to*
devise

inventōr, -ōrīs (m.), *an inventor*
investīgō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē,
to find out

invidēō, invidī, invisūm, invī-
dērē, *to envy*

invidiā, -ae (f.), *envy*

invītūs, -ā, -ūm, *against one's*
will

invīūs, -ā, -ūm, *impassable*

īonēs, -ūm (pl. m.), *the Ionians*
ipsē, -ā, -ūm, *himself, herself,*
itself; very, just

irā, -ae (f.), *anger*

irascōr, -irātūs sūm, -irascī, *to*
be angry

irātūs, -ā, -ūm, *angry*

irē *see ēō*

irridēō, irrīsī, irrīsūm, irridērē,
to mock

irruō, -ī (no sup.), -ērē, to rush
 is, ēā, id, that; he, she, it; is
 qui, he who, such as, such that;
 ēā, -ōrūm, those things
 Isocrātēs, -īs (m.), Isocrates
 istē, -ā, -ūd, that (of yours)
 isthic, isthaec, isthoc, the very
 same
 Itā, so; Itā est, so it is; Itā, yes
 Italiā, -ae (f.), Italy
 Itālūs, -ī (m.), an Italian
 itaquē, therefore
 Itēr, itinērīs (n.), a journey,
 passage
 Itērūm, a second time, again;
 Itērūm atquē Itērūm, again
 and again

J.

jacēō, -ūi, -itūm, -ērē, to lie,
 to be down
 jaculōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, to
 throw the javelin
 jān, already; jān nunc, just now;
 jān dudūm, a long time
 jentāculūm, -ī (n.), breakfast
 jōcūs, -ī (m.), a jest, joke; jōcō,
 in joke
 Jōsēphūs, -ī (m.), Joseph
 jūbēō, jussī, jussūm, jūbērē, to
 order
 jucunditās, -ātīs (f.), enjoyment
 jucundūs, -ā, -ūm, pleasant,
 welcome, agreeable
 Jūdāeūs, -ī (m.), a Jew
 jūdex, -icīs (m.), a judge; jūdi-
 cēs, the jury; jūdicēm essē, to
 sit in judgment
 jūdicium, -ī (n.), a court; jūdi-
 cium cāptīs, a trial for life;
 jūdicō, according to the judg-
 ment

jūdicō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to
 judge, consider, pronounce,
 declare
 Jūgurthā, -ae (m.), Jugurtha
 Jūliūs, -ī (m.), Julius
 Juppītēr, Jōvis (m.), Jupiter
 jurgiōsūs, -ā, -ūm, quarrelsome
 jūs, jūris (n.), right, law; jūs
 cīvilē, civil law; jūrē, rightly,
 rightfully, justly
 jūsjurandūm, jūrisjurandī (n.),
 an oath
 jussū, by order
 justitiā, -ae (f.), justice
 justūs, -ā, -ūm, just
 jūventūs, -ūtīs (f.), youth
 jūvō, jūvī, jūtūm, jūvārē, to
 assist, avail
 juxtā, hard by, beside

L.

lābōr, -ōris (m.), labor
 lābōr, lapsūs sūm, lābī, to glide,
 to slip, to fall
 lābōrō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to
 work; to suffer; pārūm lābō-
 rārē, to take too little pains;
 nihil lābōrārē, to do no work
 lāc, lactīs (n.), milk
 Lācēdaemōn, -ōnis (f.), the city
 of Lacedaemon
 Lācēdaemōniūs, -ī (m.), a Lace-
 daemonian
 lācessō, lācessivī, lācessitūm,
 lācessērē, to provoke
 lācrimā, -ae (f.), a tear
 laedō, laesī, laesūm, laedērē,
 to violate, hurt
 Laeliūs, -ī (m.), Laelius
 laetōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, to re-
 joice, delight
 laetūs, -ā, -ūm, glad, pleased

lānīſ, -ī (m.), a butcher
lāpīſ, -īdīſ (m.), a stone
lapſſ, -ā, -ūm, fallen
lātēbrā, -ae (f.), a lurking place
Lātīnſ, -ā, -ūm, Latin
lātrans, -tīſ, craving
lātrō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to bark
lātrō, -ōnīſ (m.), a robber
lātſ, -ā, -ūm, broad
laudābīlīſ, -ē, praiseworthy
laudō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to
praise
laus, -dīſ (f.), praise; laudē dig-
nſ, praiseworthy; laudī dū-
cērē, to count it a praise
lautūmīae, -ārūm (pl. f.), the
stone-quarries
lectīō, -ōnīſ (f.), a reading
lectŭlūm, -ī (n.), a bed
lēgātīō, -ōnīſ (f.), an embassy
lēgātſ, -ī (m.), an ambassador
lēgō, lēgī, lectūm, lēgērē, to read
lēnīō, -īvī, -ītūm, -īrē, to ap-
pease, mitigate, assuage
lentſ, -ā, -ūm, slow
lēō, -ōnīſ (m.), a lion
lēpſ, -ōrīſ (m.), a hare
lēvīſ, -ē, light
lēvō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to lessen
lex, lēgīſ (f.), a law
lībēns, -tīſ, willing(ly), with
pleasure
lībentēr, willingly, freely
lībēr, -rī (m.), a book
lībēr, -ā, -ūm, free
lībērālītās, -ātīſ (f.), liberality
lībērī, -ōrūm (pl. m.), children
lībērō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to
free, deliver, save, release
lībērtās, -ātīſ (f.), liberty
lībēt, it pleases, lībūt or lībī-
tūm est, lībērē

lībīdō, -īnīſ (f.), desire
licēō, -tī, -ītūm, -ārē, to be
for sale
licēōr, -ītſ sūm, -ērī, to bid,
offer a price for
licēt, it is allowed, I am free;
licīt or licītūm est, licērē
licēt, though, suppose, whereas
lictōr, -ōrīſ (m.), a lictor
lignūm, -ī (n.), wood
līmēn, -īnīſ (n.), a threshold
linēā, -ae (f.), a line
linguā, -ae (f.), the tongue, a
language
lintūm, -ī (n.), cloth
Liscſ, -ī (m.), Liscus
littērā, -ae (f.), a letter (of the
alphabet); littērae, -ārūm,
an epistle, learning, written
papers; littērārūm ēlēmētā,
the elements of education
lōcātſ, -ā, -ūm, placed; mālē
lōcātſ, out of place
lōcō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to let
lōcŭplēs, -ētīſ, wealthy
lōcſ, -ī (m.), a place; condition;
pārentūm lōcō, in place of your
parents
Londīnūm, -ī (n.), London
longē, by far
longīnqūtās, -ātīſ (f.), length
longiſ, farther
longſ, -ā, -ūm, long, tedious
lōqnacītās, -ātīſ (f.), loquacity
lōqnōr, lōcūtſ sūm, lōqŭī, to
speak
Lūcānā, -ae (f.), Lucania
Lūcānſ, -ā, -ūm, Lucanian
Lūcīfēr, -ī (m.), the morning star
Lūcīlīſ, -ī (m.), Lucilius
Lūcrētīā, -ae (f.), Lucretia
lūcrūm, -ī (n.), gain

luctūs, -ūs (m.), *grief*
 luculentūs, -ā, -ūm, *bright*
 lūcūs, -ī (m.), *a grove*
 ludibrium, -ī (n.), *mockery*
 ludō, lūsī, lūsum, ludērē, to
play
 Lūdovicūs, -ī (m.), *Lewis*
 ludūs, -ī (m.), *a play, game; ludi*
Olympici, the Olympian games
 lunā, -ae (f.), *the moon*
 lūpūs, -ī (m.), *a wolf*
 lusciniā, -ae (f.), *a nightingale*
 lūsus, -ūs (m.), *a sport, amuse-*
ment; gaming
 lux, lūcis (f.), *light; primā lux,*
day-break
 luxuriā, -ae (f.), *luxury; inūsi-*
tatae luxūriae essē, to be given
to uncommon luxury
 Lūcūrgūs, -ī (m.), *Lycurgus, the*
lawgiver of the Spartans
 Lūdiā, -ae (f.), *Lydia*
 Lūdūs, -ī (m.), *a Lydian*
 Lūsandēr, -rī (m.), *Lysander*

M.

Mācēdō, -ōnis (m.), *a Macedon-*
ian
 Mācēdōniā, -ae (f.), *Macedonia*
 maerō, (no perf. & sup.), -ērē, to
grieve, mourn
 maerōr, -ōris (m.), *sorrow*
 māgis, more, *better*
 māgistēr, -rī (m.), *a teacher*
 māgistrā, -ae (f.), *a (female)*
teacher
 magnificūs, -ā, -ūm, *splendid*
 magnitūdō, -īnis (f.), *size*
 magnōpērē, *greatly*
 magnūs, -ā, -ūm, *great, large,*
big; magnō (prētīo understood),
at a high price

mājōr, -ūs, *greater; mājōr nātū,*
older; mājōrēs, -ūm (pl. m.),
the ancestors; mājōrēs nātū,
one's elders
 mālē, *badly, to no purpose; mālē*
ēmērē, to buy dear; mālē ven-
dērē, to sell at a loss; mālē lō-
cātūs, out of place; mālē audirē,
to be in bad repute
 mālēdicō, -dixī, -dictūm, -di-
 cērē, to *slander, curse*
 mālēdicūs, -ī (m.), *a calumniator*
 mālēfactūm, -ī (n.), *injury*
 mālō, mālūī, (no sup), mallē, to
be more willing, prefer, have
rather, like better
 mālūm, -ī (n.), *an evil, misfor-*
tune; hōc mālī, this badness
 mālūs, -ā, -ūm, *bad*
 mandō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to
order
 mănē (n. indecl.), *morning; (adverb)*
early in the morning; bēnē
mănē, right early in the morn-
ing
 mănō, mansī, mansūm, mănō-
 rē, to *remain*
 Manliūs, -ī (m.), *Manlius*
 mansuētūdō, -īnis (f.), *mildness*
 mănūs, -ūs (f.), *the hand*
 Marcellūs, -ī (m.), *Marcellus*
 Marcūs, -ī (m.), *Marcus*
 Mardōniūs, -ī (m.), *Mardonius*
 mārē, -īs (n.), *the sea*
 mārītīmūs, -ā, -ūm, *over the*
sea, sea-
 mārītūs, -ī (m.), *a husband*
 Māriūs, -ī (m.), *Marius, seven*
times consul
 marmōr, -īs (n.), *marble*
 Massāgētāe, -ārūm (pl. m.), *the*
Massagetae, a Scythian people

Massiliā, -ae (f.), *Marseilles*
 mātēr, -rīs (f.), *a mother*
 mātūrūs, -ā, -ūm, *ripe*
 mātūtīnūs, -ā, -ūm, *morning-;*
 tempūs mātūtīnūm, *morning*
 maxīmē, *most, especially, prin-*
cipally, very greatly, chiefly
 maxīmōpērē, *most particularly*
 maxīmūs, -ā, -ūm, *greatest;*
 maxīmūs nātū, *oldest*
 mēdēōr, (no part.), mēdēri, *to*
cure, heal
 Mediā, -ae (f.), *Media*
 mēdicīnā, -ae (f.), *medicine*
 mēdicūs, -ī (m.), *a physician*
 mēdiocrītās, -ātīs (f.), *medio-*
crity
 mēdiūs, -ā, -ūm, *middle, in the*
middle; mediā urbē, in the
midst of the city
 Mēgārā, -ae (f.), *Megara*
 mēl, mellīs (n.), *honey*
 mēliōr, -ūs, *better*
 membrūm, -ī (n.), *a limb*
 mēmīnī, mēmīnissē, *to remem-*
ber; mēmentō, do not forget
 mēmōr, -īs, *mindful*
 mēmōriā, -ae (f.), *memory, re-*
membrance
 mēmōrō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, *to*
mention, record
 mendāciūm, -ī (n.), *a falsehood,*
lying
 mendax, -ācis, *lying; (hōmō)*
mendax, a liar
 mens, -tīs (f.), *the mind*
 mensīs, - (m.), *a month*
 mentiō, -ōnīs (f.), *mention*
 mentiōr, -itūs sūm, -iri, *to lie,*
tell a lie
 mercātōr, -ōrīs (m.), *a merchant*
 mercātūs, -ūs (m.), *a market*

mercēs, -ēdis (f.), *a recompense,*
reward
 mercōr, -ātūs sūm, -āri, *to buy*
 mērēō, -ūi, -itūm, -ērē, *to de-*
 mērēōr, -itūs sūm, -ēri, *serve*
 mērītō, *deservedly*
 mērītūm, -ī (n.), *a merit*
 mērītūs, -ā, -ūm, *deserving*
 merx, -cis (f.), *ware*
 mētallūm, -ī (n.), *a metal*
 mētiōr, mensūs sūm, mētiri, *to*
measure
 mētūō, mētūi, (no sup.), mētūērē, *to*
fear
 mētūs, -ūs (m.), *fear*
 mēūs, -ā, -ūm, *my*
 mīgrō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, *to*
migrate
 milēs, -itīs (m.), *a soldier*
 miliārīūm, -ī (n.), *a mile*
 militāris, -ē, *military; rēs mili-*
tāris, military affairs
 militiā, -ae (f.), *military service;*
 dōmī militiaeque, *at home and*
in the field
 millē, *a thousand*
 millēs, *a thousand times*
 Miltiādēs, -īs (m.), *Miltiades*
 milūūs, -ī (m.), *a kite*
 mīnimē, *by no means*
 mīnimūs, -ā, -ūm, *least, smallest;*
 mīnimō, *at a very low price;*
 mīnimūs nātū, *youngest*
 mīnōr, -ūs, *less, smaller; mīnōris,*
cheaper; mīnōr nātū, younger
 mīnōr, -ātūs sūm, -āri, *to*
threaten
 Mīnōs, -ōīs (m.), *Minos, king*
in Crete
 mīnūō, mīnūi, mīnūtūm, mīnūē-
 rē, *to lessen, weaken, diminish*
 mīnūs, *less*

mirābilis, -ē } wonderful
 mirificus, -ā, -ūm }
 miror, -ātus sum, -āri, to wonder at
 miser, -ā, -ūm, wretched, miserable
 miserōr, miseritūs & misertūs sum, miserēri, to pity
 miserēt, it excites pity, miseritūm, misertūm est, miserērē
 miserīā, -ae (f.), misery
 misericordiā, -ae (f.), pity, mercy, charity
 Mithridātēs, -īs (m.), Mithridates
 mittō, misi, missum, mittērē, to send; In periculā mittērē, to bring into danger
 moderātē, with moderation
 moderor, -ātus sum, -āri, to manage, set bounds to, regulate
 modestiā, -ae (f.), modesty
 modestus, -ā, -ūm, modest
 modicus, -ā, -ūm, moderate, little
 modō, now; only; if only; modō nē, provided only not; modō.. modō, now.. now; nōn modō.. sed etiam, not only.. but also
 modūs, -ī (m.), measure, way, manner; hōc modō, in this manner; quōmodō, in what manner; how? multis modis, in many ways; modū tēnērē, to observe a limit
 moeniā, -ūm (pl. n.), city-walls
 molēs, -īs (f.), weight
 molestiā, -ae (f.), trouble
 molestus, -ā, -ūm, troublesome, irksome; molestē ferrē, to be annoyed

mollis, -ivī, -itūm, -irē, to assuage
 mollis, -ē, soft; mollis educatiō, an effeminate education
 monēō, -ūi, -itūm, -ērē, to advise, warn
 monōcērōs, -ōtis (m.), a unicorn
 mons, -tis (m.), a mountain
 monstrō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to show
 monūmentūm, -ī (n.), a monument
 morbus, -ī (m.), a disease, sickness
 mordēō, mōmordi, morsum, mordērē, to bite
 moribundus, -ā, -ūm, dying
 morior, mortuus sum, mori, to die
 morosus, -ā, -ūm, cross
 mors, -tis (f.), death
 mortalis, -ē, mortal
 mortuus, -ā, -ūm, dead
 mos, -ōris (m.), custom, manner; mōrēs, morals; character; mōrēs urbāni, city manners
 motus, -ūs (m.), motion; terrae motus, an earthquake
 movēō, movi, motum, movērē, to move
 mox, soon, hereafter
 mulcēō, mulsi, mulsum, mulcērē, to tame
 mulier, -īs (f.), a woman
 multitudo, -inis (f.), a multitude, great number
 multo, much
 multō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to mulct, punish
 multus, -ā, -ūm, much, many; multum, greatly
 Mummius, -ī (m.), Mummius

mundūs, -ī (m.), *the world*
 munificentiā, -ae (f.), *bounty*
 mūniō, -ivī, -itūm, -irē, *to fortify*
 mūnūs, -ērīs (n.), *a gift; service;*
 mūnūs afferre, *to do service*
 mūrūs, -ī (m.), *a wall*
 mūs, mūrīs (m.), *a mouse*
 muscā, -ae (f.), *a fly*
 mūsicē, -ēs (f.), *music*
 mūtātīō, -ōnīs (f.), *interchange, change*
 mūtō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, *to change*
 mūtūs, -ā, -ūm, *mute, dumb;*
 cānīs mūtūs, *a silent dog*
 Myndūs, -ī (f.), *the city of Myn-*
dus

N.

nam, *for; -nām, appended to interrogatives, pray*
 namquē, *for*
 nanciscōr, nactūs & nantūs
 sūm, nanciscī, *to get*
 narrātīō, -ōnīs (f.), *a narrative*
 narrō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, *to tell, relate*
 nascōr, nātūs sūm, nascī, *to be born.*
 nāsūs, -ī (m.), *the nose*
 nātālīs, - (m.), *a birthday*
 nātiō, -ōnīs (f.), *a nation, people*
 natō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, *to swim*
 nātū, *by birth; mājōr nātū, older;*
 minōr nātū, *younger; mājōrēs*
 nātū, *one's elders*
 nātūrā, -ae (f.), *nature; nātūrā,*
naturally; nātūrā corpōrīs,
physical constitution
 nātūrālīs, -ē, *natural*
 nātūs, -ā, -ūm, *born*

nautā, -ae (m.), *a sailor*
 nāvālīs, -ē, *naval*
 nāvīgātīō, -ōnīs (f.), *navigation;*
 nāvīgātīō circūm terrām, *a voyage round the world*
 nāvīgūm, -ī (n.), *a vessel*
 nāvīgō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, *to sail, navigate*
 nāvis, - (f.), *a ship; nāvībūs, by ship*
 nē, *not, that not, lest; granted that not; -nē, interrogative particle, whether, if*
 nē. . quidē, *not even*
 Nēāpōlīs, - (f.), *Naples*
 nēc, *and not; nor; nēc. . nēc, neither. . nor*
 nēcessāriūs, -ā, -ūm, *necessary;*
 nēcessāriūs, -ī (m.), *a relation*
 nēcessē est, *it must needs*
 nēcessitās, -ātīs (f.), *necessity*
 necnē, *or not*
 nēcō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, *to kill, slay*
 nēfāriūs, -ā, -ūm, *wicked*
 nēfās (n. indecl.), *wrong, forbidden*
 neglēgens, -tis, *careless, negligent*
 neglēgō, neglexī, neglectūm, *neglect. Written also neglēgērē*
 nēgō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, *to deny, say no*
 nēgōtīūm, -ī (n.), *an affair, matter; business; magnā nēgōtīā*
 āgērē, *to transact great affairs;*
 nihīl nēgōtī, *nothing to do*
 nēmō, -īnīs (m.), *nobody, no one*
 nēpōs, -ōtīs (m.), *a grandson*
 Neptūnūs, -ī (m.), *Neptune, the god of the sea*

nēquē, *and not; nēquē..nēquē, neither..nor; nēquē tāmēn, but not; nēquē..quē, on the one hand not..and on the other*
 nēquēō, nēquīvi, nēquitūm, nēquīrē, *not to be able*
 Nērō, -ōnis (m.), *Nero*
 nervūs, -ī (m.), *a nerve*
 nesciō, -īvi, -itūm, -īrē, *not to know; to be ignorant of*
 nesciūs, -ā, -ūm, *ignorant*
 neutēr, -rā, -rūm, *neither of the two*
 neutiquām, *not at all*
 nēvē, *and not*
 nex, nēcīs (f.), *violent death*
 nidūs, -ī (m.), *a nest*
 nīgēr, -rā, -rūm, *black*
 nihīl, *nothing; nihīl minūs, nothing less so*
 nihīlūm, -ī (n.), *nothing; nihīlī, naught; nihīlō, by nothing*
 Nīlūs, -ī (m.), *the river Nile*
 nīmīs, *too much, too*
 nīmīūm, *too much* [cessive
 nīmīūs, -ā, -ūm, *too much, ex-*
 nīsī, *if not, unless, except; nōn*
 nīsī, *but*
 nītōr, nīsūs & nixūs sūm, nītī, *to stay one's self on, rest on*
 nītrōsūs, -ā, -ūm, *alkaline*
 nix, nīvis (f.), *snow*
 nobīlīs, -ē, *celebrated; vīrī nobī-*
 lēs, *the nobles*
 nōcens, -tīs (m.), *a guilty person*
 nōcēō, -tī, -itūm, -ērē, *to do harm, hurt*
 noctū, *at night*
 noctūā, -ae (f.), *an owl*
 nōlens, -tīs, *unwilling(ly)*
 nōlō, nōlūī, (no sup.) nollē, *to be unwilling, not to wish*

nōmēn, -īnis (n.), *a name*
 nōmīnō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, *to call, name*
 nōn, *not; no; nōn solum..sēd*
 etiām, *nōn modō..sēd etiām,*
 nōn tantūm..sēd etiām, *not*
 only..but also; nōn nīsī, *but;*
 nōn quōd, nōn quō, *not as if;*
 nōn quīn, *not as if not*
 nōnāgintā, *ninety*
 nondūm, *not yet*
 nonnē (interrog. part.), *not; if not*
 nonnīsī, *only*
 nonnullī, -ae, -ā, *some*
 nonnunquām, *sometimes*
 nōs, *we*
 nostēr, -rā, -rūm, *our*
 nōtīō, -ōnis (f.), *an idea*
 nōvūs, -ā, -ūm, *new; nōvā,*
 -ōrūm (pl. n.), *novelties; rēs*
 nōvae, *a revolution*
 nox, noctīs (f.), *the night*
 noxīūs, -ā, -ūm, *noxious, hurt-*
 ful
 nūbīlūs, -ā, -ūm, *cloudy; nū-*
 bīlā, -ōrūm (n. pl.), *clouds*
 nūbō, nupsī, nuptūm, nūbērē, *to marry (of the woman)*
 nūdō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, *to strip*
 nūdūs, -ā, -ūm, *naked*
 nullūs, -ā, -ūm, *no, none, not*
 any, *not one; nullūs fērē, hard-*
 ly *one*
 nūm (interrog. part.), *whether, if*
 Nūmā Pompiliūs, -ae -ī (m.), *Numa Pompilius, second king of Rome*
 Nūmantīā, -ae (f.), *the city of Numantia*
 nūmēn, -īnis (n.), *Godhead; nū-*
 mēn dīvinūm, *divine majesty*

nūmērō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
count, reckon

nūmērūs, -ī (m.), a number

Nūmīdiā, -ae (f.), Numidia

Nūmītor, -ōris (m.), Numitor,
king of Alba

nummūs, -ī (m.), money

numquām or nunquām, never

nunc, now; nunc..nunc, now..
now

nunquām see numquām

nūtiō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
bring word

nūpēr, not long ago, the other day

nusquām, nowhere; nusquām ter-
rārūm, nowhere in the world

nutrix, -icis (f.), a nurse

nūtūs, -ūs (m.), a nod; ad nū-
tūm, at pleasure

O.

ob (with accus.), for, before, on
account of; quām ob causām,
on what account

obdormiscō, obdormīvī, obdor-
mitūm, obdormiscērē, to go
to sleep

obducō, obduxī, obductūm, ob-
ducērē, to cover

obediō see obediō

obēō, obī, obītūm, obīrē, to die

obīrē see obēō

obliviscōr, oblitūs sūm, oblivisci,
to forget

oboediō, -īvi, -itūm, -irē, to
obey. Written also obēdīrē

obruō, obrūī, obrūtūm, obrūrē,
to bury

obscūrō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
obscure

obsecrō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē,
to beseech

obsidēō, obsēdī, obsessūm, ob-
sidērē, to besiege

obstistō, obstitiī, (no sup.), obstistē-
rē, to oppose

obstō, obstitiī, (no sup.), obstārē,
to be in the way; to intervene

obstupescō, obstupui, (no sup.),
obstupescērē, to be astonished

obtinēō, obtinui, obtentūm, ob-
tinērē, to occupy

obtrectō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
decry

occāsio, -ōnis (f.), an occasion,
opportunity

occāsus, -ūs (m.), the west

occidens, -tis (m.), the west

occidō occidi, occāsūm, occi-
dērē, to set

occidō, occidi, occisūm, occi-
dērē, to slay, kill

occultō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
hide, conceal

occultūs, -ā, -ūm, secret

occupātūs, -ā, -ūm, occupied

occupō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
occupy

ocēānūs, -ī (m.), the ocean

Octāviānūs, -ī (m.), Octavianus,
surname of the emperor Au-
octō, eight [gustus

octogintā, eighty

oculātūs, -ā, -ūm, having eyes;

oculātūs testis, an eye-witness

oculūs, -ī (m.), the eye

odī, odissē, to hate

odiosūs, -ā, -ūm, hateful

odiūm, -ī (n.), hatred, enmity

odōr, -ōris (m.), smell

offendō, offendī, offensūm, offen-
dērē, to offend

offerō, obtuli, oblātūm, offerre,
to offer

officiō, offici, effectū, offici-
cērē, to hinder
officiū, -ī (n.), a duty
olēā, -ae (f.), an olive
olēū, -ī (n.), oil
olim, formerly
Olympiā, -ae (f.), Olympia
Olympicūs, -ā, -ūm, Olympian
ōmittō, ōmisi, ōmissū, ōmit-
tērē, to omit
omnis, -ē, all, every, entire;
omniā, -iūm (pl. n.), all things,
every thing; omniā suā, all
one's property
ōnērō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
load
ōnūs, -ērīs (n.), a burden
ōnustūs, -ā, -ūm, laden
ōpērā, -ae (f.), a task, service;
ōpērā, through the means of
ōpērōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, to be
busy
ōpiniō, -ōnis (f.), an opinion;
ōpiniō est, there is a report
ōportēt, it behooves, there is need,
ought; ōportuit, ōportērē
oppidānūs, -ī (m.), a townsman
oppidū, -ī (n.), a town
oppōnō, oppōsui, oppōsitū, -
oppōnērē, to oppose
opportūnūs, -ā, -ūm, suitable
opprimō, oppressi, oppressū, -
opprimōrē, to crush
oppugnō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē,
to besiege
(ops), ōpis (f.), help; ōpēs, -ūm
means, wealth; ōpē, by the
help
optābilis, -ē, desirable
optimūs, -ā, -ūm, best
optō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
wish for, desire

ōpulentūs, -ā, -ūm, wealthy
ōpūs, -ērīs (n.), a work; ōpūs
est, there is need, it is need-
ful, necessary
ōrā, -ae (f.), a coast
ōrāculū, -ī (n.), an oracle
ōrātiō, -ōnis (f.), a speech; ōra-
tiōnēm hābērē, to deliver a
speech
ōrātōr, -ōris (m.), an orator,
an envoy
orbīs, - (m.), a circle; orbīs ter-
rārūm, the world
orbō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
deprive
ōrbūs, -ā, -ūm, deprived of
ordō, -īnis (m.), order; ordinē,
in an orderly manner
oriens, -tis (m.), the east
ōrigō, -īnis (f.), origin
ōrīōr, ortūs sūm, ōriri, to rise,
arise; to spring
ornāmentū, -ī (n.), a jewel,
decoration; ornāmentā, works
of art
ornātūs, -ūs (m.), an ornament
ornō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
adorn
ōrō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
pray, ask, request, beseech
Orpheus, -ēi (m.), Orpheus, the
famous singer
ōs, ōris (n.), the mouth
ostendō, ostendi, ostensū, -
ostendērē, to show
ostium, -ī (n.), a door; ostiā,
-ōrūm, the mouth (of a river)
ōtiosūs, -ā, -ūm, of ease, idle
ōtium, -ī (n.), vacant time;
ōtium nōn est, I have no time
ōvis, - (f.), a sheep
ōvū, -ī (n.), an egg

P.

paenē, *nearly, almost*
 paenitēt, *it causes sorrow; paenitēt, paenitērē. Written also poenitēt*
 pāginā, -ae (f.), *a page*
 Pālātīnūs, -ā, -ūm, *Palatine*
 palliūm, -ī (n.), *the pallium, a large cloak*
 pālūs, -ūdīs (f.), *a marsh*
 pānīs, - (m.), *bread*
 pār, pārīs, *equal, even; a match for; pār est, it is fair; pār pari, like with like*
 parcō, pēperci, parsūm, parcērē, *to spare*
 pārens, -tīs (m. & f.), *a parent*
 pārēdō, -ūi, -itūm, -ērē, *to obey*
 pāriēs, -ētīs (m.), *a wall*
 pārīō, pēperi, partūm, pārērē, *to secure, obtain*
 pārītēr, *together*
 pārō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, *to prepare for, obtain; divitias pārārē, to hoard riches; interitūm pārārē, to bring destruction upon*
 parricidiūm, -ī (n.), *parricide*
 pars, -tīs (f.), *a part, side; party*
 parsimōniā, -ae (f.), *frugality*
 Parthūs, -ī (m.), *a Parthian*
 particeps, -ipīs, *sharing, partaker of, endowed with*
 pārūm, *too little, little*
 parvūlūs, -ī (m.), *a little one*
 parvūs, -ā, -ūm, *little, small; parvō, at a low price*
 pascūm, -ī (n.), *a pasture*
 passim, *here and there*
 passūs, -ūs (m.), *a pace; millē passūm, a mile*

pastōr, -ōris (m.), *a shepherd*
 pātēfaciō, pātēfeci, pātēfactūm, pātēfacērē, *to bring to light*
 pātēr, -ris (m.), *a father*
 pāterfāmiļiās, pātrisfāmiļiās (m.), *the father of a family*
 paternūs, -ā, -ūm, *paternal*
 pātiens, -tīs, *capable of enduring*
 pātientiā, -ae (f.), *patience*
 pātīōr, passūs sūm, pātī, *to suffer, endure; aegrē pātī, to be grieved*
 pātriā, -ae (f.), *one's country*
 pātrōnā, -ae (f.) } *a protector*
 pātrōnūs, -ī (m.) }
 pauci, -ae, -ā, *few, a few; paucā, -ōrūm, or paucae rēs, little*
 paulūm, *little*
 paupēr, -īs, *poor; paupērēs, -ūm (pl. m.), the poor*
 paupertās, -ātīs (f.), *poverty*
 Pausāniās, -ae (m.), *Pausanias*
 pāvō, -ōnis (m.), *a pea-cock*
 pāx, -cis (f.), *peace*
 peccō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, *to sin*
 pectēn, -inis (m.), *a comb*
 pectūs, -ōris (n.), *the breast*
 pēcūniā, -ae (f.), *money, sum of money*
 pēcūs, -ōris (n.) } *cattle*
 pēcūs, -ūdīs (f.) }
 pēdēs, -itīs (m.), *a foot-soldier*
 pēdisēquā, -ae (f.), *a waiting-maid*
 pellīs, - (f.), *a skin*
 pellō, pēpūi, pulsūm, pellērē, *to drive from*
 pellucidūs, -ā, -ūm, *clear*
 pēnārīā, -ae (f.), *a granary*
 pendō, pēpendi, pensūm, pendērē, *to weigh; parvi pendērē, to esteem lightly*

pēnēs (with *accus.*), *in the hands of*
pennā, -ae (f.), *a pen*; pennae,
wings

pensūm, -ī (n.), *a task*

pēnūriā, -ae (f.), *scarcity*

pēr (with *accus.*), *through, by, by*
means of, during; pēr-, *very*;

pēr sē, *for one's own sake*

pērāctūs, -ā, -ūm, *finished*

pērāgrō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, *to*
wander over

perbōnūs, -ā, -ūm, *very good*

Perdiccās, -ae (m.), *Perdiccas*

perdiscō, perdidici, (no *sup.*), per-
discērē, *to learn*

perdō, perdidī, perditūm, per-
dērē, *to lose, ruin*

pērēō, -ī, -itūm, -irē, *to perish*

pērēgrīnūs, -ī (m.), *a stranger,*
a foreigner

perfectūs, -ā, -ūm, *perfect*

perferō, pertūli, perlātūm, per-
ferrē, *to bear*

perfidō, perfodī, perfossūm,

perfodērē, *to stab to death*

perfrūor, perfructūs sūm, per-
frūi, *to enjoy fully*

perfungor, perfunctūs sūm, per-
fungi, *to fulfil*

Pergāmēnūs, -ī (m.), *a Perga-*
mean

Pēriclēs, -īs (m.), *Pericles*

pēriclitōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, *to*
try

pēriculōsūs, -ā, -ūm, *dangerous*

pēriculūm, -ī (n.), *danger, risk*

pēritūs, -ā, -ūm, *experienced,*
skillful, skilled; pēritōr, *a*
better judge

perjūrūm, -ī (n.), *a perjury*

permānēō, permansi, perman-
sūm, permānērē, *to continue*

permēō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, *to*
flow through

permittō, permisi, permissūm,
permittērē, *to permit*

permōvēō, permōvi, permōtūm,
permōvērē, *to excite*

permultūs, -ā, -ūm, *very much,*
very many

permūtō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, *to*
exchange

perniclēs, -ei (f.), *ruin*

perniclōsūs, -ā, -ūm, *perni-*
cious

perpētior, perpassūs sūm, per-
pētī, *to suffer patiently*

perpētūō, *constantly*

perpētūūs, -ā, -ūm, *perpetual,*
constant

Persā, -ae (m.), *a Persian*

persēquor, persēcūtūs sūm,
persēqui, *to hunt down*

persēvēō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē,
to persevere

Persicus, -ā, -ūm, *Persian*

Persīs, -idis (f.), *Persia*

perspicūūs, -ā, -ūm, *clear, plain*

persuādēō, persuāsi, persuāsūm,
persuādērē, *to persuade, con-*
vince

perterrō, -ui, -itūm, -ērē, *to*
frighten

pertinēō, -ui, (no *sup.*), -ērē, *to*
pertain

perturbō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, *to*
disturb

pervēniō, pervēni, perventūm,
pervēnirē, *to arrive in,*
reach; pervēnirē in caelūm,

to pass into heaven

pēs, pēdis (m.), *a foot*; pēdībūs,
a foot

pessimē, *utterly*

pētō, pētīvi, pētītūm, pētērē, to seek; to look for, entreat, beseech; to attack; pācēm pētērē, to sue for peace; Italiā pētērē, to make for Italy
 pētūlantīā, -ae (f.), sauciness
 Philippūs, -ī (m.), Philip, king of Macedonia
 philōsōphūs, -ī (m.), a philosopher
 Phoenix, -īcis (m.), a Phenician
 pictōr, -ōris (m.), a painter
 piētās, -ātis (f.), piety
 pigēt, it disgusts, grieves; pigūit or pigītūm est, pigērē
 pigritiā, -ae (f.), laziness, indolence
 pīlūs, -ī (m.), a hair
 pingō, pinxi, pictūm, pingērē, to paint
 pingūis, -ē, fat
 pirātā, -ae (m.), a pirate
 pīrūm, -ī (n.), a pear
 piscātōr, -ōris (m.), an angler
 piscis, - (m.), a fish
 piscōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, to fish
 piūs, -ā, -ūm, pious
 pix, picis (f.), pitch [please
 plācēō, -ūi, -ītūm, -ērē, to
 plācō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
 appease
 plānē, completely, quite, perfectly
 Plātaeae, -ārūm (pl. f.), Plataea
 Plātaeensis, - (m.), a Plataean
 Plātō, -ōnis (m.), Plato, a famous Greek philosopher
 plaustrūm, -ī (n.), a wagon
 plebēs, -ēi } (f.), the common
 plebs, -is } people, populace
 plēnūs, -ā, -ūm, full, covered with
 plērīquē, plēraequē, plērāquē, very many, most

plērūmqūē, commonly, generally
 Plīniūs, -ī (m.), Pliny
 plōrō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to cry
 plūmā, -ae (f.), a feather
 plūō, plūi, (no sup.), plūērē, to rain
 plūrimūs, -ā, -ūm, most, very much or many; plūrimō (prētīō), at a very high price
 plūs, -rīs, more; plūrēs, -ā or -īā, many, several; plūris, dearer
 Plūtō, -ōnis (m.), Pluto, the king of the lower world
 plūviā, -ae (f.), rain
 pōcūlūm, -ī (n.), a cup
 poenā, -ae (f.), punishment; poenās dārē, to suffer punishment
 poenītēt see paenītēt
 pōētā, -ae (m.), a poet
 pollicēōr, -ītūs sūm, -ērī, to promise
 pōmāriūm, -ī (n.), an orchard
 pompā, -ae (f.), a procession
 Pompēiūs, -ī (m.), Pompey
 pondūs, -ērīs (n.), weight
 pōnō, pōsūi, pōsītūm, pōnērē, to place; to put, lay down; castrā pōnērē, to pitch a camp; mōnūmentā pōnērē, to erect monuments
 Ponticūs, -ā, -ūm, Pontic
 Pontūs, -ī (m.), Pontus, a district in Asia Minor
 pōpūlārīs, -ē, popular; a fellow-countryman
 pōpūlātiō, -ōnis (f.), devastation
 pōpūlūs, -ī (m.), a people, nation
 porrigō, porrexī, porrectūm, porrigērē, to stretch out; to hand; mānūm porrigērē, to shake hands

portā, -ae (f.), a gate
 portiō, -ōnis (f.), a share
 portō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to carry
 poscō, pōposcī, (no sup.), poscērē, to demand, to ask
 possessiō, -ōnis (f.), property
 possidēō, possēdī, possessūm, possidērē, to possess
 possūm, pōtūī, possē, to be able
 post (with accus.), behind, after
 postēā, afterwards
 in postērūm, in future [noon
 postmēridiānūs, -ā, -ūm, after-
 postquā, after; after that
 postrēmō, finally
 postrēmūs -ā, -ūm, last
 postulō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to demand, ask
 pōtens, -tīs, powerful
 pōtentiā, -ae (f.), power
 pōtestās, -ātīs (f.), power; pō-
 testatēm dārē, to give permis-
 sion
 pōtiō, -ōnis (f.), drink
 pōtiōr, -itūs sūm, -irī, to take
 or acquire possession of, to
 make one's self master of; rē-
 rūm pōtirī, to get control of
 affairs
 pōtissimūm, most of all
 pōtiūs, rather
 pōtūs, -ūs (m.), drink
 prae (with ablat.), before, in com-
 parison with, on account of
 praebēō, -uī, -itūm, -ērē, to
 afford; sē praebērē, to show
 one's self
 praeceptōr, -ōrīs (m.), a teacher
 praeceptūm, -ī (n.), a precept,
 maxim, rule
 praecipūē, principally, especially

praeclārē, very well
 praeclārtis, -ā, -ūm, renowned,
 excellent
 praecurrō, praecūcurī, praecur-
 sūm, praecurrērē, to precede
 praedicō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, to
 boast, advertise
 praedicō, praedixī, praedictūm,
 praedicērē, to predict
 praeditūs, -ā, -ūm, endowed
 praedīūm, -ī (n.), an estate
 praefērō, praetūī, praelātūm,
 praeferrē, to carry before; to
 prefer
 praemittō, praemisī, praemis-
 sūm, praemittērē, to send
 ahead
 praemīūm, -ī (n.), a reward
 praenuntiūs, -ī (m.), a precursor
 praesens, -tīs, present
 praesēs, -īdis (m.), a governor
 praesidiūm, -ī (n.), assistance,
 guard
 praestābilis, -ē } excellent, dis-
 praestans, -tīs } tinguished
 praestāt, it is better
 praestō, at hand, present; praestō
 essē, to wait upon
 praestō, praestīti, (no sup.), prae-
 stārē, to afford; sē praestārē,
 to show one's self
 praetēr (with accus.), along, except,
 besides
 praetērēō, praetērī, praetērī-
 tūm, praetērīrē, to pass by;
 praetērīt mē, it escapes my
 notice, is unknown to me
 praetērītūs, -ā, -ūm, past, last;
 praetērītā, -ōrūm, past things
 praetermittō, praetermisī, prae-
 termissūm, praetermittērē,
 to let slip, to omit

prātūm, -ī (n.), a meadow
prāvē factā, -ōrūm (pl. n.), evil
deeds

prāvūs, -ā, -ūm, bad, wicked
prēcēs, -ūm (pl. f.), prayers
prēmō, pressī, pressūm, prē-
mērē, to overcome

prētīum, -ī (n.), a price; value;
maguō (prētīō), plūrimō (prē-
tīō), at a high, very high price
prīdiē quā, the day before

prīmō, primūm, at first
primūs, -ā, -ūm, first; in primis,
among the foremost; primō
verē, in the beginning of spring

princeps, -īpīs (m.), a chief,
prince; first

principiūm, -ī (n.), a beginning;
principiō, at the beginning

priōr, -ūs, -former, first; priūs,
sooner

priusquā, before that, before
privō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
deprive

prō (with *ablat.*), for, instead of,
consistently with

prōbitās, -ātīs (f.), probity
prōbō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
approve, to judge

prōboscis, -īdīs (f.), the trunk of
an elephant

prōbūs, -ā, -ūm, upright, vir-
tuous, well-behaved, honest

prōcērūs, -ā, -ūm, tall
prōcrēō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
produce

prōcūl, at a distance

prōcumbō, prōcūbūl, prōcūbi-
tūm, prōcumbērē, to lie down

prōdessē see prōsūm

prōditiō, -ōnīs (f.), treason

proellōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, to fight

proellūm, -ī (n.), a battle
prōfectō, indeed, in fact
prōficiscōr, prōfectūs sūm, prō-
ficiscī, to set out, depart, come
from

prōfundō, prōfudī, prōfūsūm,
prōfundērē, to shed, to give up
prōhibēō, -ui, -itūm, -ērē, to
restrain, keep from; to check
prōīndē, accordingly; prōīndē ac
sī or quāsī, as if

prōjiciō, prōjecī, prōjectūm,
prōjicērē, to throw forth; sē
prōjicērē, to plunge

prōmittō, prōmisi, prōmissūm,
prōmittērē, to promise

prōpē (with *accus.*), near; prōpē
ād (with *accus.*), near to; prōpē
ūt, almost like

prōpensūs, -ā, -ūm, inclined
prōpērō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
hasten

prōpinquūs, -ī (m.), a relative
prōpiōr, -ūs, nearer

prōponō, prōpōstī, prōpōsitūm,
prōponērē, to offer

prōpriūs, -ā, -ūm, own; char-
acteristic; propriūm est, it is
the mark

proptēr (with *accus.*), on account
of, near by, from, in conse-
quence of; proptēr id ipsūm,
for this very reason

prorsūs, wholly; nōn prorsūs,
not at all

prōsequōr, prōsecūtūs sūm, prō-
sequī, to attend upon

Prōserpinā, -ae (f.), Proserpine

prospēr, -ā, -ūm, prosperous;
rēs prospērae, prosperity; vā-
lētūdō prospērā, good health

prospērē, successfully

prospiciō, prospexi, prospec-
tūm, prospicere, to foresee;
futura prospicere, to look into
the future

prosum, profui, prodessē, to be
useful, do good, benefit

protinus, immediately

provenio, proveni, preventum,
provenire, to thrive

proverbium, -i (n.), a proverb

providentia, -ae (f.), providence

providē, providi, provisum,
providere, to foresee, provide
for

provincia, -ae (f.), a province

proximus, -i, -um, nearest,
next, last; proximus bonis,
next best

prudens, -tis, prudent, sensible
Prusias, -ae (m.), Prusias, king
of Bithynia

publicus, -i, -um, public; res
publica, the commonwealth,
state, republic, public affairs

Publius, -i (m.), Publius

pudet, it shames, puduit or pu-
ditum est, pudere

puella, -ae (f.), a girl

puer, -i (m.), a boy

pueritia, -ae (f.), childhood

pugio, -onis (m.), a dagger

pugna, -ae (f.), a fight, battle

pugno, -avi, -atum, -are, to
fight

pulcher, -ra, -rum, beautiful,
fine; pulcherrimus, most glor-
ious

pulchritudo, -inis (f.), beauty

pulmo, -onis (m.), a lung

pulvis, -is (m.), dust

pumex, -icis (m.), a pumice-
stone

pungo, -pugi, punctum, pun-
gere, to sting

Punicus, -i, -um, Punic

puniō, -ivi, -itum, -ire, to
punish

puto, -avi, -atum, -are, to
think, consider, reckon

Pyrrhus, -i (m.), Pyrrhus, king
of Epirus

Pythagoras, -ae (m.), Pythago-
ras, a celebrated philosopher

Pythagoreus, -i (m.), a Pytha-
gorean

Q.

qua, which way, where

quadragesima, 40

quadringentesimus, -i, -um, the
400th

quadringenti, -ae, -i, 400

quadrupes, -edis (m.), a qua-
druped

quaero, quaesivi, quaesitum,
quaerere, to ask, inquire;
quaeritur, the question is

quaeso, I beseech

quaestor, -oris (m.), a quaestor

qualis, -is, what kind of

quam, how; than; what; how
much

quam diu, how long? as long as

quamquam, although

quamvis, although, however
(much)

quando? when?

quandoquidem, since

quantum, how much

quantum . . tantum, the . . the

quantum, how much? as much as

quantumvis, however much

quantus, -i, -um, how great?
as great as

quārē, *why*
 quartūs, -ā, -ūm, *the fourth*
 quāsī, *as if, as it were*
 quāternī, -ae, -ā, *four by four*
 quattuōr, *four*
 -quē (to be appended to the word),
and
 quēmadmodū, *how; quēmad-*
modū. . Itā, as . . so
 quēō, quīvī, quītūm, quīrē, *to*
be able
 qui, quae, quōd, *who, which,*
that; qui, he who; quae (pl. n.),
those things which
 quā, *because*
 quid, *why?*
 quidām, quaedām, quiddām,
 quoddām, *some one, a certain*
one, a kind of
 quidē, *indeed*
 quidnī, *why not?*
 quiescō, quīevī, quīētūm, quies-
 cērē, *to rest, to retire to rest*
 quilibēt, quaelibēt, quidlibēt,
 quodlibēt, *any one, every one*
 quīn, *that not*
 quinquāgēsīmūs, -ā, -ūm, *the*
50th
 quinquē, *five*
 quintūs, -ā, -ūm, *the fifth*
 quis, quid, *who, what? quisnām,*
quidnām, who, what I pray?
 quispiām, *any one; quidpiām,*
any thing
 quisquām, *any one; quidquām,*
any thing
 quisquē, quaequē, quidquē, quod-
 quē, *each one, any one*
 quisquis, quidquid, *whoever,*
whichever, whatever
 quivīs, quaevis, quidvis, quodvis,
every, every body; every thing

quō, *that, in order that, so that*
 quō, *whither; quō . . ēō, the . . the*
 quōdā, *as long as, up to, until*
 quōd, *because, that*
 quōdammodō, *in a measure*
 quodsi, *but if*
 quōminūs, *that not*
 quōmodō, *how*
 quonām, *whither pray?*
 quondām, *once, formerly*
 quonīām, *since, in as much as*
 quōquē, *also, too*
 quōt, *how many?*
 quōtidie see cōtidie
 quōtiens, *how often?*
 quōtūs, -ā, -ūm, *what? (in num-*
ber or order)
 quōtusquisquē, quōtāquaequē,
 quōtumquodquē, *how few?*
 quōusquē, *how long?*

R.

rābīōstūs, -ā, -ūm, *mad*
 rādīūs, -ī (m.), *a ray*
 rādix, -īcis (f.), *a root*
 rānā, -ae (f.), *a frog*
 rāpīnae, -ārūm (pl. f.), *plunder*
 rāpīō, rāpūī, raptūm, rāpērē,
to hurry
 rārītās, -ātīs (f.), *scarcity, in-*
frequency
 rārō, *seldom, rarely*
 rārūs, -ā, -ūm, *rare*
 rātīō, -ōnis (f.), *reason, reflec-*
tion; omni rātīōnē, in every
way
 rēcēdō, rēcēssī, rēcēssūm, rēcē-
 dērē, *to depart, move back-*
wards
 rēcīpīō, rēcēpī, rēcēptūm, rēcī-
 pērē, *to take back; sē rēcīpērē,*
to retreat; to betake one's self

rēctiō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
recite
 rēcordātiō, -ōnis (f.), *recollection*
 rēcordōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, to
remember
 rēcrēātiō, -ōnis (f.), *recreation*
 rēcrēōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, to re-
cover
 rectē, *right, rightly; rectē facērē,*
to do right
 rectōr, -ōris (m.), *master, ruler*
 rectūs, -ūs, -ūm, *right, straight;*
virtuous; rectā consiliā, good
advice
 rēcumbō, rēcūbui, (no sup.), -ērē,
to lie down
 rēcurreō, rēcurre, (no sup.), -ērē,
to return
 rēcūsō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
refuse
 reddō, reddidi, reddītūm, red-
 dērē, *to restore, return, to*
make; (Imāginēm) to reflect
 rēdō, rēdī, rēdītūm, rēdīrē,
to return
 rēdīmō, rēdēmī, rēdemptūm,
 rēdīmērē, *to buy, redeem*
 rēfērō, rētūli & rettūli, rēlā-
 tūm, rēferrē, *to carry back,*
refer, tell, relate; dōmūm rē-
ferrē, to carry home; pār pārī
rēferrē, to return like with like
 rēfert, *it concerns, matters*
 rēfertūs, -ūs, -ūm, *stuffed*
 rēflectō, rēflexī, rēflexūm, rē-
 flectērē, *to bend*
 rēformidō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē,
to dread
 rēgiā, -ae (f.), *a king's palace*
 rēginā, -ae (f.), *a queen*
 rēgiūs, -ūs, -ūm, *kingly [reign*
 regnō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to

regnūm, -ī (n.), *dominion, gov-*
ernment, kingdom
 rēgō, rexī, rectūm, rēgērē, to
rule, govern
 rēligiō, -ōnis (f.), *an oath; re-*
ligion
 rēlinquō, rēliquī, rēlictūm, rēlin-
 quērē, *to leave (behind)*
 rēliquā, -ōrūm (pl. n.), *the rest*
 rēmānēō, rēmānsī, (no sup.), rēma-
 nērē, *to stay*
 rēmēdiūm, -ī (n.), *a remedy*
 rēmīniscōr, (no perf.), rēmīniscī,
to remember
 rēmītō, rēmīsī, rēmissūm, rē-
 mittērē, *to slacken*
 Rēmūs, -ī (m.), *Remus, the broth-*
er of Romulus
 rēnuntiō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
bring back word
 rēpārō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
restore
 rēpellō, rēpūli, rēpulsūm, rēpel-
 lērē, *to repel; injūriām rē-*
pellērē, to prevent a wrong;
injūriām servitūtis depellērē,
to ward off the outrage of
slavery
 rēpentē, *suddenly*
 rēpēriō, rēpērī, rēpertūm, rēpē-
 rīrē, *to find; to devise*
 rēpētō, rēpētīvi, rēpētītūm, rē-
 pētērē, *to repeat*
 rēpētundae, -ārūm (pl. f.), *ex-*
tortion
 rēplēō, rēplēvi, rēplētūm, rē-
 plērē, *to fill*
 rēportō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
carry back
 rēprēhendō, rēprēhendī, rēprē-
 hensūm, rēprēhendērē, *to find*
fault with

rēpudiō, -āvi, -ātum, -ārē, to cast off

rēquirō, rēquisivi, rēquisitum, rēquirērē, to inquire into; to request

rēs, rēi (f.), a thing, affair, event, circumstance; rēs adversae, adversity; rēs familiāris, property; rēs prospērae, sēcundae, prosperity; rēs publicā, the commonwealth, state; republic; rēs militāris, military affairs; rēs novae, a revolution

rēsistō, resistī, (no sup.), rēsistērē, to offer resistance

respicō, respexi, respectum, respicērē ad, to look to; respicērē finem, to keep the goal in view

respondēō, respondi, responsum, respondērē, to answer, reply

responsum, -ī (n.), an answer

restitūō, restitui, restitutum, restitūērē, to restore, rebuild

rēsurgō, rēsurrexī, rēsurrectum, rēsurgērē, to rise again

rētardō, -āvi, -ātum, -ārē, to delay

rētē, -īs (n.), a net

rētīnēō, rētīnui, rētentum, rētīnērē, to detain

rēus, -ī (m.), the defendant; rēum facērē, to summon

rēvērēōr, -ītus sūm, -ērī, to respect, reverence, revere

rēvertōr, rēvertī (active), rēvertī, to return

rēvōcō, -āvi, -ātum, -ārē, to recall

rex, rēgis (m.), a king

Rhēa Silvīa, -ae -ae (f.), Rhea Silvia

Rhēnūs, -ī (m.), the Rhine
rhinōcērōs, -ōtis (m.), a rhinoceros

Rhōdāntīs, -ī (m.), the river Rhone
ridēō, risi, risum, ridērē, to laugh (at)

ridiculūs, -ūs, -ūm, silly

risūs, -ūs (m.), laughing

rītū, after the manner

rōbustūs, -ūs, -ūm, stout [at

rōdō, rōsi, rōsum, rōdērē, to carp

rōgātū, at the request

rōgō, -āvi, -ātum, -ārē, to ask, request, inquire

rōgūs, -ī (m.), a funeral pile

Rōmā, -ae (f.), Rome

Rōmānūs, -ūs, -ūm, Roman

Rōmūlūs, -ī (m.), Romulus

Roscīūs, -ī (m.), Roscius

rūbēr, -rā, -rūm, red

rūbigō, -inis (f.), rust

rūs, rūris (n.), the country; a farm; a field; rūri, in the country; rūrē, from the country; rūs, into the country

rusticūs, -ī (m.), a peasant

S.

Sābinūs, -ūs, -ūm, Sabine; Sābini, -ōrum (pl. m.), the Sabine territory

sācēr, -rā, -rūm, holy

sācrificiūm, -ī (n.), a sacrifice

saeculūm, -ī (n.), a generation

saepē, often, frequently; saepiūs, oftener; saepissimē, oftenest

saepēs, -īs (f.), a hedge

Sāguntūm, -ī (n.), the city of Saguntum

sāl, sālis (m.), salt

Sālāmis, -inis (f.), the island of Salamis (Aec. Sālāminā)

Sālōmōn, -ōnīs (m.), *Solomon*
saltō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
dance
saltūs, -ūm (pl. m.), *woods*
sālūbēr, -rīs, -rē, *salutary, salu-*
brious, wholesome
sālūs, -ūtīs (f.), *safety, welfare*
sālūtārīs, -ē, *beneficial*
sālūtō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
salute; to pay one's respects
sancō, **sancī**, **sancitūm** & **sanc-**
cītūm, **sancirē**, to *sanction;*
lēgēm sancirē, to pass a law
sanctītās, -ātīs (f.), *goodness*
sanctūs, -ā, -ūm, *sacred; sanc-*
tissimūs, sovereign
sānē, *indeed, certainly, of course*
sanguis, -inīs (m.), *blood*
sānītās, -ātīs (f.), *recovery*
sānō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to *heal*
sānūs, -ā, -ūm, *sound*
sāplēns, -tīs, *wise*
sāplentiā, -ae (f.), *wisdom*
sāpiō, **sāpivī** & **sāpīl**, (no sup.),
sāpērē, to be wise
sāpōr, -ōrīs (m.), *taste*
sarcīnae, -ārūm (pl. f.), *baggage*
Sardūs, -ī (m.), *a Sardinian*
sāt, **sātīs**, *enough, sufficiently*
sātēllēs, -ītīs (m.), *an attendant*
sātiō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
satiate, satisfy, glut
sātīs, *enough, sufficiently*
sātisfāciō, -fēcī, -factūm, -fā-
cērē, to discharge
Sātūrnūs, -ī (m.), *Saturn; Sā-*
turnī stellā, the planet Saturn
saxūm, -ī (n.), *a rock*
scālā, -ae (f.), *a ladder*
scēlērātūs, -ā, -ūm, *wicked*
scēlūs, -ērīs (n.), *a crime*
scēnīctūs, -ī (m.), *a stage player*

schōlā, -ae (f.), *a school*
sciēns, -tīs, *skilful, knowing(ly)*
sciēntiā, -ae (f.), *knowledge*
sciō, -īvi, -ītūm, -īrē, to *know*
Scīpiō, -ōnīs (m.), *Scipio, a Ro-*
man noble name
sciscītōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, to
inquire
scribō, **scripsī**, **scriptūm**, **seri-**
bērē, to *write*
scriptōr, -ōrīs (m.), *a writer*
Scythā, -ae (m.), *a Scythian*
sēcernō, **sēcrevī**, **sēcētūm**, **sē-**
cernērē, to *separate*
sēcētō, *privately*
sectōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, to *fol-*
low
sēcundūm (with *accus.*), *immedi-*
ately after, next to, according
to, along
sēcundūs, -ā, -ūm, *the second;*
rēs sēcundae, prosperity; for-
tūnā sēcundā, good fortune;
tempōrā sēcundā, prosperity
sēcūs, *otherwise*
sēd, *but*
sēdēs, -īs (f.), *a settlement*
sēditō, -ōnīs (f.), *sedition*
sējungō, **sējunxī**, **sējunctūm**, **sē-**
jungērē, to *separate*
Sēmīrāmīs, -īdīs (f.), *Semiramis*
sempēr, *always*
sempiternūs, -ā, -ūm, *eternal*
sēnātōr, -ōrīs (m.), *a senator*
sēnātūs, -ūs (m.), *the senate*
sēnectā, -ae (f.), *old age*
sēnectūs, -ūtīs (f.), *old age; sum-*
mā sēnectūs, extreme old age
sēnescō, **sēntīl**, (no sup.), **sēnes-**
cērē, to *decay*
sēnex, -īs (m.), *an old man; in*
one's old age

sensūs, -ūs (m.), a sense, sensibility; sensūs videndī, the sense of sight
 sententiā, -ae (f.), a sentence; opinion, sentiment; omnium iudicium sententiā, the unanimous decision of the judges
 sentiō, sensi, sensum, sentiŕē, to perceive, feel; to be aware of
 sēpārō, -āvi, -ātum, -ārē, to distinguish, separate
 septē, 7
 septimūs, -ā, -um, the seventh
 septingentēsimūs, -ā, -um, the 700th
 septuāgēsīmūs, -ā, -um, the 70th
 septuāgintā, 70
 sēpulcrum, -ī (n.), a tomb
 sēpultūrā, -ae (f.), a burial
 sēquor, sēcūtūs sum, sēqui, to follow; partēs sēqui, to take the side of
 sērēnūs, -ā, -um, serene
 sermō, -ōnis (m.), a talk, language
 sērō, sēvi, sātum, sērērē, to sow, plant
 serpens, -tis (m.), a serpent
 Sertoriūs, -ī (m.), Sertorius
 serviō, -īvi, -itum, -irē, to serve, be a slave
 servitūs, -ūtis (f.), slavery, servitude
 Serviūs Tulliūs, -ī -ī (m.), Servius Tullius
 servō, -āvi, -ātum, -ārē, to observe; to save; incolumēm servārē, to keep safe; in mēmōriā servārē, to keep in mind; iustitiām servārē, to observe justice
 servūs, -ī (m.), a slave, servant

sēvēritās, -ātis (f.), severe judgment
 sēvērūs, -ā, -um, severe
 sex, six
 sexāgintā, sixty
 sextāriūs, -ī (m.), a pint
 sextūs, -ā, -um, the sixth
 si, if; si mōdō, if only, provided that; si nōn, if not
 sic, so
 siccō, -āvi, -ātum, -ārē, to dry
 Siciliā, -ae (f.), Sicily
 sidūs, -ēris (n.), a star
 significō, -āvi, -ātum, -ārē, to give notice
 signum, -ī (n.), a sign
 silentium, -ī (n.), silence; silentiō, in silence
 silēō, -ui, (no sup.), -ērē, to be silent
 silvā, -ae (f.), a forest, wood
 similis, -ē, like
 similitudō, -inis (f.), resemblance
 simplex, -icis, simple
 simul, together
 simulāc, simulatquē, as soon as
 simulo, -āvi, -ātum, -ārē, to feign
 sin, but if, if not
 sincerūs, -ā, -um, sincere
 sinē (with ablat.), without
 singulī, -ae, -ā, one by one
 sinistēr, -rā, -rūm, left
 sinō, sivi, situm, sinērē, to let, suffer, permit
 siquidēm, since, inas much as
 sitiō, -īvi, -itum, -irē, to be thirsty, to thirst (for)
 sitis, -is (f.), thirst
 sitūs, -ūs (m.), the situation
 situs, -ā, -um, situated
 sivē, or; sivē...sivē, whether...or

societās, -ātis (f.), *society, companionship*

Socrātēs, -īs (m.), *Socrates*

sōdālīs, - (m.), *a schoolmate*

sōl, -īs (m.), *the sun*

sōlātiūm, -ī (n.), *a consolation*

sōlēō, sōlītūs sūm, sōlērē, to be wont, accustomed, to use

sōlitudō, -īnis (f.), *solitude*

sollertiā, -ae (f.), *skill*

Sōlōn, -ōnis (m.), *Solon*

sōlūm, -ī (n.), *the soil, land*

sōlūs, -ā, -ūm, *alone*

somnīō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to dream

somnīūm, -ī (n.), *a dream*

somnūs, -ī (m.), *sleep*

sōnitūs, -ūs (m.), *a sound*

Sōphoclēs, -īs (m.), *Sophocles*

sordidūs, -ā, -ūm, *mean*

sōrōr, -ōris (f.), *a sister*

sors, -tis (f.), *a lot*

Spartānūs, -ī (m.), *a Spartan*

spātiūm, -ī (n.), *space*

spēciēs, -ēi (f.), *appearance, show*

spectō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to view; to look to, at; to concern, to inquire into

spēcūlūm, -ī (n.), *a mirror*

spēluncā, -ae (f.), *a cave*

spērō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to hope for, expect

spēs, spēi, (f.), *hope*

splendēō, (no perf. & sup.), -ērē, to shine, to be bright

spōlīō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to plunder, strip

spontē, freely, of one's own accord

sqūamā, -ae (f.), *the scale (of a fish)*

stābīlis, -ē, *permanent*

stābilitās, -ātis (f.), *stability*

stādīūm, -ī (n.), *a race*

stātīm, at once, immediately

stātūō, stātūi, stātūtūm, stātūrē, to set, place; to decide

stātūrā, -ae (f.), *stature*

stellā, -ae (f.), *a star; stellā Vēnēris, the planet Venus; Sāturnī stellā, the planet Saturn*

stercūs, -ōris (n.), *dung*

stērīlis, -ē, *barren*

stīlūs, -ī (m.), *a stilus*

stīps, -īs (f.), *a root*

stō, stēti, stātūm, stārē, to stand; to cost

stōmāchūs, -ī (m.), *the stomach*

strātūm, -ī (n.), *a cloth*

stūdēō, -ūi, (no sup.), -ērē, to devote one's self; agricultūrae

stūdērē, to pursue agriculture

stūdīōsūs, -ā, -ūm, devoted to

stūdīūm, -ī (n.), *study; zeal;*

stūdīūm littērārūm, *love of letters; literary studies;*

sīnē irā et stūdīō, *without anger and partiality; stūdiā, -ōrūm, a pursuit*

stultītiā, -ae (f.), *folly*

stultūs, -ā, -ūm, *foolish; stultūs, -ī (m.), a fool*

sturnūs, -ī (m.), *a starling*

suādēō, suāsī, suāsūm, suādērē, to advise, recommend, persuade

sūāvītēr, quietly

sūb (with accus.), *under, about; (with ablat.), under, below*

sūbēō, sūbīi, sūbītūm, sūbīrē, to undergo

sūbīgō, subēgi, subactūm, subīgērē, to subdue

sūbitō, *on a sudden*
 sūbitūs, -ā, -ūm, *sudden*
 subjicīō, subjēcī, subjectūm,
 subjicērē, *to subject*
 subsēquōr, subsēcūtūs sūm, sub-
 sēquī, *to follow*
 subtēr (with *accus.*), *under, beneath*
 subvēnīō, subvēnī, subventūm,
 subvēnīrē, *to assist*
 successor, -ōris (m.), *a successor*
 succurrō, succurrī, succursūm,
 succurrērē, *to succor*
 sudōr, -ōris (m.), *perspiration*
 Sūebī, -ōrūm (pl. m.), *the Suebi*
 suggestūm, -ī (n.), *a platform*
 sugō, suxī, suctūm, sugērē,
to suck
 Sullā, -ae (m.), *Sulla, the cele-*
brated Roman dictator
 Sullānūs, -ā, -ūm, *of Sulla*
 sūm, fūī, essē, *to be; to be (worth);*
to cost; essē ālicūi cūm āliquo,
to have to do with; magnī essē,
to be of great account; plūris
essē, to be of more account, to
be worth more
 summūs, -ā, -ūm, *utmost, great-*
est, highest; summā omnīum
rērūm, the authority of all
things; summūs mons, the top
of a mountain
 sūmō, sumpsī, sumptūm, sū-
 mērē, *to take*
 sumptūs, -ūs (m.), *expense*
 supēr (with *accus.*), *over, above,*
on; supēr (with ablat.), con-
cerning
 sūperbiā, -ae (f.), *pride*
 sūperbiō, (no *perf. & sup.*), -īrē,
to pride one's self
 sūperbūs, -ā, -ūm, *proud*
 sūperiōr, -ūs, *upper*

sūpērō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, *to*
excel in; to conquer, overcome
 sūperstitiō, -ōnis (f.), *supersti-*
tion
 sūpervacūūs, -ā, -ūm, *needless*
 supplicīūm, -ī (n.), *punishment*
 supplicō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē,
to beg
 supponō, supposūī, suppositūm,
 supponērē, *to put under*
 suprà (with *accus.*), *above, more*
than, over
 surgō, surrexī, surrectūm, sur-
 gērē, *to rise, get up; cūbitū*
surgērē, to rise from bed
 suscipiō, suscepī, susceptūm,
 suscipērē, *to undertake*
 suspectūs, -ā, -ūm, *suspected*
 sustinēō, sustinūī, sustentūm,
 sustinērē, *to bear, assume,*
hold out
 sūūs, -ā, -ūm, *his, her, its,*
their (own); omniā sūā, all
one's property; sūī, -ōrūm,
those dear to one; one's family
 Sýracūsae, -ārūm (pl. f.), *Syra-*
cuse
 Sýriā, -ae (f.), *Syria*

T.

tābulā, -ae (f.), *a table*
 tacēō, -ūī, -itūm, -ērē, *to be*
still, silent
 Tācītūs, -ī (m.), *Tacitus, a cele-*
brated Roman historian
 tactūs, -ūs (m.), *touch*
 taedēt, *it wearies, tires; pertae-*
sūm est, taedērē
 taediūm, -ī (n.), *tedium*
 tālis, -ē, *such*
 tām, *so; tām...quām, so...as, so*
much as; both...and

tāmēn, *nevertheless*
 Tāmēsīs, - (f.), *the river Thames*
 tāmetsī, *although*
 tamquām, *as if*
 tandēm, *at length; pray*
 tangō, tēligī, tactūm, tangērē, *to touch; fulminē tangērē, to strike by lightning*
 tantidēm, *at the same price*
 tantō, *so much*
 tantūm, *only, but*
 tantūs, -ā, -ūm, *so great, so much*
 Tarquiniūs, -ī (m.), *Tarquin, king of the Romans*
 taurūs, -ī (m.), *a bull*
 tectūm, -ī (n.), *a roof*
 tēgō, texī, tectūm, tēgērē, *to cover, shelter*
 tēlūm, -ī (n.), *a weapon*
 tempērō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, *to rule; tempērārē alicūi, to spare; tempērārē ab ālquō, to abstain*
 tempestās, -ātīs (f.), *a storm, tempest*
 templūm, -ī (n.), *a temple*
 tempūs, -ōrīs (n.), *time; tempūs annī, a season; tempōrā sēcundā, prosperity; tempūs fūtūrūm, the future; tempūs matūtīnūm, morning; tempōrā -ūm (pl. n.), the temples*
 tēnēō, tēnūī, tentūm, tēnērē, *to hold, to keep up; mōdūm tēnērē, to observe a limit; rīsūm tēnērē, to keep laughing down*
 tēnēr, -ā, -ūm, *tender*
 tentō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, *to try, attempt*
 tēnūīs, -ē, *thin, slender*
 tēnūs (with abl.), *as far as*
 Tērentiūs, -ī (m.), *Terence, a celebrated comic poet*

terrā, -ae (f.), *the earth, land; a country; orbīs terrārūm, the world; terrā mārīquē, by land and sea; terrae mōtūs, an earthquake*
 terrestīs, -ē, *terrestrial; ānīmāl terrestrē, a land animal*
 terrōr, -ōrīs (m.), *terror*
 tertīūs, -ā, -ūm, *the third*
 testāmentūm, -ī (n.), *a will*
 testīs, - (m. & f.), *a witness; Dēō testē, calling on God to witness*
 testōr, -ātūs sūm, -ārī, *to testify*
 testūdō, -īnīs (f.), *a tortoise*
 texō, texūī, textūm, texērē, *to weave*
 Thālēs, -īs (m.), *Thales, one of the 7 wise men*
 Thēbānūs, -ī (m.), *a Theban*
 Thēmistōclēs, -īs (m.), *Themistocles, a celebrated Athenian commander*
 Thermōpylae, -ārūm (pl. f.), *Thermopylae*
 thēsaurūs, -ī (m.), *a treasure*
 Tibērīūs, -ī (m.), *Tiberius, a Roman name*
 tīgrīs, - (m.), *a tiger*
 tīmēō, -ūī, (no sup.), -ērē, *to fear, to be afraid*
 tīmīdūs, -ā, -ūm, *timid*
 Tīmōlēōn, -ontīs (m.), *Timoleon*
 tīmōr, -ōrīs (m.), *fear*
 tīngō, tīnxī, tīnctūm, tīngērē, *to dip*
 tītūbō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, *to stumble*
 tītūlūs, -ī (m.), *an inscription*
 Tītūs, -ī (m.), *Titus, a Roman emperor*
 tōlērābīlīs, -ē, *endurable*

tölerō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to endure, bear
 tollō, sustūli, sublātūm, tollērē, to take up
 Tōmŷris, - (f.), Tomyris, a Scythian queen
 tondēō, tōtondī, tonsūm, tondērē, to shear, shave
 tōnitrū, -ūs (n.), thunder
 tōnō, tōnūi, tōnitūm, tōnārē, to thunder
 tonsōr, -ōris (m.), a barber
 Torquātūs, -ī (m.), Torquatus
 tōt, so many
 tōtliens, so often
 tōtūs, -ā, -ūm, whole, all; wholly
 trādō, trādīdī, trādītūm, trādērē, to deliver; to betray
 trāgoediā, -ae (f.), a tragedy
 trāhō, traxī, tractūm, trāhērē, to draw, drag
 Trājānūs, -ī (m.), Trajan, a Roman emperor
 trājicō, trājecī, trājectūm, trājicērē, to cross over
 tranquillūs, -ā, -ūm, calm, tranquil
 trans (with accus.), across, over, beyond
 Transalpinūs, -ā, -ūm, Transalpine
 transducō, transduxī, transductūm, transducērē, to bring across
 transēō, transī, transitūm, transīrē, to pass (away); to cross
 transfērō, transtūli, translatūm, transferrē, to bring across
 transfigō, transfixī, transfixūm, transfigērē, to stab

transiliō, -ūi, (no sup.), -irē, to leap across
 transportō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to carry
 transversūs, -ā, -ūm, across; transversūs digītūs, a finger's breadth
 trēcentī, -ae, -ā, three hundred
 trēs, triā, three
 tribūō, tribūi, tribūtūm, tribūērē, to give, confer on;
 beneficiā tribūērē, to bestow benefits
 tricēsīmūs, -ā, -ūm, 30th
 triennīum, -ī (n.), 3 years
 trīgintā, thirty
 tristis, -ē, sad
 triumphō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to triumph
 triumphūs, -ī (m.), a triumph
 Trōjā, -ae (f.), the city of Troy
 Trōjānūs, -ā, -ūm, Trojan
 trucidō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to slay
 truncūs, -ī (m.), the trunk of a tree
 trux, trūcis, fierce
 tū, thou
 tūbā, -ae (f.), a trumpet
 tūbēr, -īs (n.), a lump
 tūēōr, -ītūs sūm, -ērī, to look to, protect
 Tullūs Hostiliūs, -ī -ī (m.), Tullus Hostilius
 tūm, then, at the time when;
 tūm...tūm, then...then
 turpis, -ē, shameful, disgraceful; base; turpiā, base actions
 turris, - (f.), a tower
 Tuscūlānūm, -ī (n.), a Tusculan farm
 tūtōr, -ōris (m.), a guardian
 tūtūs, -ā, -ūm, safe, secure

tūūs, -ā, -ūm, *thy, your*
tŷpōgrāphicūs, -ā, -ūm, *of*
printing; ars tŷpōgrāphicā,
the art of printing
tŷrannūs, -ī (m.), *a tyrant*
Tŷrūs, -ī (f.), *Tyre*

U.

ūbī, *where; ūbinām, where pray?*
ūbī terrārūm, *where in the*
world? ūbī, ūbī primūm, as
soon as
ūbīcunquē, *wherever; ūbīcunquē*
terrārūm, wherever in the world
ūbīquē, *everywhere*
ullūs, -ā, -ūm, *any*
ultīmūs, -ā, -ūm, *last*
ultrā (with *accus.*), *beyond, on the*
other side of, past
ultrō, *of one's own accord*
ūlūā, -ae (f.), *an owl*
umbrā, -ae (f.), *a shadow*
ūnā, *together; ūnā cūm, along*
with
undā, -ae (f.), *a wave*
undē, *whence; undēnām, whence*
pray?
undīquē, *on all sides, from every*
quarter
ungūlā, -ae (f.), *a hoof*
ūnīversūs, -ā, -ūm, *all (together),*
whole; hōmīnūm gēnūs ūnīver-
sūm, human race at large
unquām, *ever, at any time*
ūnūs, -ā, -ūm, *one*
ūnusquisquē, ūnaquaequē, ūnum-
quidquē, ūnumquodquē, *each*
one
urbānūs, -ā, -ūm, *belonging to*
the city, city-
urbs, -īs (f.), *a city*
urgens, -tīs, *pressing*

urgēō, ursī, (no *sup.*), urgērē, *to*
press
ursūs, -ī (m.), *a bear*
ūsītātūs, -ā, -ūm, *familiar*
usual
usquē, *ever*
usquē ad (with *accus.*), *until, up to*
usurpō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, *to*
usurp
ūsūs, -ūs (m.), *use, usage, prac-*
tice, experience; ūsūm afferrē,
to do service
ūt, *as; ūt...itā, ūt...sic, as...so;*
ūt (with subj.), in order that,
so that; suppose, granted that;
ūt nōn, so that not; ūt primūm,
as soon as; ūt sī, as if
ūtēr, -rā, -rūm, *which of the two*
ūtēr, -rīs (m.), *a leather bag*
ūterquē, ūtraquē, ūtrumquē, *both*
Ūticā, -ae (f.), *Utica*
ūtīlīs, -ē, *useful*
ūtīlītās, -ātīs (f.), *usefulness,*
use, utility, service; cūjūs ūtīl-
tātīs causā, for what purpose
ūtīnām, *O that, I wish that*
ūtōr, ūsūs-sūm, ūtī, *to use; em-*
ploy; consiliō ūtī, to follow
advice; lēgībūs ūtī, to obey the
laws; pātrē, āmicō ūtī, to have
a father, friend
ūtrūm, *whether; ūtrūm .. ān,*
whether...or
ūvā, -ae (f.), *the grape*
uxōr, -ōrīs (f.), *a wife, consort*

V.

vācō, -āvī, -ātūm, -ārē, *to be*
void of, free from; to be vacant
vācūūs, -ā, -ūm, *void, free*
vālēō, -ūī, -ītūm, -ērē, *to be*
worth, be in good health; be well

Valériŭs, -ī (m.), *Valerius*
vālētūdō, -īnis (f.), *health*; **vālētūdō** *prospērā*, *good health*
vālidŭs, -ā, -ūm, *strong*
vallŭm, -ī (n.), *a rampart*
vārīō, -āvi, -ātŭm, -ārē, *to vary*
vārīŭs, -ā, -ūm, *various*
vās -īs (n.), *a vessel*
vastŭs, -ā, -ūm, *vast*
 -vē, *or*
vectīgāl, -ālīs (n.), *income*
vēhēmens, -tis, *violent*
vēhēmentēr, *very loudly, furiously*
vēhō, **vexī**, **vectŭm**, **vēhērē**, *to carry*; **ēquō** **vēhī**, *to ride a horse*
Vējentēs, -īŭm (pl. m.), *the people of Veji*
Vējī, -ōrŭm (pl. m.), *Veji*
vēl, *even, or*; **vēl**.. **vēl**, *either..or*
vēlūt, *so to speak*; **vēlūt** **sī**, *as if*
vēnālīs, -ē, *for sale*
vendītōr, -ōrīs (m.), *a seller*
vendō, **vendīdī**, **vendītŭm**, **vendērē**, *to sell*
vēnēficiŭm, -ī (n.), *poisoning*
vēnēnŭm, -ī (n.), *poison*
vēnēō, **vēnī**, **vēnītŭm**, **vēnīrē**, *to be sold* (**vēnŭm** -ēō, *I go for sale*)
vēnērātīō, -ōnīs (f.), *respect*
vēnērōr, -ātŭs sŭm, -ārī, *to respect*
vēnīō, **vēnī**, **ventŭm**, **vēnīrē**, *to come*
vēnīrē *see* **vēnēō**
vēnōr, -ātŭs sŭm, -ārī, *to hunt*
ventŭrŭs, -ā, -ūm, *coming*
vēnŭm **dārē**, *to sell*
Vēnŭs, -ērīs (f.), *the goddess Venus*; **Vēnērīs** **stellā**, *the planet Venus*

vēr, **vērīs** (n.), *spring*
verbērō, -āvi, -ātŭm, -ārē, *to flog*
verbŭm, -ī (n.), *a word*
vērēcundŭs, -ā, -ūm, *modest*
vērēōr, -ītŭs sŭm, -ērī, *to fear*
Vergīlŭs, -ī (m.), *Virgil*
vergō, (no perf. & sup.), **vergērē**, *to decline*
vērī **simīlīs**, -ē, *probable*
vērītās, -ātīs (f.), *truth*
vērō, *but, yet, however; truly*
Verrēs, -īs (m.), *Verres*
versōr, **versātŭs** sŭm, **versārī**, *to keep company; to have to do with*
versŭs (with accus.), **toward**, -ward
versŭs, -ŭs (m.), *a verse*
vertō, **vertī**, **versŭm**, **vertērē**, *to turn; to interpret*
vērŭm, *but, yet*
vērŭm, -ī (n.), *truth*
vērŭs, -ā, -ūm, *true, real*
vescōr, (no perf.), **vescī**, *to feed, live upon*
Vespāsīānŭs, -ī (m.), *Vespasian*
vespēr, -ī (m.), *evening*
vespērī, *in the evening*
vestōr, -rā, -rŭm, *your*
vestigŭm, -ī (n.), *a footstep*
vestīō, -īvi, -ītŭm, -īrē, *to clothe*; **vestīrī**, *to clothe one's self*
vestīs, - (f.), *a garment*
Vēsivŭs, -ī (m.) *Vesuvius*
vētō, **vētŭl**, **vētītŭm**, **vētārē**, *to forbid*
vētŭs, -ērīs, *ancient; vētērēs, the ancients; vētŭs victōriā, the former victory; vētērā, the old state of things*
vexō, -āvi, -ātŭm, -ārē, *to rack*

viā, -ae (f.), a way, road; eādēm
viā, in the same way; viā et
rātīōnē, methodically
vicinūs, -ī (m.), a neighbor
victōr, -ōris (m.), a conqueror;
victorious
victōriā, -ae (f.), a victory
victrix, -icis (f.), a conqueror;
victorious
victūs, -ūs (m.), food
viciūs, -ī (m.), a village
vidēō, vidī, visūm, vidērē, to see
vidēōr, visūs sūm, vidērī, to
seem, appear
vigēō, (no perf. & sup.), -ērē, to
be in force; to thrive
vigilantiā, -ae (f.), vigilance,
wakefulness
vigiliae, -arūm (pl. f.), wakeful-
ness
vigilō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
wake
viginti, twenty
villā, -ae (f.), a country-seat
vincō, vici, victūm, vincērē, to
conquer, defeat, overcome
vinculā, -ōrūm (pl. n.), fetters
vinūm, -ī (n.), wine
violō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
injure
vir, -ī (m.), a man, husband
virgā, -ae (f.), a rod
virgō, -inis (f.), a girl
virtūs, -ūtis (f.), virtue, valor
vis, - (f.), power, violence, force;
virēs, -iūm, strength, energy;
vi, violently; vi et armis, by
force of arms; vi expugnārē,
to storm
visitō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
visit
visiōm, -ī (n.), a vision

vitā, -ae (f.), life
vitis, - (f.), a vine
vitiūm, -ī (n.), a vice, fault, de-
fect
vitō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
shun, avoid
vitreūs, -ā, -ūm, of glass
vitūpērō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to
find fault with, to blame
vivō, vixi, victūm, vivērē, to
live
vivūs, -ā, -ūm, living, alive
vix, hardly
vixdūm, hardly yet
vōcō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to call,
name
vōlens, -tis, willing (ly)
vōlō, -āvi, -ātūm, -ārē, to fly
vōlō, vōlūi, (no sup.), vellē, to be
willing, wish for, like, want
vōluntās, -ātis (f.), the will; vō-
luntātē, voluntarily
vōluptās, -ātis (f.), pleasure
vōs, you
vox, vōcis (f.), a voice, language;
vōcēs, speech
Vulcānūs, -ī (m.), Vulcan
vulgūs, -ī (n.), the rabble
vulnūs, -ērīs (n.), a wound
vulpēs, -īs (f.), a fox

X.

Xanthippō, -ēs (f.), Xanthippe
Xēnōcrātēs, -īs (m.), Xenocrates
Xerxēs, -īs (m.), Xerxes, king
of Persia

Z.

Zāmā, -ae (f.), Zama
Zeuxis, - (m.), Zeuxis, a famous
Grecian painter
Zōpŷrūs, -ī (m.), Zopyrus

2. ENGLISH AND LATIN VOCABULARY.

NOTE. For the principal parts of verbs and the inflection of nouns and pronouns, see Vocabulary No. 1.

A.

the abdomen, abdomen
to abet, adjuvare
ability, facultas
to be able, posse, quire; *not to be able*, nequire
an abode, domicilium
to abolish, abolere
to abound, abundare
about, circiter, sub, circa, circum, de; *about to be*, futurus; *to be about to be*, fore
above, super, supra
abroad, foris; *a fire abroad*, ignis alienus
absent, absens
to abstain, abstinere, temperare
abundance, copia; *to have abundance*, abundare
abuse, abusus
to abuse, abuti
abusive language, convicia
to accept, accipere
acceptable, acceptus
easy access, facilitas
an accident, casus
accidental, fortuitus
to accompany, comitari
to accomplish, conficere, efficere
of one's own accord, sponte, ultro
according to, secundum
accordingly, proinde
on account, causa, ob, propter, ergo, prae; *on what account*,

quam ob causam; *on that account*, ideo; *to be of great account*, magni esse; *to be of more account*, pluris esse
accurate, accuratus
to accuse, accusare, arguere, incusare, insimulare
to accustom one's self, assuescere; *to be accustomed*, solere, assuescere, consuescere
Achilles, Achilles
an acorn, glans
to make the acquaintance, cognoscere
to acquire, acquirere, adipisci; *to acquire possession of*, potiri
to acquit, absolvere
across, trans; transversus
to act, agere
an action, factum; *base actions*, turpia
an actor, histrio
adapted, accommodatus [cere
to add, addere, adjicere, admis-
to adjust, accommodare
admiration, admiratio
to admire, admirari
to adorn, ornare
advantage, fructus
adverse, adversus
adversity, res adversae, casus adversi
to advertise, praedicare
advice, consilium; *good advice*, recta consilia

to advise, monere, suadere
the Aedui, Aedui
Aeneas, Aeneas
an affair, res, negotium; *military affairs*, res militaris; *public affairs*, res publica
to affect, afficere
affection, caritas
to affirm, affirmare
to afford, praestare, praebere
afoot, pedibus
to be afraid, timere
Africa, Africa
after, post, postquam; *after that*, postquam
afternoon, postmeridianus
afterwards, deinde, postea
again, iterum; *again and again*, iterum atque iterum
against, adversus, adversum, contra, in (w. accus.)
Agamemnon, Agamemnon
an age, aetas; *in one's old age*, senex
Agesilaus, Agesilaus
ago, abhinc
agreeable, dulcis, jucundus
it is agreed, constat, convenit
agriculture, agricultura
aid, auxilium
the air, aër
Albert, Albertus
Alcibiades, Alcibiades
Alexander, Alexandria
Alexandria, Alexandria
to alienate, alienare
to alight, considerare
alive, vivus
alkaline, nitrosus
all, omnis, totus; *all together*, cuncti, universus
allied, foederatus

it is allowed, licet
to allure, illicere
almost, fere, ferme, paene; *almost like*, prope ut
alone, solus
along, secundum, praeter; *along with*, una cum
the Alps, Alpes
already, jam
also, quoque, etiam
although, etiamsi, etsi, tametsi, quamquam, quamvis
always, semper
an ambassador, legatus
America, America
among, inter, apud; *among the foremost*, in primis
amusement, lusus
the ancestors, majores
Ancharius, Ancharius
Anchises, Anchises
ancient, antiquus, vetus
anciently, antiquitas
Ancus Marcius, Ancus Marcius
and, et, -que, ac, atque; *and not*, neque, nec, neve
anger, ira; *without anger and partiality*, sine ira et studio
an angler, piscator
angry, iratus; *to be angry*, irasci
an animal, animal; *a land animal*, animal terrestre
to be annoyed, moleste ferre
another, alius
an answer, responsum
to answer, respondere
an ant, formica
Anthony, Antonius
Antiochus, Antiochus
antiquity, antiquitas
Antoninus Pius, Antoninus Pius
anxious, anxius

any, nullus; any one, aliquis, quispam, quisquam, quisque, quilibet; any thing, aliquid, quidpam, quidquam; anything else, alia omnia

Apelles, Apelles

Apollo, Apollo

to appear, apparere, videri

appearance, species, adspectus

to appease, lenire, placare

an appellation, appellatio

an appetizer, condimentum

to apply, adhibere, applicare

to appoint, designare, constituere

to approach, advenire, appropinquare

to approve, probare

apt, aptus

an Arabian, Arabs

an Arcadian, Arcas

Archimedes, Archimedes

Ardea, Ardea

ardent, acerrimus

ardently, ardentem

the Areopagus, Areopagus

Arganthonius, Arganthonius

Argos, Argi

Arion, Arion

Ariovistus, Ariovistus

to arise, oriri

Aristaeus, Aristaeus

Aristides, Aristides

Aristotle, Aristoteles

an armed man, armatus

arms, arma

an army, exercitus

around, circum

to arouse, excitare

arrangement, compositio

to arrive, advenire, pervenire

an art, ars; the art of printing, ars typographica; the art of

speaking, eloquentia; works of art, ornamenta

artificial, artificiosus

an artist, artifex

an as, as

as, ut; as if, quasi, velut si, tamquam, ut si, proinde ac si or

quasi; as far as, tenus; as long as, dum, donec, quoad, quam

diu; as great as, quantus; as it were, quasi; as much as, aequae ac, quantum; as...so, ut

...sic; quemadmodum...ita; as soon as, ubi, ubi primum, ut

primum, simulac, simulatque; as well as, tam...quam

to ascertain, comperire

Asia, Asia

to ask, orare, rogare, interrogare, quaerere, poscere, postulare, flagitare

an ass, asinus

assault, impetus

to assemble, cogere, congregari

an assembly, concio

to assist, juvare, adjuvare, subvenire

assistance, auxilium, praesidium

to assuage, mollire, lenire

to assume, sustinere

to be astonished, obstupescere

Astyages, Astyages

at, apud

an Athenian, Atheniensis

Athens, Athenae

Atilius, Atilius

to attack, adoriri, petere

to attain, consequi

Attalus, Attalus

to attempt, tentare

to attend upon, prosequi

an attendant, satelles

attentive, attentus
Atticus, Atticus
Augustus, Augustus
the authority of all things, summa
omnium rerum
autumn, autumnus
to avail, juvare
avarice, avaritia
to be averse, abhorre
to avoid, fugere, vitare
to be aware of, sentire
an axis, axis

B.

Babylon, Babylon
bad, malus, pravus; bad fortune,
adversa fortuna
badly, male
baggage, sarcinae
a bait, esca
baldness, calvitium
Balearic, Balearis
a ball, globus [interdicere
to banish, depellere, aqua et igni
a barbarian, barbarus
a barber, tonsor
the bark, cortex
to bark, latrare
barren, sterilis
base, turpis; base actions, turpia
a battle, proelium, acies, pugna
to be, esse; to be about to be, fore;
I should be, forem
to bear, ferre, perferre, tolerare,
sustinere
a bear, ursus
a beast, bestia; a wild beast, fera
beautiful, pulcher
beauty, pulchritudo
because, quod, quia
to become, fieri, evadere, exsistere
it becomes, decet

a bed, lectulum; to go to bed, cu-
bitum ire; to rise from bed,
cubitu surgere.
a bee, apis
before, ante, ob, prae; antequam,
priusquam; before that, antequam,
priusquam, antea
to beg, supplicare
to begin, incipere, coepisse
a beginning, initium, principium;
in the beginning, initio; in the
beginning of spring, primo
vere
to behave, se gerere
behind, post
it behooves, oportet
the Belgians, Belgae
belief, fides
to believe, credere, existimare
the belly, alvus
below, sub, infra
to bend, reflectere
beneath, subter, infra
beneficence, beneficentia
beneficial, salutaris
a benefit, beneficium
to benefit, prodesse
to beseech, orare, obsecrare, pe-
tere; I beseech, quaeso
beside, juxta
besides, praeter
to besiege, obsidere, oppugnare
best, optimus
to bestow benefits, beneficia tri-
buere
to betake one's self, se recipere
to betray, tradere
better, melior; it is better, prae-
stat
between, inter
to beware of, cavere
beyond, ultra, trans, extra

to bid, licēri
big, magnus
a bird, avis
by birth, natu
a birthday, (dies) natalis
a bit, frena, freni
to bite, mordere
Bithynia, Bithynia
bitter, acerbus, acer
black, niger
to blame, vituperare
to bless, benedicere
blessed, beatus
blessings, bona
blind, caecus
blood, sanguis
in blossom, florens
a wild boar, aper
to boast, gloriari, praedicare
a body, corpus
boldness, contumacia
a book, liber
borders, fines
born, natus; innatus; *to be born*,
 nasci
both, ambo, uterque; *both...and*,
 et...et, tam...quam; *both...and*
 especially, cum...tum
to set bounds, moderari
bounty, munificentia
a bow, arcus
a boy, puer
brass, aëneus
brave, fortis
bravely, fortiter
bravery, fortitudo
bread, panis [digitus
a finger's breadth, transversus
to break, frangere, infringere; *to*
break into, ingruere; *to break*
out, erumpere; (of war) exar-
 descere

breakfast, jentaculum
the breast, pectus
a breeze, aura
a bridle, frenum
bright, clarus, luculentus; *to be*
bright, splendere
to bring, afferre, ducere; *to bring*
about, conciliare; *to bring*
across, transferre, transducere;
to bring back, referre; *to bring*
to, afferre; *to bring together*,
 conferre, colligere; *to bring*
up, educare; *to bring into*
danger, in periculum mittere;
to bring death upon one's
self, mortem sibi consciscere;
to bring destruction upon, in-
 teritum parare; *to bring great*
disgrace, magno dedecori esse;
to bring to light, patefacere; *to*
bring word, nuntiare, renun-
 tiare
 (Great) Britain, Britannia
a Briton, Britannus
broad, latus
a brother, frater
Bruno, Bruno
Brutus, Brutus
to build, aedificare, struere, ex-
 struere
a building, aedificium
a bull, taurus
a burden, onus
burdensome, gravis
a burial, sepultura
to burn, ardere, incendere, com-
 burere
a burning, incendium
to burst from, erumpere
to bury, obruere
business, negotium
to be busy, operari

but, sed, autem, at, vero, verum;
tantum, non nisi; but if, sin,
quodsi; but not, neque tamen;
but for all that, atqui
a butcher, lanius
to buy, emere, redimere, mer-
cari; dear, male; cheap, bene
a buyer, emptor
by, a, ab; per

C.

Caesar, Caesar; of Caesar, Caesa-
rianus

calamity, calamitas, acerbum

California, California

Caligula, Caligula

to call, appellare, vocare, nomi-
nare, dicere; to call in, accire;
calling on God to witness, Deo
teste

calm, tranquillus

a calumniator, maledicus

a camel, camelus

Camillus, Camillus

a camp, castra

a Campanian, Campanus

Caninius, Caninius

Cannae, Cannae

capable, compos; capable of en-
during, patiens

the Capitol, Capitolium

captive, captus, bello captus

to capture, expugnare

care, cura; to take care, curare

to care for, consulere, cavere,
curare; to care little for, pa-
rum desiderare; to care not a
lock of wool (a straw) for,
floci facere

careful, diligens

careless, neglegens

to carp at, rodere

to carry, ferre, portare, gestare,
transportare, vehere; to carry
away, abducere; to carry back,
referre, reportare; to carry be-
fore, praeferre; to carry home,
domum referre; to carry on,
gerere

Carthage, Carthago

a Carthaginian, Carthaginiensis
to carve upon, incidere

Cassius, Cassius

to cast off, repudiare

to catch, capere

Catiline, Catilina [major

Cato, Cato; Cato the elder, Cato

cattle, pecus

a cause, causa

it causes sorrow, puenitet

cautious, cautus

cavalry, equites

a cave, spelunca

to cease, desinere

celebrated, celebrer, nobilis

a censor, censor

Ceres, Ceres

certain, certus; certainly, certe;
sane; a certain one, quidam

a chain, catena

a chance, casus; by chance, casu
change, mutatio

to change, mutare

character, mores

characteristic, proprius

to charge, accusare, arguere, in-
simulare

charity, misericordia

Charles, Carolus

to chastise, castigare

cheap, bene

to check, prohibere

a cheek tooth, dens genivinus

cheerful, hilarius

a cheese, caseus
a chest, cista
to chew, conficere
a chief, princeps
chiefly, inprimis, maxime
a child, infans; children, liberi
childhood, pueritia
Chilo, Chilo
to chirrup (of the cricket), can-
tare
to choose, eligere
Christ, Christus
a Christian, Christianus
Cicero, Cicero
Cimon, Cimon
Cincinnatus, Cincinnatus
a circle, orbis
a circumstance, res
Cisalpine, Cisalpinus
a citadel, arx
a citizen, civis
a city, urbs; civitas; belonging to
the city, urbanus; city-man-
ners, mores urbani; city-walls,
moenia
civil, civilis
to clank, crepare
a class of animals, animalium
genus
clear, perspicuus, pellucidus, di-
lucidus; it is clear, apparet
clemency, clementia
Cleopatra, Cleopatra
to climb up, ascendere
Clitus, Clitus [tum
cloth, linteum; (of a horse) stra-
to clothe, vestire; to clothe one's
self, vestiri
clouds, nubila
cloudy, nubilus
a coast, ora
cold (subst.), frigus

cold (adj.), frigidus
Collatinus, Collatinus
to collect, colligere; to collect into
a flock, congregare
color, color
a comb, pecten
to come, venire; come, age; come
here, accede; to come down,
descendere; to come from, pro-
ficisci; to come in, ingredi; to
come off, exire; to come to the
throne, ad imperium accedere
a comedy, comoedia
a comet, cometes
coming, futurus, venturus
to command, imperare
to commingle, admiscere
to commit, committere
common, communis
commonly, plerumque
the commonwealth, res publica
a companion, comes
companionship, societas
to keep company, versari
to compare, comparare
in comparison with, prae
to compel, cogere
to complete, conficere
completely, plane
complexion, color
to compose a tragedy, tragoediam
facere
to comprehend, intellegere
to conceal, occultare, celare
to concern, spectare
concerning, de, super
it concerns, interest, refert
to conclude, conficere; ducere
concord, concordia
to condemn, damnare, condem-
nare; to condemn to death, ca-
pitis damnare

condemning, damnatio
a condition, condicio; locus
to conduct, deducere
to confer on, tribuere, deferre;
to confer benefits, beneficia
 conferre
to confess, fateri
to confide, fidere, confidere
confidence, fiducia
to congratulate, gratulari
to conquer, vincere, superare
a conqueror, victor, victrix
conscience, conscientia
in consequence of, propter, causa
consequently, ergo
to consider, judicare, habere,
 putare, arbitrari
with consideration, considerate
to consist of, consistere, con-
 stare
consistently with, pro
a consolation, solatium
a consort, uxor
a conspiracy, conjuratio
a conspirator, conjuratus
constant, perpetuus, constans
constantly, perpetuo
physical constitution, natura cor-
 poris
to construct, exstruere
a consul, consul
consulship, consulatus
to consult, consultare; *to consult*
the interest of some one, con-
 sulere alicui; *to consult some*
one, consulere aliquem
to consume, consumere
to contain, continere
a contemporary, aequalis
content, contented, contentus
a contest, certamen
to continue, permanere

to contract, contrahere
contrary, contrarius; *contrary*
to, contra; *on the contrary*,
 immo
to control, continere; *to get con-*
trol of affairs, rerum potiri
convenient, accommodatus
conveniently, commode
to converse, colloqui
to convict, coarguere, convincere
to convince, persuadere
to be copied, describendus
Corinth, Corinthus
a Corinthian, Corinthius
corn, frumentum
Cornelia, Cornelia
a corner, angulus
to correct, corrigere
to corrupt, corrumpere
to cost, esse, stare, constare
a council, consilium
counsel, consilium
to count, numerare; *to count it a*
praise, laudi ducere
the country, rus; *a country*, terra;
one's (own) country, patria;
from the country, rure; *in the*
country, ruri; *into the country*,
 rus
a country seat, villa
courage, fortitudo
a course, cursus; *of course*, sane
a court, iudicium
to cover, obducere, tegere
covered with, plenus
to covet, cupere
coward(ly), ignavus
cowardice, ignavia
a crash, fragor
Crassus, Crassus
craving, latrans
craving for more, cupido

to creak, crepare
to create, creare
credible, credibilis
credit, fides
credulous, credulus
Crete, Creta
a cricket, cicada
a crime, crimen, facinus, scelus
a crocodile, crocodilus
Croesus, Croesus
crooked, flexuosus
cross, morosus
to cross, to cross over, transire,
trajicere
to crowd, convenire
crowded, frequens
a crown, corona
to crown, coronare
cruel, crudelis; a cruel battle,
atrox proelium
cruelty, crudelitas
to crush, opprimere
to cry, plorare; to cry out, cla-
mare
a cubit, cubitum
a cuckoo, cuculus
to cultivate, exercere, colere
cultivation, cultura
a cup, poculum
to cure, mederi, curare
to curse, maledicere
custom, mos
to cut off, abscindere, amputare
Cyrus, Cyrus

D.

a dagger, pugio
daily, cotidie, cottidie, quotidie
to dance, saltare
danger, periculum
dangerous, periculosus
to dare, audere

Dareus, Darius
daring, audax
a daughter, filia
David, Davides
a day, dies; the day before, pridie
quam; (the day of) to-morrow,
dies crastinus; every day, coti-
die, cottidie, quotidie; for the
day, in diem; the other day,
nuper; two days, biduum
daybreak, prima lux
dead, mortuus
dear, carus; those dear to one, sui;
to sell dear, bene vendere
death, mors; violent death, nex;
to condemn to death, capitis
damnare
to decay, senescere
to deceive, fallere
a decemvir, decemvir
to decide, statuere
a decision, sententia
to declare, declarare, judicare;
to declare war, bellum indicere
to decline, vergere
a decoration, ornamentum
to decry, obtrectare
to dedicate, consecrare
a deed, facinus, factum; evil
deeds, prave facta; a shame-
ful deed, flagitium
to deem worthy, dignari
deep, altus
to defeat, vincere
a defect, vitium
to defend, defendere
the defendant, reus
a defender, defensor
to this degree, eo, huc; in a high
degree, admodum
delay, dilatio
to delay, retardare

*to deliberate, consultare, delibe-
rare*
deliberation, deliberatio
*to delight, delectare, gaudere,
laetari*
*to deliver, tradere, liberare, eri-
pere; to deliver a speech, ora-
tionem habere*
*Delphi, Delphi; of Delphi, Del-
phicus*
Delphic, Delphicus
*to demand, poscere, postulare,
flagitare*
Democritus, Democritus
to demolish, diruere
Demosthenes, Demosthenes
dense, crassus
to deny, negare
*to depart, exire, discedere, rece-
dere, profisci, decedere; to de-
part from life, vita decedere*
departure, discessus
to deprive, orbare, privare
deprived of, orbus
to describe, describere
*to deserve, merere, mereri; not
to deserve, non satis dignum
esse*
deservedly, merito
deserving, meritus
a design, consilium
desirable, optabilis, expetendus
desire, cupiditas, cupido, libido
*to desire, optare, cupere, exop-
tare, desiderare*
desirous, cupidus
to despair, desperare
*to despise, contemnere, despi-
cere*
destiny, fatum
*to destroy, delere; to destroy by
fire, incendio absumere*

destruction, interitus
to detain, retinere
to detect, detegere
to deter, detertere
to determine, constituere
a devastation, populatio
to devise, reperire, invenire
to devote one's self, studere
*devoted to, studiosus; to be devot-
ed to, deservire*
to devour, devorare
to dictate, dictare
a dictator, dictator
to die, mori, obire
difficult, difficilis
to differ, abhorre
*it makes no difference, nihil in-
terest*
differant, diversus
to diffuse, diffundere
to dig, fodere
dignity, dignitas
diligence, diligentia
diligent, diligens
dim, hebes
to diminish, minuire
to dine, cenare
*dinner, cena; after dinner, ce-
natus*
Dio, Dio
Diogenes, Diogenes
Dionysius, Dionysius
to dip, tingere
*to disagree, dissentire, discrepare,
differre, distare*
disagreeable, injucundus
to disappear, evanescere
to disband, dimittere
to discern, cernere
*to discharge, fungi, defungi, sa-
tisfacere*
a discipline, disciplina

to discipline, castigare
discord, discordia, discidium
to discourse, disserere
to discover, detegere
a disease, morbus
a disgrace, dedecus, ignominia
disgraceful, turpis
it disgusts, piget
a dish, ferculum
to be disheartened, animos de-
mittere
dishonor, infamia
to dismiss, dimittere
to displease, displicere
(natural) disposition, ingenium,
indoles
to dispute, disputare
disregard, derelictio
to dissuade, dissuadere
at a distance, procul
to be distant, distare
to distinguish, discernere, di-
stinguere, separare; to distin-
guish one's self, excellere
distinguished, praestabilis, prae-
stans; to be distinguished,
florere
to distrust, diffidere
to disturb, perturbare
a ditch, fossa
to divide, dividere
divine, divinus
to do, facere, agere, gerere; to do
good, prodesse; to do harm,
nocere; to do right, recte fa-
cere; to do service, munus,
usum afferre; to do without,
carere; to do no work, nihil
laborare; nothing to do, nihil
negotii
a dog, canis
a dolphin, delphinus

dominion, regnum
a donkey, asellus
a door, ostium; out doors, foras;
out of doors, foris; to the doors,
foras
to double, geminare
to doubt, dubitare; there is no
doubt, dubium non est
doubtful, dubius
to be down, jacere
downwards, deorsum
a dowry, dos
to drag, trahere; to drag out,
ernere
to draw, trahere; to draw after,
ductare; to draw enmities
upon one's self, inimicitias sibi
conciliare
to dread, reformidare
a dream, somnium
to dream, somniare
drink, potus, potio
to drink, bibere
to drive, impellere; to drive
away, expellere; to drive from,
pellere, depellere, ejicere
a driver, bubulcus
drooping, caducus
the Druids, Druides
to dry, siccare
a duck, anas
to be due, deberi
dull, hebes
dumb, mutus, infans
dung, stercus
during, per
dust, pulvis
a duty, officium
to dwell, habitare
dying, moribundus

E.

each one, unusquisque, quisque
eager, cupidus
eagerness, aviditas
an eagle, aquila
the ear, auris
early, antiquus; *early in the morning*, mane; *right early in the morning*, bene mane
to earn, consequi
earnestly, graviter
the earth, terra
an earthquake, terrae motus
an ear-witness, testis auritus
of ease, otiosus
easily, facile
the east, oriens
easy, facilis; *easy access*, facilitas
to eat (up), edere
an eclipse, defectio, eclipsis
to educate, educare
education, educatio; *litterae*
effeminate, mollis
an egg, ovum
Egypt, Aegyptus
an Egyptian, Aegyptius
eight, octo
the eighteenth, duodevicesimus
eighty, octoginta
either . . or, aut . . aut; *vel . . vel*
elder, major natu
to elect, creare, eligere
elegance, elegantia
an element, elementum; *the elements of education*, litterarum elementa
an elephant, elephanta, elephas
eloquence, eloquentia
eloquent, eloquens, disertus
eloquently, eloquenter
elsewhere, alibi

an embassy, legatio
to embrace, complecti
an emperor, imperator
an empire, imperium
to employ, uti
to emulate, aemulari
an end, finis
endowed with, praeditus, particeps
endurable, tolerabilis
to endure, tolerare, pati
an enemy, adversaria, adversarius, inimicus, hostis
energy, vires
English, Anglicus
to engrave, incidere
to enjoy, frui; *to enjoy fully*, perfrui
enjoyment, jucunditas
to enlarge, amplificare
enmity, odium, inimicitia
Ennius, Ennius
enough, sat, satis
to enter, intrare
entire, omnis
to entreat, petere
to enumerate, enumerare
an envoy, orator
envy, invidia
to envy, invidere
Epaminondas, Epaminondas
Ephesus, Ephesus
an Epicurean, Epicureus
an Epirote, Epirotes
an epistle, litterae
equal, par; *to be equal*, aequare
equally, aequaliter, aequè
to eradicate, exstirpare
to erect monuments, monumenta ponere
to err, errare
error, error

an eruption, conflagratio
to escape, fugere, effugere; it es-
capes my notice, fallit me, fu-
git me, praeterit me
especially, inprimis, maxime,
praecipue
to establish, confirmare, insti-
tuere, constituere
an estate, praedium
to esteem, aestimare, to esteem
lightly, parvi pendere; to esteem
of more value, pluris aestimare
to estimate, aestimare
eternal, aeternus, sempiternus
Euphrates, Euphrates
Europe, Europa
even, aequus, par
even, etiam, et, vel; even if,
etiamsi; even now, etiamnunc
evening, vesper; in the evening,
vesperi
the evening star, Hesperus
an event, res
ever, usque, unquam
every, omnis, quivis; every body,
every one, quivis, quilibet,
quisque; every thing, quidvis,
quodvis
everywhere, ubique
it is evident, constat
an evil, malum; evil deeds, prave
facta
exactly, atqui
to examine, inspicere
an example, exemplum
to exceed, excedere
to excel in, superare
excellent, praestabilis, praestans,
praeclarus, excellens
except, praeter, nisi, extra
excessive, nimius
excessively, immodice

to exchange, permutare
to excite, excitare, permovere
exercise, exercitatio
to exercise, exercere, experiri
to exhort, hortari, adhortari; to
exhort earnestly, graviter ad-
hortari
exile, exsilium
to expect, sperare, expectare
to expel, expellere
expense, sumptus
experience, usus, experientia
experienced, peritus
to expire, expirare
to explain, explanare
to explore, explorare
to expose, exponere
to extol, extollere
extortion, repetundae
extraordinary, inusitatus
extreme, extremus, summus
the eye, oculus; an eye-witness,
oculatus testis

F.

Fabia Dolabella, Fabia Dolabella
Fabius Pictor, Fabius Pictor
a fable, fabula
Fabricius, Fabricius
fabulous, fabulosus
in fact, profecto
faculty, facultas
fair, aequus, par
faith, fides
faithful, fidus, fidelis
to fall, cadere, labi; to fall away,
dilabi; to fall down, decidere;
to fall to the ground, corruere;
to fall into, incidere
fallen, lapsus
false, falsus
a falsehood, mendacium, falsa

falsely, falso
familiar, usitatus
one's family, sui
famous, clarus, celebr
by far, longe
a farm, rus
a farmer, agricola
farther, longius
a farthing, as
fat, pinguis
a father, pater; the father of a
family, paterfamilias
fault, culpa, vitium, delictum; to
find fault with, reprehendere,
vituperare
favor, gratia; benefactum
to favor, favere, indulgere
fear, timor, metus
to fear, timere, metuere, vereri
a feast, convivium
a feather, pluma
feeble, imbecillus
to feed upon, vesci
to feel, sentire
to feign, simulare, assimilare
a fellow-citizen, civis
a fellow-countryman, popularis
a fellow-soldier, commilito
fertility, fertilitas
fetters, vincula
few, a few, pauci
a field, ager, rus
fierce, trux
the fifth, quintus
the fiftieth, quinquagesimus
a fight, pugna
to fight, dimicare, pugnare, proe-
liari; to fight a battle, pugnam
committere
figure, forma
to fill, complere, explere, imple-
re, replere

finally, postremo
to find, reperire; to find (out),
invenire, investigare; to find
fault with, reprehendere, vitu-
perare; to find guilty, damnare,
condemnare
fine, pulcher
in fine, denique
a finger, digitus; a finger's
breadth, transversus digitus
to finish, finire, absolvere
finished, peractus
fire, ignis; incendium
firm, firmus
first, primus, prior, princeps; at
first, primo, primum
a fish, piscis
to fish, piscari
fit, idoneus
fitted, fitting, aptus; it is fitting,
convenit
five, quinque
to fix in, infigere
fixed, fixus
a flash of lightning, fulgur
flattering, blandus
to flee, fugere, aufugere, confugere
a fleet, classis
flesh, caro
a flight, fuga; to put to flight,
fugare
to flock, confluere
to flog, verberare
to flourish, florere
to flow through, permeare
a flower, flos
a fly, musca
to fly, fugere; volare; to fly away,
off, avolare, devolare
to follow, sequi, subsequi, sec-
tari, consequi; to follow ad-
vice, consilio uti

folly, stultitia
fond, amans
food, victus, cibus, escae
a fool, insipiens, stultus
foolish, stultus
a foot, pes
a foot-soldier, pedes
a footstep, vestigium
for (prep.), pro, prae, per, ob, in;
for, (conj.), nam, namque, enim,
etenim
to forbid, vetare, interdicere
forbidden, nefas
force, vis; forces, copiae; to be in
force, vigere; by force of arms,
vi et armis
to force, cogere
the forehead, frons
a foreigner, peregrinus
among the foremost, in primis
to foresee, providere, prospicere
a forest, silva
to forget, oblivisci
forgetful, immemor
former, hic, ille, prior; the former
victory, vetus victoria
formerly, olim, quondam, antea
to forsake, deserere
a fort, castellum, castrum
to fortify, munire
fortunate, fortunatus
fortune, fortuna; good fortune,
felicitas, fortuna secunda
forty, quadraginta
the forum, forum
to found, condere
to the foundation, funditus
four, quattuor; four by four, qua-
terni
four hundred, quadringenti
the four hundredth, quadringen-
tesimus

the fourth, quartus
a fox, vulpes
frailly, fragilitas
a fraud, fraus
fraudulently, dolo, fraude
free, liber, expers, vacuus; I
am free, mihi licet; to be free
from, vacare
to free, liberare
freely, libenter, sponte
to freeze, gelascere
frequent, creber, frequens
frequently, saepe, crebro
a friend, amicus, familiaris, ho-
spes; my friends, mei
friendly, amicus
friendship, amicitia
to frighten, perterrere; to frighten
off, detertere
a frog, rana
from, e, ex; a, ab; propter, de
frugality, frugalitas, parsimonia
fruit, (frux), fruges; fructus
to fulfil, perfungi
full, plenus
a funeral, funus; a funeral pile,
rogus
furiously, vehementer
future, futurus; the future, tem-
pus futurum; in future, in po-
sterum

G.

gain, lucrum; to gain advantage,
fructum capere; to gain the
love, amorem conciliare
Gaius, Gaius
Gallic, Gallicus
a game, ludus
gaming, lusus
a garden, hortus
a garment, vestis

a gate, porta
to gather, colligere, eligere
Gaul, Gallia
a Gaul, Gallus
a gem, gemma
a general, imperator
generally, plerumque
a generation, saeculum
a gentleman, ingenuus
a German, Germanus
Germany, Germania
to get, nancisci; to get control
of affairs, rerum potiri; to get
up, surgere; to get up a con-
spiracy, conjurationem facere
a gift, dos, donum, munus
a girl, puella, virgo
to give, dare, tribuere; to give
back, reddere; to give notice,
significare; to give permission,
potestatem dare; to give as a
present, dono dare; to give up,
indulgere, profundere; to be
given to uncommon luxury,
inuitatae luxuriae esse
glad, laetus
of glass, vitreus [dere
to glide, labi; to glide away, ce-
most glorious, pulcherrimus
glory, gloria, fama
to glut, satiare
a gnat, culex
to go, ire; to go astray, aberrare;
to go to bed, cubitum ire; to go
to sleep, obdormiscere; things
go wrong, male se res habet
a goal, finis
God, Deus; a god, deus
a goddess, dea; the goddess Ve-
nus, Venus
Godhead, numen
gold, aurum

of gold, golden, aureus
good, bonus; very good, perbonus;
a good, bonum; good qualities,
bona; good fortune, felicitas,
fortuna secunda
goodness, benignitas, sanctitas
a goose, anser
to govern, administrare, impe-
rare, regere, gubernare
government, regnum, imperium,
administratio
a governor, praeses
Gracchus, Gracchus
a grain, granum; grain, fru-
menta
a granary, cella penaria
a grandson, nepos
granted that, ut; granted that
not, ne
the grape, uva
grateful, gratus
great, magnus, grandis; so great,
tantus; greater, major; great-
est, summus, maximus; too
great, nimius
greatly, multum, magnopere;
very greatly, maxime
Greece, Graecia
greed, cupido
greedy, avarus
Greek, Graecus
grief, dolor, luctus
to grieve, maerere, dolere; it
grieves, piget; to be grieved,
aegre pati
on the ground, humi; from the
ground, humo
a grove, lucus
to grow, crescere
guard, praesidium; to be on one's
guard, cavere
more guardedly, cautius

a guardian, tutor
a guide, dux
a guilty person, nocens

H.

habit, consuetudo
Hadrian, Hadrianus
Hadrumentum, Hadrumentum
hail, grando
it hails, grandinat
a hair, pilus, capillus
the half, dimidius, dimidium
to halt, consistere
the hand, manus; the right hand,
dextra (manus); at hand, præ-
sto; to be at hand, adesse; in
the hands of, penes; hand to
hand, comminus; on the one
hand, and on the other hand
not, et..neque; on the one
hand not, and on the other,
neque..et
to hand, porrigere
Hannibal, Hannibal
to happen, accidere, evenire,
feri
happiness, felicitas
happy, felix, beatus
to harangue, concionari
hard, durus, gravis; a hard lot,
fortuna aspera
hard by, juxta
hardly, vix; hardly any, nullus
fere; hardly yet, vixdum
a hare, lepus
to do harm, nocere
harmless, innoxius
Harpagus, Harpagus
harsh, asper
Hasdrubal, Hasdrubal
to make haste, festinare
to hasten, properare

to hate, odisse
hateful, odiosus
hatred, odium
haughtiness, arrogantia
to have, habere; to have to do
with, esse alicui cum aliquo;
versari; to have a father,
friend, patre, amico uti; to
have rather, malle
he, is; he who, is qui
the head, caput
to heal, sanare, mederi
health, valetudo; good health,
valetudo prospera; to be in
good health, valere
healthy, saluber
a heap, acervus
to hear, audire, accipere
a hearer, auscultans
to hearken, audire
the heart, cor
to heat, calefacere
heaven, caelum
heavenly, caelestis
heavy, gravis
a Hebrew, Hebreus
a hedge, saepes
to heed, obedire, oboedire; to
take heed, cavere
an heir, heres
help, auxilium, ops; by the help,
a Helvetian, Helvetius [ope
a hen, gallina
Henry, Henricus
Hephaestion, Hephaestion
her, suus
an herb, herba
here, ibi; here and there, passim
hereafter, mox
a hero, heros
Herodotus, Herodotus
hid, abditus

to *hide*, occultare, abscondere
high, altus; *highest*, summus
Himera, Himera
himself, ipse
hinder, intinuis
to *hinder*, impedire, officere
a *hindrance*, impedimentum
to *hire*, conducere
his, suus
a *historian*, historicus
history, historia
hither, huc
a *hive*, alveus
to *hoard riches*, divitias parare
to *hold*, habere, tenere, censere;
to *hold out*, sustinere
a *hole*, caverna
hollow, concavus
holy, sacer
a *home*, domicilium; *home*, domum; *at home*, domi; *at home and in the field*, domi militiaeque; *from home*, domo
Homer, Homerus
honest, probus
honesty, honestum
honey, mel
an *honor*, honor, gloria
honorable, honestus, candidus
honored, honoratus
a *hoof*, ungula
a *hook*, hamus
hope, spes
to *hope for*, sperare
a *horn*, cornu
a *horse*, equus; *horse*, equites
on *horseback*, equitans
Hortensius, Hortensius
hot, calidus
an *hour*, hora
a *house*, domus; *the house of a friend*, hospitium

how, quomodo; quemadmodum, quam; *how few*, quotusquisque? *how great*, quantus; *how long*, quamdiu, quousque? *how many*? quot? *how much*, quantum, quanto, quam; *how often*, quotiens?
however, at, tamen, vero; *however much*, quamvis, quantumvis
human, humanus
humanity, humanitas
a *hundred*, centum
hunger, fames
to *hunger*, esurire
to *hunt*, venari; to *hunt down*, persequi
to *hurry*, rapere
to *hurt*, nocere, laedere
hurtful, noxius
a *husband*, maritus, vir
a *husbandman*, agricola
Hystaspes, Hystaspes

I.

I, ego, egomet
an *idea*, notio
idle, otiosus
idleness, inertia
idly, desidiose
if, si; *interrog. part.* -ne, num; *if not*, nisi; si non, sin; *interrog. part.* nonne; *if only*, modo, si modo, dum, dummodo
ignorant, ignarus, nescius, inscius, imperitus; to *be ignorant*, ignorare, nescire; to *keep ignorant*, celare
to *ignore*, ignorare
ill, aeger
to *illuminate*, collustrare
illustrious, clarus

an image, imago
to imitate, imitari
imitation, imitatio
immediately, protinus, statim;
immediately after, secundum
immense, ingens
immortal, immortalis
immortality, immortalitas
impassable, invius
impenetrable, impenetrabilis
impiety, impietas
impious, impius
to implore, implorare
it is of importance, interest
to importune, efflagitare
to impose, imponere
to improve the memory, memoriam augere
in, in; *in as much as*, siquidem
inapt, ineptus
incapable of enduring, impatiens
inclined, propensus
income, vectigal
inconsiderately, inconsulto
inconstant, inconstans
to increase, augere, crescere; *to be increasing*, augeri
incredible, incredibilis
indeed, quidem, sane, profecto, demum
India, India
the Indians, Indi
to indicate, indicare
indignation, indignatio
indolence, ignavia, pigritia
industrious, assiduus
industry, industria
to infest, infestare
to be inflamed, exardescere
infrequency, raritas
to inhabit, habitare, incolere
an inhabitant, incola

to injure, violare
injury, injuria, malefactum
injustice, injustitia, iniquitas
inmost, intimus
an innkeeper, caupo
innocence, innocentia
innocent, innocens
innumerable, innumerabilis, innumerus
to inquire, rogare, interrogare, quaerere, inquirere, sciscitari;
to inquire into, spectare, requirere
inquisitive, curiosus
to inscribe, inscribere
an inscription, titulus
instead of, pro
to instruct, erudire
an insult, injuria
interchange, mutatio
intercourse, consuetudo [est
it interests, is the interest, inter-
interior, interior
to interpolate, intercalare
to interpret, vertere
an interpreter, interpres
to intervene, obstare
the intestines, intestina
intimacy, familiaritas
an intimate friend, familiaris
into, in
intolerable, intolerabilis
to introduce, inducere
to invent, invenire
an inventor, inventor
the Ionians, Iones
Ireland, Hibernia
irksome, molestus
iron, ferrum
an island, insula
the Islands of the Blessed, insulae fortunatae

Isocrates, Isocrates
an Italian, Italus
Italy, Italia
its, suus

J.

to throw the javelin, jaculari
a jest, jocus
a Jew, Judaeus
a jewel, ornamentum
to be joined, adhaerere
a joke, jocus; in joke, joco
Joseph, Josephus
a journey, iter
joy, gaudium
a judge, judex; a better judge,
peritior

to judge, probare, judicare
severe judgment, severitas; to sit
in judgment, judicem esse;
according to the judgment, judi-
Jugurtha, Jugurtha [cio
Julius, Julius
Jupiter, Juppiter
the jury, judices
just, justus, aequus; just, ipse;
just now, jam nunc
justice, justitia
justly, jure

K.

keen, acer
to keep, habere, alere; to keep
company, versari; to keep from,
abstinere, prohibere; to keep
the goal in view, respicere
finem; to keep one's hands
from, abstinere manus; to keep
ignorant of, celare; to keep
laughing down, risum tenere;
to keep in mind, in memoria
servare; to keep safe, incolu-
mem servare; to keep up, tenere

to kill, necare, interficere, occi-
dere
a kind, genus; a kind of, quidam
a king, rex
a kingdom, regnum
kingly, regius
a kite, milvus
a knife, culter
a knight, eques
to knock one's head against the
wall, parietem ferire
to know, scire, cognoscere; I
know, cognovi; not to know,
nescire
knowing(ly), sciens
knowledge, scientia

L.

labor, labor
Lacedaemon, Lacedaemon
a Lacedaemonian, Lacedaemo-
nus
to lack, carere
a ladder, scala
laden, onustus
Laelius, Laelius
lame, claudus
the land, terra; ager; solum; by
land and sea, terra marique
a land animal, animal terrestre
the language, lingua, sermo, vox;
abusive language, convicia
large, magnus; at large, univer-
sus
a lark, alauda
last, ultimus, postremus, prae-
teritus, extremus, proximus;
at last, tandem
to last, durare
later than, infra
Latin, Latinus
the latter, hic, ille

to laugh (at), ridere, deridere
laughing, risus
a law, lex; jus; *civil law,* jus civile
it is lawful, licet
to lay down, ponere; *to lay on,* imponere; *to lay a snare,* insidiari; *to lay under,* supponere
laziness, inertia, pigritia
to lead, ducere; *to lead out,* educere
a leader, dux [cere
a leaf, folium
to leap across, transilire
to leap down, desilire
to learn, discere, perdiscere; *to learn by heart,* ediscere; *to learn truth,* vera cognoscere
learned, doctus
learning, litterae, doctrina
least, minimus, minime
a leather bag, uter
to leave, discedere, exire; to leave (behind), relinquere
left, sinister
the leg, crus
to lend, commodare
length, longinquitas; at length, tandem
less, minor, minus
to lessen, minuire, levare
lest, ne
to let, sinere; locare, collocare; to let loose, immittere; to let sink, demittere; to let slip, praetermittere
a letter (of the alphabet), littera; a letter, epistola, epistula
Lewis, Ludovicus
a liar, (homo) mendax
liberality, liberalitas
liberty, libertas
a lictor, lictor

to lie, tell a lie, mentiri
to lie, jacere; to lie down, recumbere, procumbere, cubare
life, vita; idle life, otium; a trial for life, iudicium capitis
lifeless, exanimis
light, levis
light, lux; to bring to light, patefacere
a lightning that strikes, fulmen; a flash of lightning, fulgur
like, similis, instar; like with like, par pari
to like, amare, velle; to like better, malle
like...so, ut...sic
liked, graciosus
a likeness, imago
a limb, membrum
a limit, finis; to observe a limit, modum tenere
to limp, claudicare
a line, linea; a line of life, genus vitae; a line of battle, acies
a lion, leo
Liscus, Liscus
literary studies, studium litterarum
little, parvus, modicus; a little one, parvulus; little, pauca, paucae res, paulum, parum; too little, parum
to live, habitare, vivere; to live upon, vesci
living, vivus; a living being, animans
to load, onerare
a lock of wool, floccus
lofty, excelsus
London, Londinium
long, longus; diu, diutinus; not long ago, nuper

to long for, exoptare
to look, prospicere; to look
around, circumspicere; to look
for, petere, expectare; to look
to, spectare, respicere, tueri; to
look into, inspicere; to look into
the future, futura prospicere;
to look upon, intueri
loquacity, loquacitas
to lose, amittere, perdere
loss, damnum, interitus; at a loss,
male
a lot, sors; a hard lot, aspera
fortuna
very loudly, vehementer
love, amor, caritas; love of let-
ters, studium litterarum
to love, amare, diligere
a lover of truth, veritatis diligens
low, humilis; lower, inferior;
lowest, infimus; low stature,
brevitas
loyalty, fides
Lucania, Lucania
Lucanian, Lucanus
Lucilius, Lucilius
luck, fortuna
Lucretia, Lucretia
a lump, tuber
a lung, pulmo
a lurking place, latebra
luxury, luxuria, luxuries
Lycurgus, Lycurgus
Lydia, Lydia
a Lydian, Lydus
lying, mendacium
lying, mendax
Lysander, Lysander

M.

Macedonia, Macedonia
a Macedonian, Macedo

mad, rabiosus
a madman, insanus
to maintain, habere
divine majesty, numen divinum
to make, facere, efficere, creare,
reddere; to be made, fieri; to
make of very little account,
minimi facere; to make the
acquaintance, cognoscere; to
make friends, amicos compa-
rare; to make haste, festinare;
to make for Italy, Italiam pe-
tere; to make one's self master
of, potiri; it makes no differ-
ence, nihil interest
a maker, architectus
a man, homo; vir
to manage, moderari; to manage
badly, male gerere
Manlius, Manlius
manner, modus, mos; after the
manner, ritu; in what man-
ner, quomodo; in this manner,
sic, hoc modo; in an orderly
manner, ordine; in such a
manner, ita
many, multus, plures; so many,
tot; very many, plerique, per-
multi, plurimi
marble, marmor
Marcellus, Marcellus
to march, ingredi
Marcus, Marcus
Mardonius, Mardonius
Marius, Marius
it is the mark, proprium est
a market, mercatus, forum
to marry (of the woman), nu-
bere
Marseilles, Massilia
a marsh, palus
the Massagetae, Massagetae

a master, dominus, herus; *a master (teacher)*, magister, rector; *master of*, compos; *to make one's self master of*, potiri
a match for, par
a matter, negotium; *a matter of chance*, fortuitus
it matters, refert
a maxim, praeceptum
a meadow, pratium
mean, sordidus
means, facultas, opes; *by no means*, minime; *through the means of*, opera; *by means of*, per
a measure, modus; *in a measure*, quodammodo
to measure, metiri
meat, cibus, caro
Media, Media
medicine, medicina
mediocrity, mediocritas
to meet, convenire
a meeting, conventus
Megara, Megara
a member, membrum
memory, memoria
mention, mentio
to mention, memorare, commemorare
a merchant, mercator
mercy, misericordia
a merit, meritum
a metal, metallum
methodically, via et ratione
middle, medius; *in the middle*, in the midst, medius
to migrate, migrare
mildness, mansuetudo
a mile, miliarium, mille passuum
military, militaris; *military affairs*, res militaris

milk, lac
Miltiades, Miltiades
the mind, mens, animus, ingenium
to mind, attendere
mindful, memor
Minos, Minos
a mirror, speculum
a misdemeanor, delictum
a miser, avarus
miserable, miser
misery, miseria
a misfortune, malum, calamitas
to be mistaken, falli
a mistress, domina
Mithridates, Mithridates
to mitigate, lenire
to mock, irridere
mockery, ludibrium
moderate, modicus
moderation, abstinencia; *with moderation*, moderate
modest, modestus, verecundus
modesty, modestia
money, pecunia, argentum, nummus
a month, mensis
a monument, monumentum
the moon, luna
morals, mores
more, plus, magis, amplius;
more or less, aliquid; *more than*, supra
morning, tempus matutinum;
morning, mane
the morning star, Lucifer
the morning sun, aurora
mortal, mortalis
most, plerique, plurimus; *most of all*, potissimum; *most(ly)*, plurimum, maxime
a mother, mater, genetrix

motion, motus
a mound, agger
a mountain, mons
to mourn, maerere
a mouse, mus
the mouth, os
the mouth (of a river), ostia
to move, movere, commovere; *to move backwards*, recedere; *to move out*, egredi
moved, commotus
much, multus; *so much*, tantus; *very much*, plurimus, permultus; *too much*, nimis, nimium, nimius
to mulct, multare
a multitude, multitudo
Mummius, Mummius
music, musice
I must, debeo; *it must needs*, necesse est
mute, mutus
my, meus; *my things*, mea
Myndus, Myndus

N.

naked, nudus
a name, nomen
to name, nominare, vocare, appellare, dicere
Naples, Neapolis
a narrative, narratio
narrow, angustus
a nation, natio, gens, populus
one's native land, patria
natural, naturalis
naturally, natura
nature, natura
naught, nihili
naval, navalis
to navigate, navigare
navigation, navigatio

nay, immo
near, ad circa, prope, propter, juxta, apud; *nearer*, propior; *nearest*, proximus
nearly, paene
necessary, necessarius; *it is necessary*, opus est
necessity, necessitas
the neck, cervix, collum
to (be in) need, egere, indigere
there is need, opus est, oportet
it is needful, opus est, oportet
needless, supervacuus
to neglect, neglegere, negligere
negligent, neglegens, negligens
to neigh to, adhinnire
a neighbor, vicinus
neighboring, finitimus
neighing, hinnitus
neither . . nor, neque . . neque; *nec . . nec*
neither of the two, neuter
Neptune, Neptunus
Nero, Nero
a nerve, nervus
a nest, nidus
a net, rete
never, numquam, nunquam
nevertheless, tamen
new, novus
New York, Eboracum Novum
next, proximus; *next best*, proximus bonis; *next to*, secundum
the night, nox; *at night*, noctu
a nightingale, lusciniā
Nile, Nilus
ninety, nonaginta
no, nullus; *non*; *no one*, nemo
the nobles, viri nobiles
nobody, nemo
a nod, natus
none, nullus

nor, nec
the north-wind, boreas
the nose, nasus
not, non, nonne, -ne, haud; not
any, not one, nullus; not even,
ne..quidem; not as if, non
quod, non quo; not as if not,
non quin; not at all, neutiquam,
non prorsus; not only .. but
also, non solum .. sed etiam,
non modo .. sed etiam, non
tantum .. sed etiam; not yet,
nondum
noted, clarus
nothing, nihil, nihilum; nothing
less so, nihil minus; by nothing,
nihilo; nothing to do, nihil ne-
gotii
to give notice, significare
novelties, nova
now, nunc, modo; now .. now,
modo..modo, nunc..nunc
nowhere, nusquam; nowhere in
the world, nusquam terrarum
noxious, noxius
Numa Pompilius, Numa Pompe-
lius
Numantia, Numantia
a number, numerus; a great
number, multitudo
Numidia, Numidia
Numitor, Numitor
a nurse, nutrix

O.

O that, utinam
an oath, jusjurandum, religio
to obey, obedire, oboedire, pa-
rere; to obey the laws, legibus
uti
obliging, dulcis
to obscure, obscurare

to observe, servare; to observe
justice, justitiam servare; to
observe a limit, modum tenere
an obstacle, impedimentum
to obtain, parare, parere, conse-
qui
an occasion, occasio
occupied, occupatus
to occupy, occupare, obtinere
to occur, accidere
the ocean, oceanus
Octavianus, Octavianus
odor, odor
of, e, ex, de
to offend, peccare, offendere
to offer, offerre, proponere; to
offer a price for, liceri; to offer
resistance, resistere
often, saepe; so often, totiens;
oftener, saepius; oftenest, sae-
pissime
oil, oleum
old, antiquus, grandis natu; older,
major natu; oldest, maximus
natu; old age, senecta, senec-
tus; an old man, senex
an olive, olea
Olympia, Olympia
the Olympian games, ludi Olym-
pici
to omit, omittere, praetermittere
on, in, de, super
once, quondam; at once, statim
one, unus; one by one, singuli;
one .. another, alius .. alius;
one of two, alter
only, tantum, nonnisi, modo
open, apertus
an opinion, opinio; sententia;
public opinion, fama
an opportunity, occasio
to oppose, obsistere, opponere

opposed, inimicus
opposite, contra
to oppress, gravare
or, aut, vel, -ve, sive, an; or not,
annon; necne
an oracle, oraculum
an orator, orator
an orchard, pomarium
to ordain, instituere
order, ordo; by order, jussu;
contrary to orders, contra
imperium; in order that, ut,
quo; in order that not, ne
to order, jubere, mandare
in an orderly manner, ordine
the organ of hearing, auditus
origin, origo
an ornament, ornatus
Orpheus, Orpheus
other, alius; the other, ceteri; the
other (of two), alter; of others,
alienus
otherwise, aliter, secus, alioqui
I ought, debeo; it ought, oportet
our, noster
out of, e, ex, extra [vitutis
the outrage of slavery, injuria ser-
over, trans, super, supra
to overcome, vincere, superare,
premere
overflow, abundantia
to overtake, deprehendere
to overthrow, evertere
to owe, debere
an owl, noctua, ulula
own, proprius
an ox, bos

P.

a pace, passus; at a slow pace,
lento gradu
a page, pagina

pain, dolor; to take pains, labo-
rare
to paint, pingere
a painter, pictor
a king's palace, regia
Palatine, Palatinus
the pallium, pallium
written papers, litterae
a parent, parens
parricide, parricidium
a part, pars; to take part in,
interesse
partaker, particeps
a Parthian, Parthus
most particularly, maximopere
a party, pars
to pass (away), transire, interire;
to pass by, praeterire; to pass
into heaven, pervenire in cae-
lum; to pass a law, legem san-
cire; to pass one's life, vitam
agere
a passage, iter
passion, cupiditas
past, praeteritus; prep. ultra
a pasture, pascuum
paternal, paternus
patience, patientia
a patient, homo aeger
Pausanias, Pausanias
to pay one's respects, salutare
peace, pax
a pea-cock, pavo
a pear, pirum
a peasant, rusticus
a pen, penna
a people, natio, populus, gens;
people, homines; the common
people, plebes, plebs
the people of Veji, Vejentes
to perceive, sentire
perchance, forte

Perdiccas, *Perdiccas*
perfect, *perfectus*
perfectly, *plane*
a Pergamean, *Pergamenus*
perhaps, *fortitan*, *fortasse*
Pericles, *Pericles*
to perish, *interire*, *perire*
a perjury, *perjurium*
permanent, *stabilis*
permission, *concessus*, *potestas*
to permit, *sinere*, *permittere*
pernicious, *perniciosus*; *a most*
pernicious evil, *res pernicio-*
sissima
perpetual, *perpetuus*
to persevere, *perseverare*
Persia, *Persis*
Persian, *Persicus*
a Persian, *Persa*
a person, *homo*
perspiration, *sudor*
to persuade, *suadere*, *persuadere*
to pertain, *pertinere*
a Phenician, *Phoenix*
Philip, *Philippus*
a philosopher, *philosophus*
physical constitution, *natura*
corporis
a physician, *medicus*
a piece, *frustum*; *a piece of*
ground, *area*; *a piece of land*,
fundus
piety, *pietas*
a funeral pile, *rogus*
a pilot, *gubernator*
a pint, *sextarius*
pious, *pius*
a pirate, *pirata*
a pit, *fovea*
pitch, *pix*
to pitch a camp, *castra ponere*
or collocare

a pitchfork, *furca*
pity, *misericordia*; *it excites pity*,
miseret
to pity, *misereri*
a place, *locus*; *out of place*, *male*
locatus; *in place of your pa-*
rents, *parentum loco*
to place, *ponere*, *imponere*, *col-*
locare, *statuere*
a plain, *campus*
plain, *perspicuus*
the planet Saturn, *stella Saturni*
the planet Venus, *stella Veneris*
a plant, *herba*
to plant, *serere*; *defigere*
planted, *consitus*
Plataea, *Plataeae*
a Plataean, *Plataeensis*
a platform, *suggestum*
Plato, *Plato*
a play, *ludus*; (*stage*), *fabula*
to play, *ludere*
pleasant, *jucundus*
to please, *placere*; *it pleases*, *libet*
pleased, *laetus*
pleasing, *gratus*
pleasure, *voluptas*; *at pleasure*,
ad nutum; *with pleasure*, *li-*
benter
plenty, *copia*; *adv. affatim*
Pliny, *Plinius*; *in Pliny*, *apud*
Plinium
a plow, *aratrum*
to plow, *arare*
to pluck out, *evellere*
plunder, *rapinae*
to plunder, *spoliare*, *diripere*
to plunge, *demergere*, *defigere*;
se projicere
Pluto, *Pluto*
a poet, *poeta*
poison, *venenum*

poisoning, veneficium
Pompey, Pompejus
Pontic, Ponticus
Pontus, Pontus
poor, pauper; *a poor man*, inops
the populace, plebs, plebes
popular, popularis
to possess, possidere
to acquire possession of, potiri
not in possession, impos
to postpone, impedire
poverty, paupertas
power, potentia, potestas, vis,
 imperium; *the power of speak-
 ing*, vis eloquendi
powerful, potens
powerless to control, impotens
practice, usus, exercitatio
to practice, exercere; *to practice
 virtue*, virtutem colere
practiced, exercitatus
praise, laus
to praise, laudare
praiseworthy, laudabilis, laude
 dignus
pray, -nam, tandem
to pray, orare
prayers, preces
to precede, antegredi, praecur-
 rere
a precept, praeceptum
a precursor, praenuntius
to predict, praedicere
to prefer, praeferre, antepone, re,
 malle
to prepare for, parare
presence, conspectus; *in pre-
 sence of*, coram, apud
present, praesens, praesto; *to
 be present*, adesse, interesse
a present, donum
to present with, donare

to press, urgere; *to press upon*,
 imprimere
pressing, urgens
to prevent, impedire, repellere
a price, pretium; *at a high price*,
 magno (pretio); *at a very high
 price*, plurimo (pretio); *at a
 low price*, parvo; *at a very low
 price*, minimo; *at the same
 price*, tantidem; *to offer a price
 for*, liceri
pride, superbia
to pride one's self, superbire
a prince, princeps
principally, maxime, praecipue
of printing, typographicus
a prison, carcer
privately, secreto
probable, veri similis
probity, probitas
to proceed, accedere, contendere
a procession, pompa
to produce, procreare
to be prominent, eminere
to promise, promittere, polliceri
to pronounce, judicare, arbitrari
proper, justus
property, possessio, res familiaris;
our property, nostra; *the pro-
 perty of others*, aliena; *all one's
 property*, omnia sua
Proserpine, Proserpina
prosperity, res secundae, tempora
 secunda, res prosperae
prosperous, prosper
to protect, tueri
a protector, patronus, patrona,
 custos
proud, superbus
to prove, arguere, demonstrare
a proverb, proverbium
to provide, comparare, providere

provided, dum, dummodo, si modo;

provided only not, modo ne

providence, providentia

a province, provincia

to provoke, lacerare

prudence, consilium

prudent, prudens

Prusias, Prusias

public, publicus; public opinion,

fama; public affairs, res publica

Publius, Publius

a pumice-stone, pumex

Punic, Punicus

to punish, punire, mulctare

punishment, poena, supplicium

a pupil, discipulus

to purchase, emere

on purpose, consulto, de industria;

to no purpose, male; for

what purpose, cujus utilitatis

causa

to pursue, insidiari; to pursue

agriculture, agriculturæ stu-

dere

a pursuit, studia

to put, ponere, collocare, im-

ponere; dare, facere; to put off,

differre; to put on, induere; to

put under, supponere; to put

up, devertere; to put to flight,

fugare

Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus

Pythagoras, Pythagoras

a Pythagorean, Pythagoreus

Q.

a quadruped, quadrupes

a quaestor, quaestor

a quail, coturnix

quarrelsome, jurgiosus

from every quarter, undique

a queen, regina

a question, quaestio; the question

is, quaeritur

quickly, celeriter, cito

quietly, suaviter

quite, plane

quoeth I, inquam

R.

a rabbit, cuniculus

the rabble, vulgus

a race, genus; the human race

at large, hominum genus uni-

versum

a race (course), stadium

to rack, vexare

rain, pluvia

to rain, pluer

the rainbow, arcus caelestis

rare, rarus; rarely, raro

to raise, evehere; to raise an

army, exercitum comparare

a rampart, vallum

a rascal, improbus

rather, potius

a raven, corvus

a ray, radius

to reach, adire, pervenire

to read, legere

readily, celeriter, facile

a reading, lectio

ready, paratus

real, verus

reason, ratio; for the reason,

ideo; for this reason, idcirco;

for this very reason, propter

id ipsum

to rebuild, restituere

to recall, revocare

to receive, accipere

to recite, recitare

to reckon, putare, numerare

to recognize, cognoscere

recollection, recordatio
to recommend, commendare, sua-
dere
a recommendation, commendatio
a recompense, merces
to record, memorare
to recover, recreari, convalescere
recovery, sanitas
recreation, recreatio
red, ruber
to redeem, redimero
to refer, referre
to reflect, cogitare; reddere
reflection, ratio
to refuse, recusare
to regard, arbitrari, existimare;
to regard as nothing, pro nihilo
habere; to have regard, curam
habere
to regulate, moderari
to rehearse, ediscere, commemo-
rare
to reign, regnare
to rejoice, gaudere, laetari
to relate, narrare, referre
a relation, necessarius
a relative, propinquus
to release, liberare
religion, religio
relying, fretus
to remain, manere
a remedy, remedium
to remember, meminisse, remi-
nisci, recordari
remembrance, memoria
to remind, commonefacere, com-
monere, admonere
Remus, Remus
to render service, utilitatem, mu-
nus afferre
renowned, praeclarus
to repeat, repetere

to repel, repellere
to reply, respondere
there is a report, opinio est
a reproof, exprobratio
the republic, res publica
reputation, fama; reputation
and credit, fama et fides
to be in bad repute, male audire
to request, orare, rogare, requi-
rere
at the request, rogatu
to require, desiderare
resemblance, similitudo
to offer resistance, resistere
respect, veneratio; to pay one's
respects, salutare
to respect, revereri, venerari; to
respect one's parents, colere
parentes
the rest, ceteri, reliqui; for the
rest, ceterum
to rest, quiescere; to rest on, niti
to restore, reddere, reparare, re-
stituere
to restrain, cohibere, prohibere,
coercere
under restraint, abstinens
to retire, concedere; to retire to
rest, quiescere
to retreat, se recipere
to return, reverti, redire, recur-
rere, reddere; to return like
with like, par pari referre; to
return thanks, gratias agere
to reveal, indicare
to revere, revereri
to reverence, revereri
a revolution, res novae
to revolve, se convertere
a reward, merces, praemium
Rhea Silvia, Rhea Silvia
the Rhine, Rhenus

a rhinoceros, rhinoceros
the Rhone, Rhodanus
rich, dives
riches, divitiae
to ride, equitare; to ride a horse,
equo vehi
a rider, eques
right, jus, fas
right, rectus, recte; bene; right
(not left), dexter; to do right,
recte facere
rightfully, jure
rightly, jure, recte
a ring, anulus
ripe, maturus
to rise, surgere, oriri; to rise
again, resurgere; to rise from
bed, cubitu surgere
a risk, periculum
a rival, aemulus
a river, amnis, flumen
a road, via
a robber, latro
a rock, saxum
a rod, virga
Roman, Romanus
Rome, Roma
Romulus, Romulus
a roof, tectum
roomy, amplius
a root, radix, stirps
Roscius, Roscius
rough, asper
round like a ball, globosus
to rouse, commovere
to rove about, errare
ruin, perniciēs
to ruin, perdere
rule, imperium; praeceptum
to rule, regnare, regere, impera-
re, dominari, temperare
a ruler, rector

rumor, fama
to run, currere; to run one's self
dry, defluere
a running, cursus
to rush, irruere
rust, rubigo

S.

Sabine, Sabinus; the Sabine ter-
ritory, Sabini
sacred, sanctus
a sacrifice, sacrificium
sad, tristis
safe, tutus, incolumis
safety, salus
Saguntum, Saguntum
to sail, navigare
a sailor, nauta
for the sake of, causa, gratia; for
one's own sake, sua ipsius cau-
sa, per se
Salamis, Salamis
for sale, venalis; to be for sale,
licere
salt, sal
salubrious, saluber
salutary, saluber
to salute, salutare
the same, idem; the very same,
istic; the same who, as, idem
qui
to sanction, sancire
sand, harena, arena
a Sardinian, Sardus
to satiate, satiare
satisfied, contentus
to satisfy, satiare; that cannot be
satisfied, insatiabilis
Saturn, Saturnus; the planet Sa-
turn, Saturni stella
sauciness, petulantia
to save, servare, liberare

to say, dicere; to say no, negare;

I say, ajo, inquam

the scale (of a fish), squama

scanty, exiguus

scarcity, raritas, penuria

a scholar, discipulus

a school, schola

a school-mate, sodalis

Scipio, Scipio

a scourge, flagellum

to scourge, flagellis caedere

to scrape together, corraderè

a Scythian, Scythæ

the sea, mare; belonging to the

sea, sea-, maritimus; over the

sea, maritimus

to search out, expetere

a season, tempus anni

the second, secundus; a second

Romulus, alter Romulus

secret, occultus

secure, tutus

to secure, parère

sedition, seditio

to see, videre, cernere, adspicere,

conspicere; intellegere, ani-

madvertere

to seek, petere, appetere

to seem, videri

seldom, raro

to sell, vendere, venum dare;

dear, bene; at a loss, male

a seller, venditor

Semiramis, Semiramis

the senate, senatus

the senate-house, curia

a senator, senator

to send, mittere; to send ahead,

præmittere; to send a letter,

litteras dare

a sense, sensus; the sense of

sight, sensus videndi

sensibility, sensus

sensible, prudens

a sentence, sententia

a sentiment, sententia

to separate, separare, discernere,

sejungere

serene, serenus

a serpent, serpens

Sertorius, Sertorius

a servant, servus

to serve, servire

a service, opera, munus; military

service, militia

servitude, servitus

Servius Tullius, Servius Tullius

to set, statuere, constituere; (of

the sun), occidere; to set out,

exponere; proficisci; to set

bounds to, moderari; to set foot

on, attingere

to settle, considere

a settlement, sedes

seven, septem

the seven hundredth, septingen-

tesimus

the seventh, septimus

the seventieth, septuagesimus

seventy, septuaginta

several, plures, complures

severe, severus, gravis; severe

judgment, severitas; a severe

sickness, morbus gravis

severely, graviter

a shadow, umbra

to shake hands, manum porrigere

shameful, turpis; a shameful

deed, flagitium

it shames, pudet

a share, portio; without share,

expers

to share, impertire

sharing, particeps

sharp, acer, asper; *more sharply*,
acrius
to sharpen, acuere
to shave, tondere
to shear, tondere
to shed, profundere
a sheep, ovis
to shelter, tegere
a shepherd, pastor
to shine, fulgere, splendere
a ship, navis; *by ship*, navibus
a shore, ora
short, brevis [rem
I should, debeo; *I should be*, fo-
a show, species
to show, monstrare, ostendere;
to show one's self, se praestare,
se praeberere
to shudder at, horrere
to shun, vitare
to shut, claudere; *to shut up*,
concludere
Sicily, Sicilia
sick, aeger, aegrotus
sickness, aegritudo, morbus
a side, pars; *on which side*, qua; *on*
all sides, undique; *on the other*
side of, ultra; *on this side*, cis
sight, conspectus; *the sense of*
sight, sensus videndi
a sign, signum
silence, silentium
in silence, silentio
to be silent, tacere, silere; *a silent*
dog, canis mutus
silly, ridiculus
silver, argentum; *adj.* argenteus
simple, simplex
to sin, peccare
since, cum, quoniam, quandoqui-
dem, siquidem
sincere, sincerus

to sing, canere, cantare
a sister, soror
to sit in judgment, iudicem esse
situated, situs
the situation, situs
six, sex
the sixth, sextus
sixty, sexaginta
size, magnitudo
skill, sollertia, ars
skilled, peritus
skillful, peritus, sciens
a skin, pellis
to skin, deglubere
the sky, caelum
to slacken, remittere
to slander, maledicere
a slave, servus; *to be a slave*,
servire
slavery, servitus [dere
to slay, trucidare, necare, occi-
sleep, somnus; *in the first sleep*,
concubia nocte
to sleep, dormire
slender, tenuis
to slip, labi, elabi, praetermittere
sloth, ignavia
slow, lentus
small, parvus, exiguus; *smaller*,
minor; *smallest*, minimus;
smaller than, infra
smart, callidus
smell, odor
smoke, fumus
a snare, insidiae; *to lay a snare*,
insidiari
to snatch, eripere
snow, nix
so, sic, tam, ita, adeo; *so . . as*,
tam . . quam; *so much*, adeo;
tanto; *so much* . . as, tam . . quam;
so that, ut, quo; *so that not*, ut non

society, societas
Socrates, Socrates
soft, mollis
the soil, solum, humus
to be sold, venire
a soldier, miles
solitude, solitudo
Solomon, Salomon
Solon, Solon
some, aliquis, aliquot, nonnulli;
some more, aliquanto; *some*
one, aliquis, quidam; *some..*
others, alii..alii
something, aliquid
sometimes, nonnunquam, interdum
somewhat, aliquantum
a son, filius
a song, cantus
soon, mox, cito; *sooner*, prius
to soothe, blandiri
Sophocles, Sophocles
sorrow, maeror; *it causes*
sorrow, paenitet
the soul, anima, animus
sound, sanus
a sound, sonitus
sour, acerbus
a source, fons
sovereign, sanctissimus
to sow, serere
space, spatium
Spain, Hispania
a Spaniard, Hispanus
to spare, parcere, temperare aliqui
Sparta, Sparta
a Spartan, Spartanus
to speak, loqui, eloqui, dicere;
so to speak, quasi, velut
a speech, oratio, dictio, voces
speed, celeritas

to spend, exigere; *to spend the*
winter, summer, hiemem,
aestatem agere
a spider, aranea
the spirit, animus
splendid, magnificus
a sport, lusus
to spread abroad, divulgare
spring, ver
a spring, fons
to spring, oriri
to sprinkle, aspergere
a spur, calcar
to stab, transfigere; *to stab to*
death, perfodere
stability, stabilitas
a stage-player, scenicus
to stain, imbuere
to stamp, imprimere
to stand, stare, consistere; *to*
stand around, circumstare
a star, stella, sidus
a starling, sturnus
a state, res publica, civitas; *the*
old state of things, vetera
to state one's opinion, sententiam
dicere
stature, statura; *low stature*, bre-
to stay, remanere [vitas
to stay one's self on, niti
steady, constans
to steal, furari
a steed, equus
a step, gradus
still, tamen, at; *before a compar.*
etiam
to be still, tacere
a stilus, stilus
a sting, aculeus
to sting, pungere
to stir up war, bellum excitare
stock, copia

the stomach, stomachus
a stone, lapis
the stonequarries, lautumiae
a stork, ciconia
a storm, tempestas
to storm, vi expugnare
a story, historia; the story goes,
 fama est
stout, robustus
straight, rectus
strange, alienus
a stranger, peregrinus, alienigena
a straw, floccus
strength, firmitas, vires
to stretch out, porrigere
stricken in, confectus
to strike, ferire, icere; to strike
 by lightning, fulmine tangere;
 to strike into, injicere
to strip, nudare, spoliare
to strive, contendere
a stroke, ictus
strong, validus, firmus
study, studium; literary studies,
 litterarum studium
stuffed, refertus
to stumble, titubare
stunned, attonitus
to style, appellare
to subdue, subigere; to subdue
 in war, bello domare
to subject, subicere
to subjugate, domare
successfully, prospere
a successor, successor
to succor, succurrere
such, talis; such as, such that,
 is qui
to suck, sugere
sudden, subitus; on a sudden,
 subito; suddenly, repente,
 subito

to sue for peace, pacem petere
the Suebi, Suebi
to suffer, pati, sinere, laborare;
 to suffer patiently, perpeti; to
 suffer punishment, poenas dare
sufficiently, sat, satis
suitable, opportunus, idoneus,
 aptus
suited, aptus, idoneus
Sulla, Sulla; of Sulla, Sullanus
a sum of money, pecunia
the summer, aestas; summer-
 time, tempus aestivum
to summon, arcessere; reum fa-
 the sun, sol [cere
superstition, superstitio
to suppose, fulcire
suppose, ut, cum, licet
sure, certus; to be sure, certe
a surname, cognomen
to surname, cognomine appellare
to surround, circumdare
suspected, suspectus
a swallow, hirundo
sweet, dulcis
swiftness, celeritas
to swim, natare
a sword, gladius, ferrum
Syracuse, Syracusae
Syria, Syria

T.

a table, tabula
Tacitus, Tacitus
a tail, cauda
to take, capere, sumere, accipere,
 abducere, ducere; occupare; to
 take away, eripere, adimere; to
 take back, recipere; to take up,
 tollere; to take care, curare; to
 take heed, cavere; to take too
 little pains, parum laborare;

to take part in, interesse; to take possession of, potiri; to take prisoner, capere; to take the side of, partes sequi; to take toils upon one's self, labores excipere; to take a walk, ambulare; to be taken for, haberi
talent, ingenium
a talk, sermo
tall, procerus
to tame, mulcere
Tarquin, Tarquinius
a task, opera, pensum
taste, sapor
to taste, gustare
to teach, docere, edocere
a teacher, magister, magistra, doctor, praeceptor
a tear, lacrima
tedious, longus
tedium, taedium
to tell, dicere, narrare, referre; indicare; *to tell a lie*, mentiri
a tempest, tempestas
a temple, aedes, templum
the temples, tempora
ten, decem; *ten times*, decies
tender, tener
Terence, Terentius
terrestrial, terrestres
a territory, fines
terror, terror
to testify, testari
Thales, Thales
the river Thames, Tamesis
than, quam
thankful, gratus
thanks, gratiae
that, is, ille, iste; qui; *that*, ut, quo, quod; *that not*, ne, quin, quominus

a thatched roof, culmus
the...the, quanto...tanto, eo...quo
a Theban, Thebanus
their (own), suus
Themistocles, Themistocles
then, tum, deinde, igitur
thence, inde
there, ibi
therefore, ergo, igitur, idcirco, itaque
Thermopylae, Thermopylae
a thief, fur
thin, tenuis
a thing, res; *every thing*, all things, omnia; *past things*, praeterita; *those things*, ea; *those things which*, quae
to think, putare, cogitare, habere, arbitrari; *to think nothing of*, nihili ducere
the third, tertius
thirst, sitis
to thirst (for), sitire
to be thirsty, sitire
thirty, triginta
this (of mine), hic; *this here*, hicine?
thou, tu
though, ut, licet, cum
a thousand, mille; *a thousand times*, millies
to threaten, minari, imminere
three, tres; *three hundred*, trecenti; *three years*, triennium
a threshold, limen
to thrive, provenire, vigere
a throne, imperium; *to come to the throne*, ad imperium accedere
through, per; *through the means*, opera

to throw, conjicere; to throw forth, projicere; to throw in, interjicere; to throw the javelin, jaculari; to throw over, injicere

*to thrust into, conjicere
thunder, tonitru
to thunder, tonare
a thunderbolt, fulmen
thy, tuus*

*Tiberius, Tiberius
a tiger, tigris*

time, tempus; at any time, unquam; a long time, jam dudum; for a long time, diu; at the time when, tum, cum; a second time, iterum; some time, aliquamdiu; ten times, decies; a thousand times, millies; vacant time, otium; I have no time, otium non est

timid, timidus

Timoleon, Timoleon

it tires, taedet

Titus, Titus

to, ad, in

to-day, hodie

together, una, simul, pariter

a tomb, sepulcrum

to-morrow, cras; of to-morrow, crastinus

Tomyris, Tomyris

the tongue, lingua

too, quoque; nimis

a tooth, dens

the top of the mountain, summus mons

Torquatus, Torquatus

a tortoise, testudo

torture, cruciatus

to torture, cruciari

touch, tactus

*to touch, tangere, attingere
towards, adversus, adversum,
erga, versus, sub*

a tower, turris

a town, oppidum

a townsman, oppidanus

a tragedy, tragoedia

to train, instituere, assuefacere

Trajan, Trajanus

tranquil, tranquillus

to transact affairs, negotia agere

Transalpine, Transalpinus

treachery, insidiae

treason, proditio

a treasure, thesaurus

to treat, afficere

a tree, arbor

a trial, causa; a trial for life, judicium capitis

a tribe, gens

the sovereign tribunal, sanctissimum consilium

to trickle, destillare

a triumph, triumphus

to triumph, triumphare

Trojan, Trojanus

troops, copiae

trouble, molestia

troublesome, molestus

the city of Troy, Troja

true, verus; truly, vero

a trumpet, tuba

the trunk of an elephant, proboscis

the trunk of a tree, truncus

to trust, fidere, confidere, committere

trusting, fretus

truth, veritas, verum

*to try, tentare, experiri, conari;
to try one's luck, fortunam periclitari*

Tullus Hostilius, Tullus Hostilius
to turn, *vertere*; *to turn about*,
convertere; *to turn back*, *re-*
verti; *to turn out*, *fieri*, *eva-*
dere, *evenire*

a Tusculan farm, *Tusculanum*
twelve, *duodecim*
twenty, *viginti*
twice, *bis*; *twice as much*, *altero*
tanto

two, *duo*; *two (at a time)*, *bini*;
two hundred, *ducenti*

a tyrant, *tyrannus*

Tyre, *Tyrus*

U.

unable, *impotens*
unaccustomed, *insuetus*
the unanimous decision of the
judges, *omnium iudicium sen-*
tentia

unavenged, *inultus*
it is unbecoming, *dedecet*

uncertain, *incertus*
an uncle, *avunculus*
uncommon, *inusitatus*

under, *sub*, *subter*
to undergo, *subire*
to understand, *intellegere*

to undertake, *suscipere*
unfavorable, *adversus*
unfit, *inutilis*

unfortunate, *adversus*
unfriendly, *inimicus*
ungrateful, *ingratus*

unhappy, *infelix*
a unicorn, *monoceros*

to unite, *conjungere*
unjust, *injustus*
unjustly, *immerito*, *injuriam*
it is unknown to me, *fugit me*,
fallit me, *praeterit me*

unless, *nisi*
unlike, *dissimilis*, *dispar*
unmindful, *immemor*
unpleasant, *ingratus*
unquestionably, *facile*
unshaved, *intonsus*
until, *dum*, *donec*; (*usque*) *ad*,
quoad

unto, *erga*
untouched, *intactus*
unwilling(ly), *volens*
to be unwilling, *nolle*
unworthy, *indignus*
up to, *quoad*; *prop. usque ad*
upon, *in*

upper, *superior*
upright, *probus*
to urge a horse, *equum excitare*
usage, *usus*
use, *usus*, *utilitas*, *exercitatio*
to use, *uti*, *solere*, *exercere*,
consuescere; *to use up*, *ab-*
sumere

useful, *utilis*; *to be useful*, *pro-*
desse; *it is useful*, *conducit*,
expedit

usefulness, *utilitas*
useless, *inutilis*
usual, *usitatus*; *the usual state*
of health, *consuetudo valentis*

to usurp, *usurpare*

Utica, *Utica*
utility, *utilitas*
utmost, *summus*
utterly, *pessime*

V.

to be vacant, *vacare*
in vain, *frustra*
Valerius, *Valerius*
valor, *virtus*
value, *pretium*

to value, aestimare, censere; *to value highly*, magni aestimare; *to value very highly*, plurimi aestimare

various, varius

to vary, variare

vast, vastus

Veji, Veji; *the people of Veji*, Vejentes

to venture, audere

the goddess Venus, Venus

Verres, Verres

a verse, versus

very, per-, admodum; *ipse*; *very good*, perbonus; *very well*, praeclare

Vespasian, Vespasianus

a vessel, vas; navigium

Vesuvius, Vesuvius

a vice, vitium

victorious, victor, victrix

a victory, victoria

to view, spectare; *to keep in view*, respicere

vigilance, vigilantia

a village, vicus

a vine, vitis

vinegar, acetum

to violate, laedere

violence, vis

violent, vehemens; *violent death*, nex

violently, vi

Virgil, Vergilius

virtue, virtus

virtuous, probus, rectus, honestus

a vision, visum

to visit, visitare

a voice, vox

void, inanis, vacuus; *to be void of*, vacare

voluntarily, voluntate
a voyage round the world, navigatio circum terram
Vulcan, Vulcanus

W.

a wagon, plaustrum

to wait for, exspectare; *to wait upon*, praesto esse

a waiting-maid, pedisequa

to wake, vigilare; *to wake up*, expergisci

wakefulness, vigilantia, vigiliae

to walk, ambulare, incedere

a wall, murus, paries

to wander, errare; *to wander over*, peragrar

wandering, errans

want, inopia

to want, velle

to be wanting, deesse, deficere

war, bellum; *in war and in peace*, belli domique

-ward, versus

to ward off, repellere

ware, merx

warfare, bellum

warlike, bellicosus, ferox

to warn, monere

a warning, admonitio

to wash (off), abluer

water, aqua

a wave, unda

a way, via, modus; *to be in the way*, obstare; *in every way*, omni ratione; *in many ways*, multis modis; *in the same way*, eadem via; *in this way*, ita; *which way*, qua

we, nos

weak, debilis

to weaken, debilitare, minuer

wealth, opes
wealthy, opulentus, locuples
a weapon, telum; weapons, arma
to wear away, consumere
to wear out, conterere
it wearies, taedet
to weave, texere
a weed, herba
to weep, plorare
to weigh, pendere
weight, pondus, moles
welcome, jucundus
welfare, salus
well, bene; very well, praeclare;
to be well, valere; it is well
known, constat
well-behaved, probus
the west, occasus, occidens
what, quid, quam; what I pray,
quidnam? what kind of, qualis?
what (in number or order),
quotus?
whatever, quidquid
when, si, cum; when, quando?
when pray, ubinam?
whence, unde; whence pray, un-
denam?
where, ubi, qua? where pray,
ubinam?
whereas, cum, licet
wherever, ubicunque; wherever
in the world, ubicunque terra-
rum
whether, utrum, num, -ne; wheth-
er, . . or, utrum . . an, sive . . sive
which, qui; which of the two, uter?
whichever, quisquis
while, dum, donec
white, candidus
whither, quo; whither pray,
quonam? [nam?
who, qui, quis; who I pray? quis-

whoever, quisquis
whole, totus, cunctus, universus
wholesome, saluber
wholly, prorsus; totus
why, cur, quare, quid? why not,
quidni?
wicked, improbus, pravus, nefa-
rius, sceleratus
a wife, uxor
a wild beast, fera (bestia)
a wild boar, aper
the will, voluntas; against one's
will, invitus; a will, testamen-
tum
willing(ly), volens, libens, libenter
to be willing, velle; to be more
willing, malle
the wily fox, cauta vulpes
wine, vinum
wings, pennae
winter, hiems
wisdom, sapientia
wise, sapiens; to be wise, sapere
to wish for, velle, optare, cupere;
not to wish, nolle; I wish that,
utinam
with, cum, apud
within, intra
without, sine, extra, absque; to
be without, carere
a witness, testis; calling on God
to witness, Deo teste
a wolf, lupus
a woman, mulier
to wonder at, mirari, admirari
wonderful, mirabilis, mirificus,
admirabilis
to be wont, solere
wood, lignum; a wood, silva;
woods, saltus; of wood, ligneus
a word, verbum; to bring word,
nuntiare, renuntiare

work, opus; *works of art*, ornamenta; *to do no work*, nihil laborare

to work, laborare

the world, orbis terrarum, mundus

worse, deterior

to be worth, valere, esse; *to be worth more*, pluris esse

worthy, dignus; *to deem worthy*, dignari

a wound, vulnus

wretched, miser

to write, scribere

to write upon, inscribere

a writer, scriptor

wrong, nefas, injuria; *things go wrong*, male se res habet

X.

Xanthippe, Xanthippe

Xenocrates, Xenocrates

Xerxes, Xerxes

Y.

a year, annus; *three years*, triennium

yes, ita, etiam

yesterday, heri

yet, tamen, autem, verum, vero

to yield up, concedere

York, Eboracum

you, tu, vos

young, adulescens; *younger*, minor natu; *youngest*, minimus natu

your, tuus, vester

youth, juvenus

a youth, adulescens

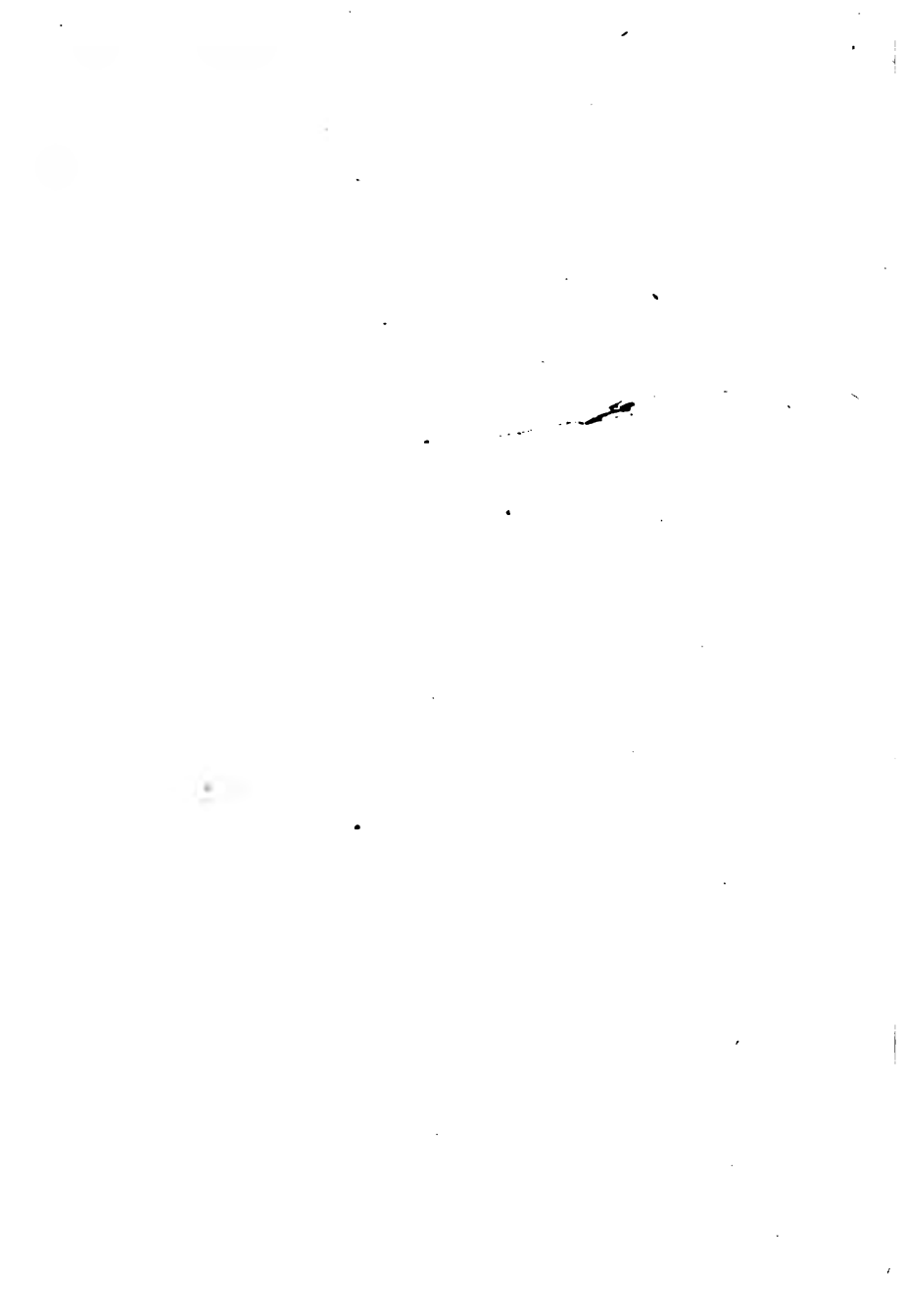
Z.

Zama, Zama

zeal, studium

Zeuxis, Zeuxis

Zopyrus, Zopyrus



STEIGER'S French Series.

AHN'S French Primer. By Dr. P. HENN. Boards \$0.25. (Great care has been bestowed upon the typographical execution of this little book, the perplexing difficulty of the *silent* letters being alleviated by the use of distinguishing

outline and **hairline** type.

AHN'S French Reading Charts. 20 Plates with Hand-book for Teachers. By Dr. P. HENN. \$1.00. (These Wall Charts are printed in very large type, the *silent*

letters being shown by **outline** type cut expressly for the purpose.)

~~The same. The 20 Plates mounted on 10~~
Boards. \$3.75 net. Mounted on 10 boards and varnished. \$5.00 net.

(AHN'S French Primer and French Reading Charts may be advantageously used as an introductory course to any French Grammar.)

AHN'S Practical and Easy Method of Learning the French Language. By Dr. P. HENN. First Course. (Comprising a fundamental Treatise on French Pronunciation, French and English Exercises, Paradigms, and Vocabulary.) Boards \$0.40.

*Key to same. Boards \$0.25 net.

AHN'S Practical and Easy Method of Learning the French Language. By Dr. P. HENN. Second Course. (Comprising a Series of French and English Exercises, Conversations, Elements of French Grammar with Index, and full Vocabulary.) Boards \$0.60.

*Key to same. Boards \$0.25 net.

AHN'S Practical and Easy Method of Learning the French Language. By Dr. P. HENN. First and Second Courses, bound together. Half Roan \$1.00.

AHN'S Elements of French Grammar. By Dr. P. HENN. Being the Second Part of AHN-HENN'S Practical and Easy Method of Learning the French Language. —Second Course—printed separately. Boards \$0.35

AHN'S First French Reader. With Foot-notes and Vocabulary. By Dr. P. HENN. Boards \$0.60; Half Roan \$0.80.

[* These Keys will be supplied to teachers only upon their direct application to the publishers.]

AHN'S First French Reader. With Notes and Vocabulary. By Dr. P. HENN. Boards \$0.60; Half Roan \$0.80.

These two editions of one and the same book differ solely in the typographical arrangement of Text and Notes. In the latter the Notes are given separately on the pages following the 75 pieces of Text; in the former each page has at its bottom exactly so much of the Notes as is needed to explain the French Text above. In respect to Vocabulary, etc., both editions are alike.

*Key to AHN'S First French Reader. By Dr. P. HENN. Boards \$0.30 net.

AHN'S Second French Reader. With Foot-notes and Vocabulary. By Dr. P. HENN. Boards \$0.80; Half Roan \$1.00.

AHN'S Second French Reader. With Notes and Vocabulary. By Dr. P. HENN. Boards \$0.80; Half Roan \$1.00.

*Key to AHN'S Second French Reader. By Dr. P. HENN. Bds \$0.40 net.

AHN'S French Dialogues. Dramatic Selections with Notes. Number One. (Specially suitable for young ladies.) Boards \$0.30; Cloth \$0.40.

AHN'S French Dialogues. Dramatic Selections with Notes. Number Two. (Specially suitable for young gentlemen.) Boards \$0.25; Cloth \$0.35.

AHN'S French Dialogues. Dramatic Selections with Notes. Number Three. (Specially suitable for young ladies.) Boards \$0.30; Cloth \$0.40.

Additional volumes of this Series of French Dialogues, which fully meet the requirements of advanced students, are in press, and will shortly be published.

AHN'S Manual of French Conversation. In press.

AHN'S French Letter-writer. In press.

Collegiate Course.

C. A. SCHLEGEL. A French Grammar. For beginners. Half Roan \$1.50.

C. A. SCHLEGEL. A Classical French Reader. With Notes and Vocabulary. Half Roan \$1.20.

E. Steiger & Co., 25 Park Place, New York.

THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE
STAMPED BELOW

AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS

WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN
THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY
WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH
DAY AND TO \$1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY
OVERDUE.

Reader.
on Livy.)
ferences.
with the
0; Cloth,

Reader.
CICERO,
abulary,
the third
Boards,

ound to-
an, \$1.50

By Dr.
ntials of
ercises,
Lessons,
20

\$0.60 ;

\$0.60;

a one
in Latin
ore time

aded Se-
th Notes

or Be-
ological.
erbs and
be used
Books, or
th, \$0.70

By Dr.
\$1.50;
be used
es.)

nd, and
st, each),
es, etc.,
ly upon
ishers.

-Hora-
trus. —
tius. —

ter, see

English-
ological

SEP 28 1939

JUN 15 1940

5 Jan '60 JGZ

REC'D LD

MAY 30 1961

5 Feb '62 JA

REC'D LD

FEB 8 1962

AHN'S
Metl
lish-L
Half I

Also
AHN'S
Exerc
By Dr

AHN'S
and E
By Dr

AHN'S
Exerc
tion.)
Cloth,

AHN'S
Hewn
in the
Board

AHN'S
mar, R
P. H
Also

Cloth,

Cloth,

Cloth,
(T
mar,
Firs
rang

AHN'S
Dr. P.

Th
ever
with
und

AHN'S
By Dr
is c
men
cour
be i
the
any

Cae
tius. —
Plantu
Vergil
For
STEIGER

A New
Latin.
Prope

53

LD 21-20m-5,'39 (9269s)

Large Stock.

Low Prices.

C. Steiger & Co.,

Importers and Booksellers, Publishers and Printers,

25 Park Place, New York.

German Books and Periodicals
in all Departments.

926501

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

Globes, Terrestrial and Celestial;

Maps, Relief and Plain; Atlases, Tellurians, &c.

Books and Periodicalseither supplied at once, or imported within the **shortest possible time** from Germany, Austria, Switzerland, England, France, Spain, Portugal, Italy, Belgium, Holland, Denmark, Sweden, Russia, and other countries.**Direct Connections.** Orders forwarded by Cable,

Particular attention is invited to the large number of Steiger's

Lists of Books and Periodicals in all Departments.

The AHN-HENN German, French, and Latin Courses.

AHN-HENN'S German Reading Charts. 25 Plates with Hand-book for Teachers. \$1.00. — The 25 Plates mounted on 13 boards, \$1.50 net. — Bound \$2.00 net.

Complete Method of the German Language. Half-bound.

Also separately:

First German Reader. Boards \$0.25.

Second German Reader. Boards \$0.45.

These two books in pocket form:

AHN-HENN'S Condiments of the German Language. First Course. Boards \$0.65, Half-bound \$0.80.

*Key to same. Boards \$0.25 net.

Third German Book. Boards \$0.45.

*Key to same. Boards \$0.25 net.

Fourth German Book. Boards \$0.60.

*Key to same. Boards \$0.25 net.

AHN-HENN'S Condiments of the German Language. Second Course. (Being the *Third and Fourth German Books* together.) Boards \$1.00, Half-bound \$1.25.

Synopsis of German Grammar. Boards \$0.60, Half-bound \$0.80.

New German Reader. With Notes and Vocabulary. Boards \$0.60, Half-bound \$0.80. — With Foot-notes and Vocabulary. Boards \$0.60, Half-bound \$0.80.

*Key to same. Boards \$0.30 net.

Second German Reader. With Notes and Vocabulary. Boards \$1.00, Half-bound \$1.20. — With Foot-notes and Vocabulary. Boards \$1.00, Half-bound \$1.20.

*Key to same. Boards \$0.50 net.

AHN-HENN'S French Primer. Bds. \$0.35.

French Reading Charts. 20 Plates with Hand-book for Teachers. \$1.00. — The 20 Plates mounted on 10 boards \$3.15 net. Mounted on 10 boards and varnished \$5.00 net.

(AHN-HENN'S French Primer and French Reading Charts may be advantageously used as an introductory course to any French Grammar.)

Practical and Easy Method of Learning the French Language. Half-bound \$1.00.

Also separately:

First Course. Boards \$0.40.

*Key to same. Boards \$0.25 net.

Second Course. Boards \$0.60.

*Key to same. Boards \$0.25 net.

First French Reader. With Notes and Vocabulary. Boards \$0.75, Half-bound \$0.80. — With Foot-notes and Vocabulary. Boards \$0.60, Half-bound \$0.80.

*Key to same. Boards \$0.30 net.

Second French Reader. With Notes and Vocabulary. Boards \$1.00, Half-bound \$1.20. — With Foot-notes and Vocabulary. Boards \$0.80, Half-bound \$1.00.

*Key to same. Boards \$0.40 net.

AHN-HENN'S Practical and Easy Latin Method. With Latin English and English Latin Vocabulary. Half-bound, \$1.20.

Also separately:

First Latin Book. (Rules and Exercises mainly in Personal Inflection.) Boards \$0.60, Cloth \$0.70.

*Key to same. Boards \$0.40 net.

Second Latin Book. (Rules and Exercises mainly on Verbal Inflection.) Boards \$0.80, Cloth \$1.00.

*Key to same. Boards \$0.40 net.

Third Latin Book. (Rules and Exercises on Syntax and Latin Composition.) Boards \$0.80, Cloth \$1.00.

*Key to same. Boards \$0.40 net.

Latin Grammar. With References to the Exercises in the *First, Second, and Third Latin Books.* Boards \$0.80, Cloth \$0.90.

New Latin Manual. Grammar, Exercises, and Vocabulary. Boards \$0.80, Cloth \$0.90.

Also separately:

First Course. Bds. \$0.60, Cloth \$0.70.

Second Course. Boards \$0.80.

Third Course. Bds. \$0.80, Cloth \$0.90.

(This is AHN-HENN'S Latin Grammar, with part of the Exercises from the *First, Second, and Third Latin Books*, arranged under the corresponding rules.)

Complete Latin Syntax. Boards \$0.80, Cloth \$0.90.

Manual of Latin Prose Composition. Boards \$0.50.

First Latin Reader. (Contains English Sentences from LIT., with Notes, Vocabulary, and References. To be used with the *Second Latin Book.*) Boards \$0.70, Cloth \$0.80.

Second Latin Reader. (Contains English Sentences from LIT., with Notes, Vocabulary, and References. To be used with the *Third Latin Book.*) Boards \$0.80, Cloth \$0.90.

Latin Prose Composition. (Exercises of composition, with English Examples, with Vocabulary.) Boards \$1.20.

Also separately:

Number One. Boards \$0.60, Cloth \$0.70.

Number Two. Boards \$0.80, Cloth \$0.90.

Latin Vocabulary for Beginners. Methodical and Easy Course. Bds. \$0.50, Cloth \$0.60. (To be used with the *First and Second Latin Books.*) Boards \$0.50, Cloth \$0.60.

Latin Verse Chief. 22 Plates on sheets \$1.50. — Bound on 22 boards, \$6.00 net.

*The several Keys above enumerated will be supplied to Teachers and their direct application to the Publishers.